



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

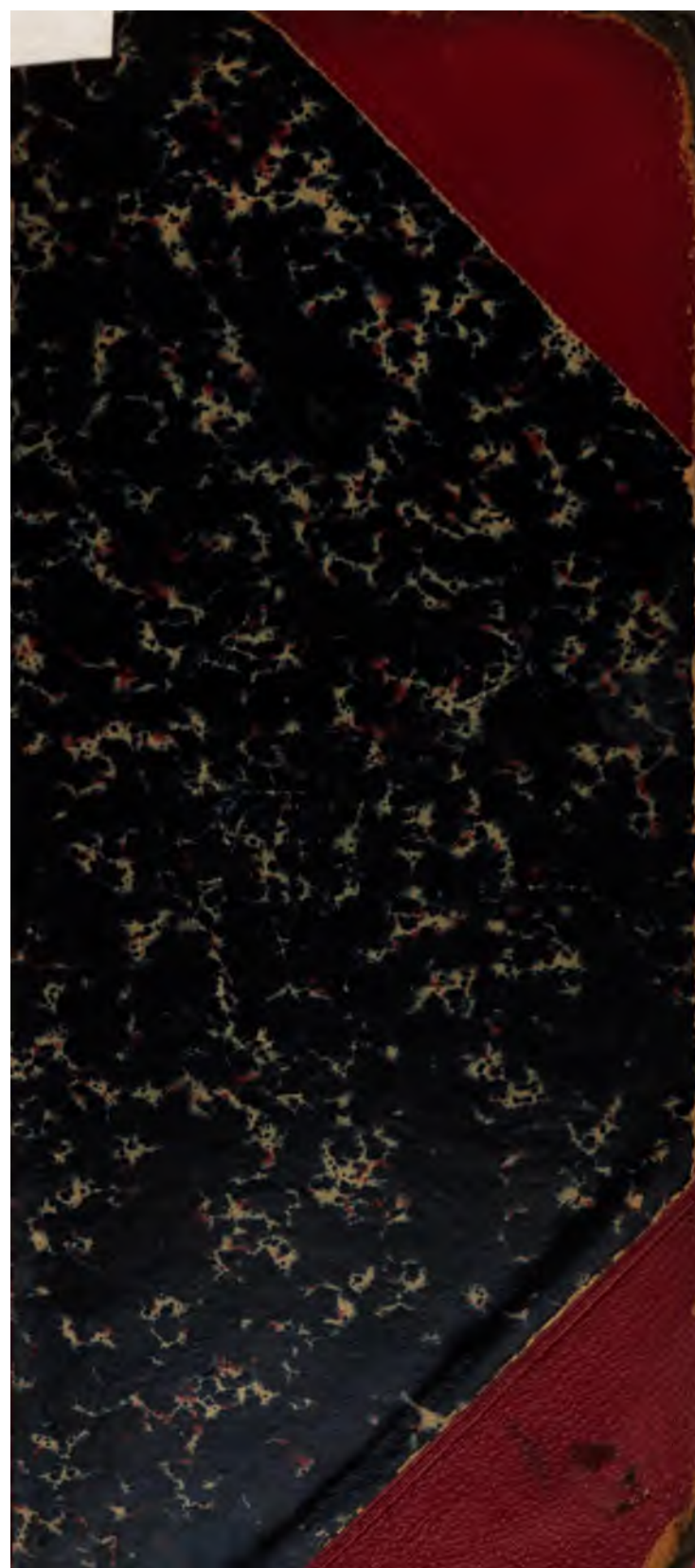
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Cruz 113. 6. 2



## Harvard College Library

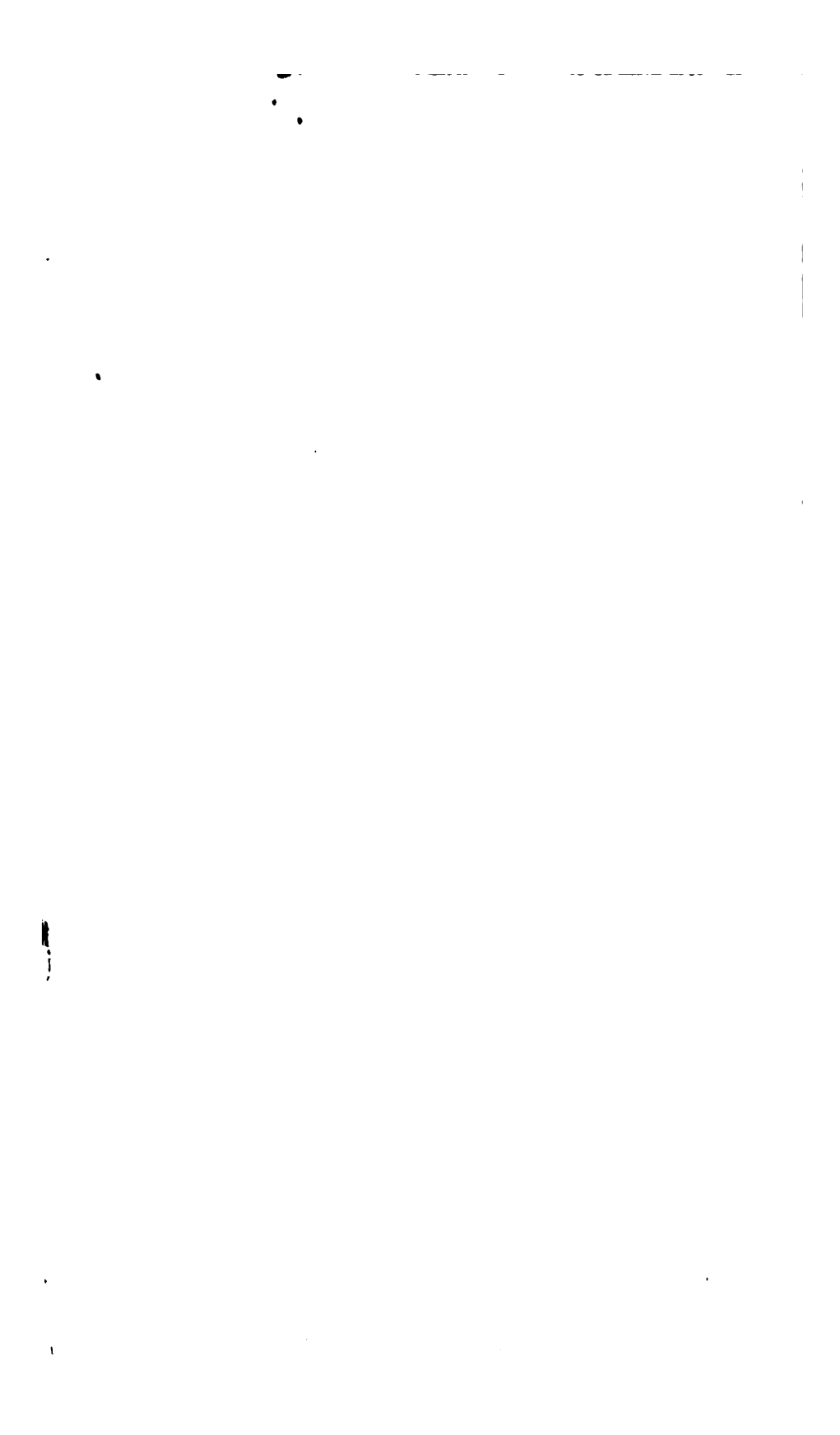
FROM THE BEQUEST OF

JAMES WALKER, D.D., LL.D.,

(Class of 1814)

FORMER PRESIDENT OF HARVARD COLLEGE;

"Preference being given to works in the Intellectual  
and Moral Sciences."





1

1





THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
CRUSADES,  
FOR THE  
*RECOVERY AND POSSESSION*  
OF THE  
**Holy Land.**

---

By CHARLES MILLS.

---

—Therefore, friends,  
As far as to the Sepulchre of Christ,  
(Whose soldier now, under whose blessed cross  
We are impressed and engag'd to fight)  
Forthwith a power of English shall we levy;  
Whose arms were moulded in their mothers' womb  
To chase these Pagans, in those holy fields,  
Over whose acres walk'd those blessed feet  
Which, fourteen hundred years ago, were nail'd,  
For our advantage, on the bitter cross.

SHAKESPEARE.

---

IN TWO VOLUMES.

---

VOL. II.

---

THE SECOND EDITION.

---

£ LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, AND  
BROWN, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1821.

Crus 113.6.2

126<sup>4</sup>  
0 2

1875, March 22.  
Walker Bequest.

*By the same Author,*

**AN HISTORY OF MUHAMMEDANISM;**

**COMPRISING**

**The Life and Character of the Arabian Prophet, and Succinct Accounts of the Empires founded by the Muhammedan Arms. An Inquiry into the Theology, Morality, Laws, Literature, and Usages of the Muselmans, and a View of the Present State and Extent of the Muhammedan Religion. In 1 Vol. 8vo, price 12s. Second Edition.**

---

Printed by Cox and Baylis.  
Great Queen Street, Lincoln's-Inn-Fields.

# CONTENTS

TO

## VOL. II.

### CHAP. I.

#### THE THIRD CRUSADE.

	Page
Effects in Europe of the failure of the second Crusade	
.... Louis VII. of France, and Henry II. of England, encourage holy wars.... Envoys from Palestine visit France and England.... Sensation in Europe made by the battle of Tiberias.... The Troubadours.... Germany arms.... Philip Augustus and Henry II. take the cross.... Saladin tithe.... Richard Cœur de Lion resolves on a Crusade.... March of the French and English.... Crusade of the Germans.... Death of the emperor Barbarossa.... Formation of the Teutonic order.... Events in Palestine after the loss of Jerusalem.... Siege of Acre.... Richard's course from Marseilles to Sicily.... Occurrences in Sicily.... The French sail to Acre.... Departure of Richard.... He subjugates Cyprus.... He sets sail for Acre.... His cruelty .....	1

### CHAP. II.

#### CONTINUATION OF THE THIRD CRUSADE.

Arrival of the English at Acre.... Dissensions between the French and English kings.... Heroism of Richard	
A 2	.. Recon-

.... Reconciliation between Richard and Philip Augustus.... Surrender of Acre.... Departure of the French king.... March of the Croises from Acre to Azotus.... Richard defeats Saladin.... He marches to Jaffa.... He advances to Ramula.... Is dissuaded from marching to Jerusalem.... Falls back on Ascalon.... Fruitless negociation for peace.... Death of the marquis of Tyre.... Richard advances towards Jerusalem.... The enterprise abandoned... Richard's heroism at Jaffa.... It leads to an honourable peace.... Courtesy of the king and the sultan.... Miscellaneous events.... Richard leaves the holy land.... Lands in Dalmatia.... His adventures in Germany.... Is taken prisoner.... His trial at Worms.... His ransom.... His return to England.....	43
---	----

### CHAP. III.

#### THE FOURTH AND FIFTH CRUSADES.

Death and character of Saladin.... His successors.... Pope Celestine III. promotes a Crusade.... It is embraced by Germany.... Adventures of the Germans in Palestine.... Fair prospect of complete success.... Ruin of the cause.... Return to Europe of some of the Germans.... And massacre of therest at Jaffa.... Death of Henry, king of Jerusalem.... Almeric and Isabella, the new king and queen.... Character of Fulk, preacher of the fifth Crusade.... Politics of the Papacy respecting the Crusades... Pope Innocent III. promotes a new Crusade.... It is embraced by France and Flanders.... The barons wish for the maritime aid of Venice.... Embassy to Venice.... Treaty between the republic and the envoys.... Departure of the	
---	--

## CONTENTS.

v

Page

the Croises.... Arrival at Venice.... Suspension of the Crusade.... Subjugation of Zara.... Papal poli- tics.... Grecian politics.... The Croises sail to Con- stantinople.... Attack and siege of the city.... Cap- tured by the Croises.... Revolution in the govern- ment.... Another revolution.... The Croises renew the war.... Their complete victory.... Sack of Con- stantinople.... Division of the plunder... Vengeance of the Croises on the fine arts.... Election of a Latin emperor.... General remarks on the empire of the Latins in Greece.....	83
---	----

## CHAP. IV.

### THE SIXTH CRUSADE.

State of the East during the fifth Crusade.... History  
 of Antioch.... Effects in Palestine of the fifth Cru-  
 sade.... Death of the sovereigns of Jerusalem....  
 Mary, the new queen.... Her marriage with John de  
 Brienne.... Another Crusade instigated by Innocent  
 III.... Letters of Innocent to Muselman princes....  
 Character of De Courcon, preacher of the sixth Cru-  
 sade.... Fourth council of Lateran.... Extent of the  
 ardour for a holy war.... Hungary and Lower Ger-  
 many send the chief Crusaders.... Criminal excesses  
 of the Croises.... Their useless pilgrimages.... De-  
 fection of the king of Hungary.... Fresh Crusaders  
 .... Change of crusading operations.... Siege and  
 capture of Damietta.... Arrival in Egypt of English  
 Crusaders.... Events subsequent to the capture of  
 Damietta.... The Croises take the road for Cairo...  
 The legate refuses favourable terms of peace.... Con-  
 sequences of his violence.... Damietta surrendered to  
the



the Muselmans.... The emperor Frederic II.... His marriage with the heiress of Jerusalem.... His disputes with the Popes.... He sails to Acre.... His friendship with the Moslems.... The recovery of the Sepulchre, and other advantageous results of his Crusade.....	Page 148
---	-------------

## CHAP. V.

## THE SEVENTH AND EIGHTH CRUSADES.

Royal controversies in Palestine.... Council of Spolitto.... March of Hospitalians from London.... French lords take the cross.... State of Palestine.... Unsuccessful result of the French Crusade.... Crusade of the earl of Cornwall.... The English redeem the Sepulchre.... The Korasmians gain it from the Latins, and devastate Palestine.... Council of Lyons.... Louis IX. takes the cross.... English Crusaders.... Jealousy and treachery of the military orders.... The French sail to Cyprus.... They arrive off Damietta.... They land and capture Damietta.... Licentiousness of the French.... Arrival of the English Crusaders.... The army takes the road to Cairo.... Inability to cross the Ashmoum canal.... They are shewn a ford.... Impetuosity of the count d'Artois.... His dispute with the Templars and William Longsword.... Dreadful events in Massoura.... Distresses of the French.... The king is made prisoner.... Is ransomed.... The French go to Acre.... New hopes by reason of the Moslem dissensions.... Those dissensions quelled.... Failure of the Crusade.... Louis returns to France.....	203
--	-----

CHAP. VI.

THE LAST CRUSADE, AND THE LOSS OF THE  
HOLY LAND.

	Page
State of Palestine after the eighth Crusade.... War between the Templars and Hospitallers.... Progress of the Mamlukes of Egypt in the conquest of Pales- tine.... History of Antioch.... Antioch taken by the Egyptians.... Louis IX. prepares for his second Crusade.... Crusading spirit in England.... De- parture of Louis from France for the holy land.... He disembarks near Tunis.... His death.... Prince Edward leaves England.... He passes the winter in Sicily.... Arrives at Acre.... Captures Nazareth.... His cruelty.... Distresses of the English.. Edward wounded by an assassin.... He makes peace with the Mamlukes, and returns to England.... Vain effort of Gregory IX. for a new Crusade.... Council of Lyons.... Further progress of the Mamlukes.... Last siege of Acre, and total loss of Palestine.....	250

CHAP. VII.

EXTINCTION OF THE CRUSADING SPIRIT. FATE OF THE  
MILITARY ORDERS.

State of Europe at the close of the Crusades.... Rea- sons of the ceasing of Crusades.. Last appearances of the crusading spirit.... King Henry IV. of Eng- land.... Harry Monmouth.... Fate of the military orders.... The Teutonic knights.... The knights of St. Lazarus.... Knights of St. John.... Imprison- ment of the Templars in France.... Proceedings against
---

	Page
against the Templars at Paris . . . Process against the Templars in England . . . In Germany . . . In Italy . . Council at Vienne . . . The order suppressed . . . Confiscation of its estates . . . Execution of the grand master . . . Innocence of the Templars . . . Causes of the suppression of the order . . . . .	279

## CHAP. VIII.

REMARKS ON THE GENERAL CONSEQUENCES OF THE CRUSADES . . . . .	334
--	-----

## TABLES.

No. I. Latin Kings of Jerusalem . . . No. II. Princes of Antioch and Tripoli . . . No. III. Counts of Tri- poli . . . No. IV. Princes or Counts of Edessa . . . . .	417
---	-----

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
CRUSADES.

---

CHAP. I.

THE THIRD CRUSADE.

*Effects in Europe of the failure of the second Crusade... Louis VII. of France, and Henry II. of England, encourage holy wars.....Envoys from Palestine visit France and England.....Sensation in Europe made by the battle of Tiberias.....The Troubadours.....Germany arms.....Philip Augustus and Henry II. take the cross.....Saladin tythe.....Richard Cœur de Lion resolves on a Crusade.....March of the French and English.....Crusade of the Germans... Death of the emperor Barbarossa.....Formation of the Teutonic order.....Events in Palestine after the loss of Jerusalem.....Seige of Acre.....Richard's course from Marsilles to Sicily.....Occurrences in Sicily.....The French sail to Acre.....Departure of Richard.....He subjugates Cyprus.....He sets sail for Acre.....His cruelty.*

EUROPE rang with invectives against the holy Bernard, when the thousands of men whom his eloquence and miracles had roused to arms perished in the rocks of Cilicia. A general or a

*Effects of the failure of the second Crusade.*

CHAP. I. statesman would have pointed out errors in the policy or conduct of the Crusaders: but the preacher sheltered himself under the usual defence of impostors, and declared that the sins of the people had merited divine punishment, and that the men of his day resembled in morals the Hebrews of old, who perished in the journey from Egypt to the promised land.\* This language was justly felt to be cruel and insulting: it did not exculpate the saint in the opinion of the world, and the nations of the West were not again disposed to make religious wars the common concern of Christendom. Often indeed † both fanatical and saturnine spirits fancied that Crusades were the only road to celestial favour: ‡ in other cases softer feelings and gentler

\* For some remarks of Bayle and Jortin on the conduct of St. Bernard, see note A.

† After the first conquest of the holy land, individuals and parties of people continually went thither from Europe. There were vessels of conveyance at most sea-ports, bearing on their sterns a flag with a red cross upon it. From motives of safety the ships commonly sailed in fleets, and for general convenience two periods of sailing were fixed—March and June. The summer passage was preferred, for the archbishop of Tyre speaks of the autumn as the time when pilgrims generally reached the holy land, p. 808.

‡ M. Paris relates a story of one Godric of Finchale, who travelled to Jerusalem, eating only bread and drinking only water, and arrived at the holy city without having once changed

gentler principles excited that courage which stern religion had failed to rouse; for in days of chivalry, when "lovers' heaven" could only be reached by "sorrow's hell," the knight sometimes performed his penance, and proved his fealty in breaking a lance with the Saracens.\* But popes and councils in vain attempted the insurrection of nations. The disastrous issues of the second Crusade were fresh in the minds of the people of Europe; the cypress was generally, they thought, twined with the laurel in Palestine, and public opinion no longer fixed a mark of cowardice and pusillanimity on those who did not hasten to the sacred banners. In the third council of the Lateran, which met twenty years after the return to Europe of Louis and Conrad, the policy of king

B 2

Almeric

changed his clothes. He performed the usual course of prayers and genuflexions in the Temple, and then enjoyed a luxurious wash in the Jordan. On coming forth from those celebrated waters, he cast off his shoes, and exclaimed, "O God, who formerly walked with naked feet on this land, and permitted them to be pierced for my sake, I vow never again to wear shoes." He then, continues the historian, walked back to England.

\* The reader, after having made a slight change in the two following lines of Shakespeare, can apply them to the present subject.

"I know a lady in Venice would have walk'd  
Bare-foot to Palestine, for a touch of his nether lip."

CHAP. I. Almeric was applauded; Egypt was more dreaded than Syria, and the possession of Damietta was held out as the object to which all the efforts of the Christians should tend.\*

Louis VII. of France, and Henry II. of England encourage holy wars.

The clergy called on the world to arm, but the recollection of misery was too fresh, and the decrees of the council were heard of with sullenness and discontent. Louis, however, always cherished the hope of returning to the holy land,† and of reviving his faded glory; and at length he found his wishes met by a brother sovereign. Since virtue was his policy, as well as his duty, Henry II. in the height of his disputes with Thomas à Becket, had professed great sanctity, and following the example of the French king,‡ he and his barons commanded that for one year a tax of two pence, and for four subsequent years a tax of a penny in the pound should be levied on the move-

\* Among the causes of the first Crusade we mentioned the influence of the spirit of commerce on the love of pilgrimages. That spirit was afterwards mingled with the desire of conquest, particularly in the case of the Egyptian politics. Situated between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean, Egypt was the communication between Europe and the Indies: and the possession of that country would have rendered the Europeans masters of commerce.

† Bouquet, iv. 457.

‡ Louis VII. had taxed his people for the second Crusade.

moveables of the people of England.\* Among the deeds of virtue which washed from Henry the guilt of Becket's murder was the supporting of two hundred knights Templars in Palestine for a year, and an agreement with the Pope to go and fight the infidels in Asia, or in Spain, for thrice that time, if his holiness should require it.† In the year 1177, Henry and Louis agreed to travel together to the holy land.‡ But the English monarch was prudent; and fond of peace, and the illness and subsequent death of the French king terminated the project.

The count of Tripoli, while regent of Jerusalem, endeavoured to strengthen his kingdom by new draughts of men from Europe. The importance of the embassy which he sent to the west was apparent from the dignity of the legates, for they were the patriarch of Jerusalem and the grand masters of the Templars and Hospitallers. In the case of the patriarch, the dignity of his office rather than his moral character, was consulted. His haughtiness of tem-

B 3

per,

\* Gervas, col. 1399. In the year 1166, Henry II. sent money to the holy land. Trivet's Annales, p. 108. This last quoted writer is of but little use in the Crusades. He has not done much more than abridge Vinesauf.

† Hoveden, p. 529.

‡ Bromton, col. 1134.



CHAP. I. per, and his imperious passions, totally disqualified him from the office of mediator, and he was despised by the religious part of the world for associating with a woman, who, on account of the pride of her deportment, was generally known by the title of the patriarchess.\* The ambassadors arrived in Italy, and found the emperor Frederic Barbarossa and the Pope at Verona. His imperial majesty did not yet aspire to religious glory, and his holiness assured them he would recommend the Crusade to the kings of France and England. The grand master of the Templars died in Italy, and the two remaining legates proceeded to Paris. They offered the keys of the holy city and the sepulchre to Philip Augustus, but France was at that time at war with the Flemings, and the council of the young monarch would not listen to projects of Asiatic conquests. The kits of peace, and a promise of maintenance to such of his subjects as should assume the cross, were all that the ambassadors received from the French king. Their greatest hopes rested upon England, and on their arrival there they

\* Sanutus, p. 172. Bernardus, 779. Bayle (Dict. art. Heraclius) is incorrect in desiring us to distinguish the amatory patriarch from him who was ambassador to Europe. There was but one patriarch of that name.

they met with the deepest respect. But the parliament knew and echoed the opinion of the monarch, that it would be wiser and better for him to remain at home and defend his own kingdom, than afford his personal aid to the Latins in Palestine. The king, however, was advised to consult with Philip Augustus on the propriety of a Crusade. Henry granted his license to all his subjects for waging war with the infidels; but the patriarch was indignant at this deliberation and caution, and demanded from the monarch the presence of one of his sons at the head of an army. The request was congenial with the wishes of prince John; but his father refused; and Heraclius outraged decency in expressing his indignation. He openly reproached Henry for the murder of Thomas à Becket; and observing that the anger of the king arose, he exclaimed, "do to me, if you will, as you did to Thomas. I shall as willingly die in England by your hands, as in Syria by the hands of the infidels; for you are more cruel than any Saracen." The haughty and politic Henry neither replied to this railing, nor molested the person of the brutal priest.\* The monarch went to France;

B 4

at

\* While Heraclius was in England in the year 1185, he dedicated the church of St. John, Clerkenwell, and also that of

CHAP. B. ~~at the summons to religion political animosities~~  
~~were suspended or forgotten ; and the sove-~~  
~~reigns of the two greatest nations of the west~~  
~~resolved that their armies should unite, and~~  
~~march to Palestine.\* The descendants of Wil-~~  
~~liam I. had used their influence in checking the~~  
 Norman

of the Temple in Fleet Street, into which part of London the Templars had lately removed from Holborn. After the suppression of the monasteries, the priory church and house of the Hospitallers in Clerkenwell were preserved as store-houses during the remainder of Henry VIII.'s reign. In the time of Edward the VI. most of the church, with the great bell tower, was blown up by gunpowder, and the stone was employed in building Somerset House. The bell tower, says Stow, was a most curious piece of workmanship, graven, gilt, and enamelled, to the great beauty of the city, and passing all others that he had ever seen. That part of the quire which remained, and some side chapels, were repaired by Cardinal Pole in Mary's time. Stow's London, edit. 1720, book iv, p. 62, 63. A Latin inscription in Saxon capital letters commemorated the dedication of the Temple church. The inscription was destroyed by the workmen who repaired the church in 1695. Dugdale, in the first edition of his *Originales Juridiciales*, printed a copy of it; and Strype, in his edition of Stow, has given a fac-simile. From this fac-simile a copy was made in 1810, and put up in the church by order of the Benchers of the two societies of the Inner and Middle Temple.

\* Ben. Ab. 434, 437. Hoveden, 628, &c. M. Paris, 119. Bromton, col. 1142. Gervas (col. 1474, ap. x. Scrip.) says that the king gave the patriarch fifty thousand marks of silver.

Norman barons from following the fashion of CHAP. I.  
 seeking glory in the holy land : \* for until time,  
 marriages, and successions had cemented the  
 English and their conquerors, the sword of ter-  
 ror and rule could not be sheathed.† In the  
 reign of Henry II., however, the amalgamation  
 was complete ; and the people of England were  
 encouraged by their monarch to think and act  
 like their continental neighbours. Accordingly,  
 when

\* The earl of Albemarle and others went with the first  
 Crusade, and several English noblemen accompanied  
 Louis VII. But the cause was not national, or by any means  
 general. The cross-legged figures on sepulchral monu-  
 ments are not of an earlier date than the reign of Stephen.  
 The fashion survived the holy wars for some years. That  
 those figures represented knights Templars is a notion long  
 since exploded. It has been supposed that they were not  
 only of people who went to Palestine as soldiers or pilgrims,  
 but of those who vowed to go, or who contributed to the  
 expense of the Crusades. The supposition is in some degree  
 warranted by the fact, that there are instances of women in  
 this singular posture on monumental remains. The fashion  
 of cross-legged figures on tombs, appears to have been  
 pretty much confined to England.

† William Rufus, too, in whose reign the holy wars com-  
 menced, was notoriously irreligious. He professed, indeed,  
 to respect the soldiers of Christ : but that respect had no in-  
 fluence on his conduct ; for on one occasion he plainly told  
 a crusading Norman baron that he would seize his estate  
 during his journey to the holy land. . Ordericus Vitalis, p.  
 769.

**CHAP. I.** when the crusade was preached, thousands of men answered the call, and the holy theme was revered in every part of the English dominions.

Sensation  
in Europe,  
made by  
the battle  
of Tiberias.

While fanaticism was rekindling the torch of religious war, news arrived in the west of the fall of Jerusalem into the hands of the infidels. The event was felt as a calamity from one end of Europe to the other; and the judgments of God brought grief and consternation to the breast of every man. Nothing could exceed the terror which seized the court of Rome. In the moment of weakness and humiliation, the cardinals acknowledged the dignity and the force of virtue. They resolved to take no bribes in the administration of justice, to abstain from all luxury of living and splendour of dress, to go to Jerusalem with the scrip and staff of simple pilgrims, and never to ride on horseback while the ground of their Saviour was trodden under the feet of the pagans.\* Pope Urban III. died about this period; and his death, like every direful event of the time, was attributed to grief at the intelligence of the Saracenian victories.† William, archbishop of Tyre,

\* "But their passion spent itself with its own violence, and these mariners' vows ended with the tempest." Fuller, Holy War, book ii, ch. 46.

† Hoveden, 636.

Pyre, our great guide in history, was one of the messengers of the news; and his friend, Gregory VIII., successor of Urban, not only endeavoured to deprecate the wrath of Heaven, by ordaining fasting and prayer throughout Christendom, but issued a bull for a new Crusade, with the usual privileges to the Croises.\* Gregory went to Pisa, and healed the animosities between that city and Genoa, knowing well the importance of the commercial states of Italy to the Christians in the holy wars.†

The noise of merriment ceased in the hospitable halls of the barons; the lyre of poetry was attuned to a holy theme; and the Provençal bards sung in lofty cantos the duties of chivalry. He who once had conducted three kings to Bethlehem, had mercifully prepared a road by which even the most flagrant sinners might reach happiness. Mad foolish man, grovelling in avarice and sensuality, neglects to take the cross, and by such neglect loses at once his honour and his God. To fall in the holy land, and in behalf of the sacred cause, is preferable to

The Troubadours.

\* Benedict, 495. Hoveden, 637-639. Neub. lib. iii. c. 21.

† Neub. lib. 3, c. 22. This endeavour of Gregory for the restoration of peace was the last important act of his life. He died at Pisa after a reign of only two months. His successor was Pope Clement III.

CHAP. I. to a mere existence in our own country with common glory, where life is worse than death. To die in the face of the dangers which religion calls on us to confront, is to triumph over death itself, and to find the guerdon of eternal felicity. You may subdue all the kingdoms of Europe; but vain are the conquests of ambition, if you trust not in the promises, and obey not the commands of God. Alexander subdued all the earth; and the reward of his victories was a winding sheet. Oh what folly, then, to see the good, and to choose the evil, and to renounce, for perishable objects, that happiness which, even on earth, mingles with every thought, and gladdens every moment of our lives. March, then, to the deliverance of the holy sepulchre. Arms, honour, and chivalry, all that the world calls grand and moving, will procure for you heavenly glory and happiness. What more can kings and barons desire, than by such noble and pleasing means, to save themselves from the poisonous waters and raging flames of hell?\*

The

\* Raynouard, *Choix des Poésies Originales des Troubadours*, vol. ii, p. 71, &c. Paris, 1817. The Anglo-Norman Troubadours were also active in the cause of religion. At the end of the histories of the dukes of Normandy (Harleian MSS. No. 1717) is a song or canticle in praise of crusading. It was most probably written at the close of the reign of king Henry II. and by the author of the history, namely, Benoît dict

The emperor, Frederic Barbarossa, summoned a council at Mayence, for the purpose of considering the general propriety of a new Crusade. CHAP. X.  
Germany  
arms.

Bishops and barons were unanimous in the wish for it, and William of Tyre, and Henry, bishop of Albano, legates of the papacy, arrived at the assembly in time to confirm and approve its holy resolve. The emperor and his son the duke of Suabia, the dukes of Austria and Moravia; and sixty-eight temporal and spiritual lords, were fired with the same enthusiasm.\*

At the solicitation of the archbishop of Tyre, Philip Augustus, king of France, and Henry II. king of England; met at a place between Triers and Elisors, in Normandy; in order to deliberate on the political state of the times. The prelate of the eastern Latin church appeared, and pleaded the cause of religion before the two monarchs. So pathetic was his description of the miseries of the Latins in Syria, so touching were his reflections on those who engaged in petty

dict the Norman, the rival of Wace both in literature and in the favour of the English monarch. See M. de la Rue's Essay on the Norman Poets, in the twelfth volume of the *Archæologia*. Du Cange has discovered that *Ultræia* was the name of a popular song by which the wild spirit of crusading was encouraged in the minds of the Italians.

\* Godfridi Monachi Annales; ap. Froheri Rer. Germ. Script. vol. ii. p. 348.



**CHAP. I.** petty national wars, when even the stones of the temple called on all people to avenge the cause of God, that Philip and Henry wept, embraced, and vowed to go together to the holy land. They received the cross from the hands of the archbishop. The count of Flanders entered into their intentions. They agreed that the French crusaders should wear red crosses, the English white ones,\* and the Flemish green. One opinion and one feeling influenced every breast; and, by universal consent, a tax similar every where in name and in nature was imposed on those who would not be crossed. This imposition was called the Saladin tythe; it was to last for one year; and it extended both to moveable and immoveable property. The clergy and barons of Henry who were in Normandy, decreed that it should be levied in England; and when Henry returned to his English dominions, the barons responded to the wish of the Norman council. By the act which they made at Geddington, in Northamptonshire, the

P. Augustus and Henry II. take the cross.

Saladin tythe.

Saladin

\* I remind the reader that it was not to the Crusades or even to St. George; but, *veracious* chroniclers say that England is indebted for her red cross to Joseph of Arimathea, whom our Saviour sent into this country to convert the natives. The missionary gave it as an armorial distinction to king Arvigarus. See Southey's note, *Morte d'Arthur*, vol. ii. p. 487.

**Saladin's tenth** was to be levied upon the rents CHAP. I.  
and goods of the English people, both clergy  
and laity, Jews as well as Christians. From  
military weapons, and corn of the present year's  
growth, the tenth was not to be collected. Per-  
sons who actually assumed the cross were not  
only exempted, but were even allowed to take  
the fiscal part of their tenants' property. If the  
collectors of the tythe were dissatisfied with  
what a man offered to pay, they were authorized  
to appoint four or six men of his parish to make  
an assessment. The Crusaders too might  
mortgage their land for three years; and the  
mortgagee should receive the rents even to the  
prejudice of former creditors. The English  
council forbade the pilgrims from sensual plea-  
sures,\* from all manner of gaming, and from  
the luxury of dressing in ermine and sables.†

Henry

\* On perusing Fosbrooke's *British Monachiam*, I found that I had overlooked the decree in these statutes forbidding a Crusader to take any woman with him, except a laundress on foot of good character. This qualification of the exception was necessary; for in the middle ages (and we hope in these times only) the words *lotrix* and *meretrix* were synonymous. Knighton, col. 2422. apud X Script.

† Neub. lib. iii. c. 23. Hoveden, 641. M. Paris, 122. Benedictus Abbas Petroburgensis, 495, 496. Gervas, 1522. Henry extorted an immense sum from the Jews in the Christian cause. Such of his subjects as could not pay, were incarcerated. The king of Scotland compounded for the Sa-  
ladin

CHAP. I. Henry wrote to the king of Hungary and the emperor of Constantinople, requesting a safe passage for his troops. The request was granted; and imperial legates arrived in England for the purpose of arranging the terms of the treaty.\*

Though ships continually sailed from England and France, bearing martial pilgrims to the holy land,

Saladin tenth in his kingdom, by paying Henry five thousand marks. Hoveden, 644. The Chartreux, the Cisterians, the Fontrevault, and the friars of the order of St. Lazarus, were exempt from paying the Saladin tithe: and if the princes of Europe had listened to the casuistry of the secular clergy, they would have been contented with the good wishes and prayers of the church, and not have demanded their money. Bernardus, Thes. p. 804. In England, the sums collected by the Saladin tithe, were seventy thousand pounds from the Christians, and sixty thousand pounds from the Jews. Gervas, 1529.

\* Diceto, 637, &c. About the year 1188, archbishop Baldwin made a journey through Wales, for the double purpose of preaching the crusade, and of submitting the Welch bishopricks to the see of Canterbury. He visited, also, the isle of Anglesey, and terminated his labours in Chester. His languages, both French and English, were unintelligible to the people, and his eloquence was injured by interpretation; but his miracles stamped him as the man of God, and three thousand men, well skilled in the use of lances and arrows, were prepared to march to Palestine. Giraldus Cambrensis, Itin. Cambriæ, p. 226, 12mo. 1585. The Welsh recovered from their religious fever, and very few, if any, quitted the principality.

land, the ambition and restlessness of Philip Augustus, and of Prince Richard, diverted the government and the great body of the people from the salvation of Palestine. The ignominious peace which England was compelled to make with France, and his mental agony at the rebellion and ingratitude of his sons, brought on the death of the English monarch.\* The July 1189.

love of military honour inflamed the French king, and the bold, ardent, and valiant Richard *Cœur de Lion* had more of the warlike spirit than of the religious feelings of the age. None of the principles which originally caused the Crusades, influenced the actions of either. They little regarded who were the lords of the holy land, or whether Christianity or Islamism had the greatest sway. But as they were both inspired with the passion of fame, and as the people of Europe burned for revenge on the impious Saracens, the two monarchs felt that renown could be gained in Palestine alone. Their fierce spirits sought gratification in the applause of the world, and the reputation for corporeal

VOL. II.

C

prowess

\* Henry II. was munificent in his donations to the cause of crusading. To each of the two great military orders he bequeathed five thousand marks of silver: he gave also the same sum for the general purposes of the holy land, and he was equally generous to the lazars and other hospitals in Jerusalem. Nichols's Royal Wills, p. 7, &c.

**CHAP. I.** prowess is as honourable in days of barbarism as a name for intellectual accomplishments is the ambition in times of refinement. So eager was Richard to equip a large military force, that he sold the crown lands, and offices of trust and dignity were no longer to be acquired by desert or favour. The king of Scotland obtained for ten thousand marks Richard's renunciation of the fortresses of Roxburgh and Berwick, and of the claims of England on the allegiance of Scotland.\* The sheriffs and bailiffs, and all who were guilty or suspected of corruption, gave their lord large sums of money for indemnity. The virtuous Glanvil, the justiciary, was cast into prison. He was compelled to pay fifteen thousand pounds for his liberty; and he agreed, old as he was, to go on a perilous journey to Judea.† Others, who had resolved on a holy war, and who afterwards repented of their oaths, made pecuniary sacrifices in the place of personal services.‡

The

\* Bromton, 1167. Neub. iv. 5.

† But we learn from Newborough, that Glanville had taken the cross in Henry's reign, and was resolved to go at the time mentioned in the text, because he was disgusted with Richard's financial measures. Lib. iv. c. iv. The justiciary accompanied Baldwin in part of his Welsh journey. See the commencement of Giraldus Camb.

‡ M. Paris, 129. Bromton, 1175.

The count of Perche, as envoy of Philip, arrived in England with his master's requisition of Richard and his soldiers at Vezelai in the following Easter. The prelates and nobility were summoned to council at Westminster; the French peer, and the earl of Essex, pledged the honour of their respective monarchs that all the bands of Crusaders should unite at the appointed place.\* Richard crossed the Channel in December, and soon after Christmas met his brother sovereign. The monarchs renewed their protestations of perpetual friendship, and swore that in case of necessity they would defend each others' territories with all the warmth of self interest. If either of the princes should die during the Crusade, the survivor was to use his men and money for the accomplishment of the great design. The period of departure was deferred from Easter to the ensuing Midsummer.† During his stay in Normandy, Richard made some singular laws for regulating the conduct of the pilgrims in their passage by sea. Murder was to be punished by casting into the water the deceased person, with the murderer tied to him. He that drew his sword in anger should lose his hand. If a man gave another a

\*. M. Paris, 130.

† Bromton, 1170. Rigord, in the fifth of Duchesne, p. 29.

CHAP. I. blow, he was to be thrice immersed : an ounce of silver was the penalty for using opprobrious language. A thief was to have boiling pitch and feathers put upon his head, and was to be set on shore at the first opportunity.\*

June 1190. Philip Augustus received the staff and script† at St. Denys, and Richard at Tours. They joined their forces at Vezelai ; the number was computed at one hundred thousand ‡ soldiers, and the march to Lyons was conducted in union and with harmony. At that city the monarchs parted ; the lord of France pursued the Genoese road ; his noble compeer that of Marseilles, and Sicily was named as the rendezvous.§

Crusade of  
the Ger-  
mans.

The heroic Frederic Babarossa was among the first of those whose grief rose into indignation after the fall of Jerusalem. In his letters to

\* M. Paris, 132. Hoveden, 666. The circumstance mentioned in the text respecting tarring and feathering is a fine subject for comment by the searchers into popular antiquities.

† The purse of a royal or noble pilgrim used to be magnificently adorned with golden ornaments : and also with heraldic devices, not only of the owner's family, but of every person with whom he was in any wise connected. See the engraving of the crusading purse of the earls of Brittany, in Montfaucon, *Monumens François*, vol. ii. p. 166.

‡ Vinesauf, i. 9.

§ For an account of the authorities for the third crusade, see note B.

to the sacrilegious Saladin, he demanded restitution of the city, and threatened him in the event of non-compliance, to pour into Asia all the military force of the German States. But the triumphant infidel replied, that he would oppose his Turcomans, his Bedoweens, and Syrians, to the German hordes. Tyre, Tripoli, and Antioch, he continued, were the only places which at that time belonged to the Christians, and if those cities were resigned to him, he would restore the true cross, and permit the people of the west to visit Jerusalem as pilgrims.\* Germany was indignant at this haughty reply; all the powers took up arms against the man who had defied them; but in prudent remembrance of the disorders and calamities which popular impatience had occasioned in the first and second Crusades, an imperial edict was issued, that no one should go who could not furnish his own viaticum for a twelvemonth.† The consecrated standards of the German princes were surrounded by innumerable hosts of Crusaders, drawn out of every class of life, from honourable knighthood down to the meanest vassalage. Their emperor conducted them from Ratisbon, their rendez-

April, A.D.  
1189.

c 3

vous,

\* M. Paris, 122.

† Vinesauf, i. 19. Godef. p. 350.



CHAP. I. vous, through the friendly Hungarian states ; but when he reached the territories of the great lord of the east, he had to encounter the hostility of a violent yet timid foe. The emperor Isaac Angelus displayed both enmity and cowardice. He did not deny the Germans the liberty to purchase provisions, but in his communications with Frederic he carefully avoided giving him imperial titles ; and the Greek governors were perplexed by one day receiving orders to preserve the fortifications of their towns, and at another time by commands for their destruction, lest they should become stations of the Germans.\* Barbarossa marched with prudence and humanity. In his indignation at the haughtiness and duplicity of Isaac, he generally spared the people, and passed the Hellespont without having deigned to enter the imperial city.† The people of Philadelphia behaved

\* Bernardus, p. 804. Nicetas, p. 199. Tageno in Struve's edition of M. Freher's *Rer. Germ. Scrip.* 407, 410. Godef. *Mon.* 350, 355, and the anonymous but contemporary history of the expedition of Frederic, in Canisius, vol. iij. pars ii. p. 504, 517. Canisius modestly styled his collection, *Lectiones Antiquæ*. His learned editor, Basnage, has given it the more appropriate name of *Thesaurus Monumentorum Ecclesiasticorum et Historicorum*.

† On the relations between the Greeks and Latins before and during the crusades, see note C.

haved to the Germans with all the pride and coldness of Isaac; but so warm was the hospitality of the inhabitants of Laodicea, that Frederic poured forth in public a prayer for its prosperity, and declared that if the other Greek cities had behaved with similar kindness, he should have crossed the Grecian frontier with a sword free from the blood of the Greeks.\* He entered the territories of the Musulmans in triumph, and not only defeated the Turks in a general engagement, but took Iconium. The sultan then repented of his perfidy, and with the independent emirs of Asia Minor, deprecated the further vengeance of the Germans. They continued their march with more honour and dignity than had ever accompanied the early Crusaders, but they were deprived by death of their venerable hero. It was in the spring of the year that they passed the Isaurian mountains, from which issues the small river of the Calycadnus. In this stream Frederic bathed, but his aged frame could not sustain the shock, and he was drawn out almost lifeless. His death† happened shortly afterwards, and though

A. D. 1190.  
Death of  
the emperor  
Barbarossa.

c 4

his

\* Nicetas, 204. Canisius, p. 517.

† It will not be worth while to enquire whether the emperor bathed in the Cydnus or the Calycadnus: "If he went in to wash himself, he neither consulted with his health

CHAP. I. his son, the duke of Suabia, was a brave and experienced general, yet the death of the emperor so much revived the courage of the Saracens, that the course of the Christians was continually harassed. The previous victories of the Germans had cost them dreadfully dear: long marches, frequent change of climate, and occasional appearances of famine, thinned their ranks. A stop was put to their sufferings by the supplies which they received from the people of Armenia; but by that time the once proud force of Germany was reduced to a tenth of its original number.\* Saladin had been compelled to withdraw most of his soldiers from Antioch, and the Germans had little difficulty in renewing a Christian government in that city.

Formation  
of the Teu-  
tonic order.

In the autumn of 1190, the duke of Suabia arrived at Acre, and importance was given to the

health nor honour. Some say, his horse foundered under him as he passed the water; others, that he fell from him. But these several relations, as variety of instruments, make a doleful concert in this, that there he lost his life; and no wonder, if the cold water quickly quenched those few sparks of natural heat left in him at seventy years of age." Fuller, Holy War, book iii. cap. iv.

\* Hist. Hier. 1157, 1162. Herold. cap. 6 and 7. Tachenius, 410, 416. Nicetas, 204, 206. Canisius, 517, 526. Godefroy, Mon. p. 366. Bromton, 1165. Diceto, 655.

the German force by the formation of a new order of knighthood. One of their countrymen had about sixty years before founded an hospital at Jerusalem for the poor male pilgrims of his nation ; and his wife, emulating his charity, built a similar place for women. Private benevolence augmented the establishments, and insensibly the patrons imitated the military conduct of the knights of St. John and the Temple. The institution was ruined by the fall of Jerusalem, but it revived in another shape at the siege of Acre. In order to assist the sick and wounded of their countrymen, some soldiers of Bremen and Lubeck converted their tents, which were formed only from the sails of ships, into a temporary hospital. The number of these charitable persons was soon enlarged to forty, and they began to assume the regular appearance of a formal community. The duke of Suabia knew the benefits which the military friars had conferred upon charity and arms ; the chiefs of the army applauded his design of strengthening the holy land by forming an additional military order ; the bishops prepared the code ; and the new cavaliers were to be guided in the performance of their charitable duties by the canons of the knights of St. John, and by the practice of the Templars in what regarded martial discipline. The Vatican confirmed the establishment ;

**CHAP. I.** ment; Pope Celestine III. gave it the rule of St. Augustine for its general law, and accorded to it the privileges which distinguished the other military fraternities. The service of the poor and sick, and the defence of the holy places, were the great objects which the Pope commanded them to regard; and their domestic economy was to be preserved by chastity and equal participation of property. They were divided into three classes, knights, priests, and serving brothers. All the members were to be Germans, and those of the first class could only be men of noble birth and extraction. The order of the Teutonic knights of the house of St. Mary in Jerusalem was their title, and their dress was a white mantle with a black cross, embroidered with gold.\*

Events in  
Palestine  
after the  
loss of  
Jerusalem.

While the kings of England and France were marshalling their hosts for a foreign war, the Christians in the holy land slowly recovered from their panic, and joined Lusignan. Greeks, Latins, Syrians, Templars, and Hospitallers, emerged from their places of secrecy, burning for revenge on the infidel spoliators. Security could

\* James de Vitry, 1084. Sanutus, lib. iii. p. 7, c. iii. and Helyot, vol. iii. c. xvi. The first of these authors says, it pleased God to create this third order, because "a three-fold cord is not quickly broken." Eccl. iv. 12.

could alone be procured by conquest, and as almost all the holy land was in possession of the Saracens, the multitude of objects perplexed the choice. But Palestine, even in the brightest days of Latin history, had never been independent of Europe, and unless the sea coast were secured, the parent state could not supply its colony. Acre had opened its gates to the conqueror a few days after the battle of Tiberias, and that city, by reason of its situation and magnitude, was worthy the bravest efforts of its former lords. The sea washed its fortifications on the north and west; a noble pier defended the port from the storms and the enemy; and the city on the land side was fortified by double walls, ditches, and towers.\* When Richard and

\* "The single city of Acre is so decisive of the fate of Palestine, that whoever possesses it may easily make himself master of the whole country. The history of the Israelites, as well as of the Crusades, establishes this; and the reason is, that from this port a great plain extends all the way to the river Jordan, dividing Palestine into two halves. In this plain have been fought most of those decisive battles which have caused the country to change its masters: that, for instance, against Sisera, Judges, chap. iv.; that wherein Saul fell. 1 Sam. chap. xxxi.; and that in which Josiah was defeated and slain, 2 Kings xxxii. 29. It was precisely the same in the time of the holy war; the chief scene of which was this vale, and the city of Acre itself." Michaelis on the Mo-saic

**CHAP. VI.** and Philip Augustus reached the holy land, the siege of Acre had lasted twenty-two months. The most patient attention would be exhausted by a minute detail of the operations of that period, and a liberal curiosity will be satisfied by a notice of the chief and characteristic circumstances. So perfect was the self-security of Saladin, that he did not attempt to overwhelm the foe; and when he at length found the necessity of personally attempting the relief of his city, the force of the king of Jerusalem was appallingly numerous. The people of France and England could not wait the tardy march of their organised armies; they answered with impatience the signals of distress which Palestine hung out; indeed every country of Europe poured forth its population with disorderly rapidity, and Lusignan was at one time the commander of one hundred thousand soldiers. The Christians were encamped on the plain to the south of Acre, and the general station of Saladin was near the town and mountain of Khorouba, still

Siege of  
Acre, Aug.  
1189.

saic Law, vol. i. p. 56. Smith's translation. G. Villani praises Acre because it was "nella frontiera del nostro mare, e in mezzo de Soria e quasi nel mezzo del mondo habitato, presso a Gerusalem a 70 miglia, e fontana e porte era d' ogni mercatantia, si di Levante, come di Ponente; e di tutte le generationi di gente del mondo v' erano e usavano per fare mercatantia, e turcomani v' havea di tutte le lingue del mondo, si che ella era quasi come uno elemento del mondo."

still further to the south. Among the bravest of the Christian lords were the count of Champagne,\* the duke of Gueldres, the landgrave of Thuringia, and James d'Avesnes. Many of the clergy wore the casque and the cuirass; the archbishops of Pisa and Ravenna, the bishops of Salisbury, Beauvais, Cambray, Acre, and Bethlehem, deserved the honour of ecclesiastical knighthood; and on one occasion the valour of Baldwin, archbishop of Canterbury,† saved the camp. The Christians plied the battering rams and mangonels against the walls, and

CHAP. I.

Henry I. father of the count of Champagne mentioned in the text, went twice into the east. He accompanied Louis in 1147, and, hope triumphing over experience, he went again in 1178 with Peter de Courtenay the king's brother, and other princes, on one of those numerous private crusades which drained Europe of as much money and as many men as the great national crusades cost; but which enterprises of individuals are seldom recorded in the great and general history of the times. Almost all Henry's soldiers perished in Asia Minor; and a few days after his return to France, Henry died of fatigue and illness. See *L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, ii. 618.

† Hist. Hier. p. 1171, in Bongarsius. The author of this history of Jerusalem praises very highly the valour of the old archbishop of Canterbury. It appears that his grace supported a corps of two hundred horse soldiers and three hundred foot. His standard was inscribed with the name of Thomas à Becket.



**CHAP. I.** and they only ceased from their labour when Saladin called them to battle on the plain. The engagements were as sanguinary and obstinate as any which had marked the holy wars. If the Latins at any time prevailed, they speedily lost their advantages, by abandoning themselves to plunder, and allowing the vigilant enemy to collect his broken battalions. When the Saracens conquered, the Christians kept within the shelter of their fortified camp,\* and did not again take the field till pressed to action by some new bands of Crusaders. The conflicts between the Moslems and Christians were by sea as well as by land; but the naval forces were so equally balanced, that the Latins could not finally prevent the Egyptians from succouring Acre, and Europe kept up its communications with the camp. In the last year of the siege, the deaths by famine and pestilence exceeded the destruction which former battles had occasioned. Both armies were wasted by a swift decay, for the presence of such numbers had exhausted the Muselman as well as the Christian neighbourhood. At the siege of Acre, as well as at the old siege of Antioch, the morals of the holy warriors were as depraved as their

\* The Christian camp was so well fortified, that the Saracens used to say, "not even a bird can enter it."

their condition was miserable. Yet an appearance of holiness pervaded the camp. Religious exercises were performed, and vice was repressed. The Crusaders were seemingly devout, but in reality were dissolute,\* and compromised for personal excesses by pharisaical scrupulosity and uncharitableness. The archbishop of Canterbury died, it is said, not of disease, but of regret at the general profligacy; but his friend the bishop of Salisbury outlived the plague, and equally active in his religious as well as in his military duties, he collected and distributed the alms

\* Thus, as has often been the case, the extreme of misery produced the effects of the extreme of luxury. Misery and wretchedness went hand in hand during the great plague at Athens. So Boccaccio describes the consequences of the pestilence at Florence, in the year 1348: "Et in tanta afflittione et miseria della nostra citta, era la reverenda autorita delle leggi cosi divine come humane quasi caduta et dissoluta tutta, &c." Boccaccio, *Il Decamerone*, Giornata prima. In all these cases, Pagans and Christians considering God as the author of temporal good and evil only, and observing that the virtuous suffered as much as the wicked, concluded that moral conduct was disregarded by Heaven. Unbounded licentiousness followed. No laws of God limited the people: the laws of man were equally inefficacious, because the criminal thought that he might die before the day of trial, or if he should live to that time, those who would have been his accusers might have perished in the general calamity. See Thucydides, lib. 2. chap. 53.

**CHAP. I.** alms of the rich. Conrad, marquis of Tyre, had joined, and afterwards left his friends, and to his departure all the miseries of the Christians from famine were attributed. But his own principality was his most important charge, and he could not furnish provisions for his people and for the whole of the army at the same time. Disease reached and destroyed princes as well as plebeians ; and when Queen Sybilla and her two young children died, Guy de Lusignan lost his principal political support. New competitors appeared for the visionary kingdom. Isabel, the sister of Sybilla, had been married at the early age of eight years to Humphry lord of Thoron ; but when the warm passions of youth succeeded the indifference of infancy, the gallantry and knightly accomplishments of Conrad, marquis of Tyre, gained her affections. In the middle ages consanguinity or some canonical impediment was always discovered, when disgust or ambition urged the dissolution of the marriage contract ; and when the will is resolved, the mind is not scrupulous in its choice of arguments of justification. The church terminated the union of Humphry and Isabel, and the day after the proclamation of the divorce, the bishop of Beauvais married the amorous fair one to the marquis of Tyre. As husband of the princess, Conrad claimed the honours of respect  
which

which were due to the king of Jerusalem ; CHAP. I.  
 Humphry was too prudent to contend for an  
 empty distinction ; but Lusignan, who had  
 once enjoyed the crown, would not forego the  
 hope of recovering it. The Christian cause  
 was scandalised and injured by these divisions  
 among the chiefs, but the candidates for the  
 pageant sceptre were obliged to submit to the  
 general opinion of the army, and reserve the  
 decision of their claims for the judgment of the  
 French and English monarchs.\*

Richard's fleet had not arrived at Marseilles  
 at the appointed time ; and so great was his im-  
 patience, that after waiting for it only eight days  
 he hired some galleys and put to sea.† He  
 went to Genoa, and conferred with the French  
 king, whose illness had kept him in that city.  
 He then made a brief stay at Pisa, and shortly  
 afterwards an accident which happened to his  
 vessel compelled him to enter the Tiber. The  
 cardinal of Ostia received him with distinction,  
 but Richard refused his courtesy, and openly  
 VOL. II. D reprehended

Richard's  
 course from  
 Marseilles  
 to Sicily.  
 7th August,  
 1190.

\* Vinesauf, i. 28, 29, 42, 65. Ben. Ab. Pet. 571, 574.  
 Bohadin, cap. 52, 60, 84, 92. Bernardus, 806, &c.

† Soon afterwards the archbishop of Canterbury, the  
 bishop of Salisbury, and Ralph de Glanville left Marseilles  
 and went to Acre. Hoveden says that the passage between  
 those two places might be made in fifteen days. Hoveden,  
 668, 672. M. Paris, 134. Brompton, 1175.

CHAP. I. reprehended the simoniacal conduct of the court of Rome. On the 20th of August he reached Naples, and went to the abbey of St. Januarius for the purpose of viewing the singular spectacle of the sons of Naimond, who stood in skin and bones in a cell. He made some stay in the city, and then travelled on horseback to Salernum, where he resolved to wait till he should hear of the arrival of his navy in the Mediterranean. The English fleet had been dispersed off Portugal by a violent storm, but the ships finally reached Lisbon, their crews were received with hospitality, and circumstances enabled them to pay their obligation of gratitude. The Moors of Spain and Africa were menacing Portugal, five hundred English soldiers joined the king, and marched to Santarem. Their warlike aspect awed the Saracens, and the fortunate death at this juncture of the Moorish commander broke the union of the enemy, and the country was saved. The English fleet coasted Portugal, and the southern part of Spain, and arrived at Marseilles. It then set sail for Messina, and reached that place a few days before the arrival of Philip and the French. Richard left Salernum on the 18th of September, and on the 21st reached Mileto. He then pursued his journey, accompanied only by one knight. The impetuosity of his progress

gress was checked by his love of pleasure, and he entered a cottage because he heard that a hawk was confined in it. He seized the bird, and on his refusal to deliver it up, the peasants assailed him with clubs and stones, and one man even drew his dagger. Richard struck the caitiff with the flat part of his sword, the weapon broke, and until he could reach a neighbouring priory, he was obliged to defend himself by stones.\* That night he reposed in a tent near Scilla, and the next morning he assembled all the English ships, and entered the harbour of Messina with so much splendour, and such clangour of horns and trumpets, that the Sicilians and French were astonished and alarmed.† Tancred, the illegitimate son of Roger duke of Apulia, was at that period the king of the island. After the loss of the sovereignty of the northern states of Italy, the emperor Frederick Barbarossa looked with an ambitious eye on Sicily, and wished to marry his eldest son Henry to Constantia, daughter of Roger, and legitimate heiress to the throne. The marriage was celebrated in the year 1186, but Tancred continued the real monarch, for he was supported by the Norman barons, who disdained to be governed

Occurrences in  
Sicily.

D 2

by

\* Ben. Ab. Pet. 593-604. Hoveden, 668-673.

† M. Paris, 136. Hoveden, 673. Ben. Ab. Pet. 604.

CHAP. I. by a foreign king. Among the precautions which Tancred took for the establishing of his authority was the imprisonment of the widow of William the Good, his immediate predecessor. She was the sister of Richard king of England, but on the arrival of that monarch in Sicily, the usurper restored her to freedom. But her dowry was still withheld, and her brother was resolved to avenge her wrongs. In all his measures he was violent and unjust. He placed her in a fortress which he seized from the Sicilians, and drove out the religious inhabitants of a monastery in order that it might contain his stores.\* Those circumstances, and the dissoluteness of his people, were the occasion of much altercation between the natives and the strangers.† Hatred broke out into open contest; the fray was checked by some of the chief citizens; it appeared again, but Plantagenet with a few knights finally quelled it. Philip Augustus had favoured the cause of the Sicilians, and the English monarch, therefore, regarded him as an enemy, and planted his standard on the quarters of

\* Hév. 678.

† Vinesauf, ii. 16, 17. Fazello says, that the Messinians had seized the occasion of the English people rioting in the streets to drive them out, and shut the gates upon them. "Gl'Inglisi andavano licentiosamente vagando per la città con molta lascivia." Fazello, Ist. de Sic. lib. 7.

of the French.\* The mediation of the barons prevented a war between Philip and Richard, and the latter shewed his goodwill to his royal companion by delivering Messina to the soldiers of the military orders, till Tancred should equitably settle the claims of his sister. Peace was then concluded. Richard renounced all claims on Sicily; his nephew Arthur, duke of Brittany, was to be married to a daughter of Tancred, and the Sicilian prince agreed to equip ten galleys, and six palanders or horse transports, for the Crusaders: to pay the dowry to Richard's sister, and the legacies which William the Good had bequeathed to Henry II. of England.† Messina was given to the French king, and Richard encamped without the walls.‡ Various regulations were made for intercourse between the different nations during the winter months. Merchants were not to purchase bread or corn in the army for the purpose of resale, and the profits on their general transactions, were restricted to one denarius in ten. Gaming was permitted to the knights and clergy, to the exclusion of the rest of the army. No individual;

D 3

however;

\* Ben. A. Pet. 606-608.

† According to Roger de Hoveden the compensation for Joanna's dower was twenty thousand ounces of gold, and a like sum was the value of the legacies, 676.

‡ Neub. iv. 12.



CHAP. I. however, was to lose more than twenty shillings in one day or night.\* For some time there was a frequent interchange of good offices between the French and English. Richard gave Philip several ships, and was so prodigal of his money among the soldiers, that it was commonly said, he was more bountiful in a month than his father had been in a year. But the disputes at Messina had rankled in the mind of Philip, and contemporary English historians have charged him with offering his assistance to Tancred for the expulsion of Richard. The largesses of Plantagenet, however, had gained him the friendship of the Sicilian prince. In the moment of confidence, Tancred shewed his benefactor some letters of the French king, expressive of his treacherous designs. The count of Flanders charged Philip with baseness, and the sight of the papers threw him into confusion. But recovering himself he declared that the letters were forgeries, and an impudent trick of Richard to break off his match with Alice of France. This dispute brought matters to a crisis, a new treaty was made between the two kings; the breach of a contract which Philip had contemplated with indignation he now looked upon as a matter of indifference,

\* Hoveden, 675.

indifference, for after certain interchanges of money and territory, the English monarch was allowed a free choice in marriage.\*

CHAP. I.

In the month of March 1191 Philip left Sicily, and sailed to Acre. His appearance was regarded as a divine blessing; in the moment of elation the attacks were renewed; but orders were soon given for suspending them till the arrival of Richard, and it is more rational to think that the improbability of success without him was Philip's motive, and not the specious reason that as the cause was common, the victory should be common also.† Before his departure from Sicily, Richard avowed that he would lead a life of virtue, and with all humility submitted his back to the scourges of his clergy. He was detained for a short time on account of the expected arrival of his mother Eleanor with the princess Berengaria of Navarre, to whom he had been affianced, long before his treaty with Philip gave him liberty of marriage. About a fortnight after the departure of his rival, the English monarch set sail. In the absence of numerical statements concerning the strength of

The French sail to Acre.

Departure of Richard.

D 4

his

\* Bromton, 1195. Hoveden, 687, 688. Rymer, I. 54, new edit. Rigord in Duchesne, vol. v. p. 32, says that "there were disputes between Richard and Philip; but that they only related to the time of sailing."

† Herold, chap. 10.

CHAP. I. his army, we can conjecture that it was formidable, from the fact that his soldiers, horses and stores, filled two hundred ships of various sizes. A storm dispersed his fleet, and he heard at Rhodes that two of his vessels had been stranded on the shores of Cyprus, and that the people of the island had plundered and imprisoned such of the crews as had survived shipwreck. The vessel which carried the dowager queen of Sicily and Berengaria had been refused entrance into port. Richard soon arrived off Limisso, and it is singular that so irascible a monarch should three times demand reparation. He who had wantonly violated the law of nations would not willingly remedy the wrong; the English therefore landed on the shores of Cyprus; the archers as usual preceded to clear the way; their barbed arrows fell like showers of rain on the meadows,\* and supported by the heavily armed soldiers they drove the emperor and his Greeks into the interior of the island. The ruler of Cyprus was of the race of Comnenus, but he had changed his government into a kingdom. He had not courted the people by augmenting their privileges: and regarding Richard as their preserver, they gladly assisted him in subduing the tyrant and usurper. Isaac was taken; the king

He subjugates Cyprus.

\* " ——— quasi imber super gramina, ita cecidere sagittæ super pugnantes." Haveden, p. 690.

king of England became lord of Cyprus; he taxed the people to the dreadful amount of the half of their moveables, and then accorded to them the rights they had enjoyed under the dominion of the Byzantine emperors. Richard reposed himself from the toil of conquest by celebrating his marriage with Berengaria, and participating in the festivities of Limisso.\* But in a few weeks he roused himself to arms. His fleet left Cyprus;† a large troop ship of Saladin crossed

He sails  
from Cy-  
prus.

\* Hoveden, 692. Bromton, 1200. William of Newborough makes Richard stay more than two months at Cyprus. His residence there could not have been so long; for he left Sicily in April, and arrived at Acre on the 8th of June.

† Hoveden, 692. Vinesauf, p. 329. Brompton, cap. 102. The Saracenian vessel sank before the English got out much of the stores. But the Romance says,

The king found in the dromound, sans fail,  
Mickle store, and great vitail,  
Many barrels full of fire gregeys;  
And many thousand bow Turkeis;  
Hooked arrows, and quarelles.  
They found there full many barrels  
Of wheat, and wine great plenty;  
Gold and silver, and ilke daintey,  
Of treasure he had not half the mound  
That in the dromaund was yfound,  
For it drowned in the flood,  
Ere half uncharged were that good.

Ellis's Specimens of Early English Metrical Romances, vol. ii. p. 219.

**CHAP. I.** crossed his way ; the light gallies surrounded and attacked her, but the lofty sides of the Turk could not be mounted. " I will crucify " all my soldiers if she should escape," exclaimed Richard. His men, more in dread of their sovereign's wrath than the swords of the foe, impelled the sharp beaks of their vessels against the enemy ; some of the soldiers dived into the sea, and seized the rudder ; and others came to close combat with the Saracens. In order to make the capture an unprofitable one, the emir commanded his troops to cut through the sides of their ship till the waters should rush in. They then leaped on the decks of the English gallies. But the sanguinary and ungenerous Richard killed or cast overboard his defenceless enemies, or, with an avarice equally detestable, saved the commanders for the sake of their ransom.

His cruelty.

## CHAP. II.

## CONTINUATION OF THE THIRD CRUSADE.

*Arrival of the English at Acre.....Dissentions between the French and English kings.....Heroism of Richard.....Reconciliation between Richard and Philip Augustus.....Surrender of Acre.....Departure of the French king.....March of the Croises from Acre to Azotus.....Richard defeats Saladin.....He marches to Jaffa.....He advances to Ramula.....Is dissuaded from marching to Jerusalem.....Falls back on Ascalon.....Fruitless negotiation for peace.....Death of the marquis of Tyre.....Richard advances towards Jerusalem.....The enterprise abandoned.....Richard's heroism at Jaffa.....It leads to an honourable peace.....Courtesy of the king and the sultan.....Miscellaneous events.....Richard leaves the holy land.....Lands in Dalmatia.....His adventures in Germany.....Is taken prisoner.....His trial at Worms.....His ransom.....His return to England.*

Shouts of warm and gratulatory acclamations saluted the English on their arrival at Acre. The brilliant scene before them was calculated to excite all the animating feelings of warriors. The martial youth of Europe were assembled on the plain in all the pride and pomp of chivalry. The splendid tents, the gorgeous en-

June 8,  
1191.  
Arrival of  
the English  
at Acre.

CHAP. II. signs, the glittering weapons, the armorial cognisances, displayed the varieties of individual fancy and national peculiarities. On the eminences in the distance the thick embattled squadrons of the sultan were encamped. The Mameluk Tartar was armed with his bow; the people of the higher Egypt with their flails and scourges, and the Bedoweens with their spears and small round shields. The brazen drum sounded the note of war; and the black banner of Saladin was raised in proud defiance of the crimson standard of the cross.\*

Dissensions  
between the  
French and  
English  
kings.

The joy with which the French regarded the English was soon changed for the bitter feelings of military envy and national hatred. The religious objects of the war appeared to be forgotten. The Genoese and Templars sided with Philip; and the Pisans and Hospitalians with Richard. The king of France prepared his soldiers and their battering engines for a vigorous and general assault on the walls of Acre; and murmured revenge when his martial competitor declined co-operation on the ground of illness.† The choicest part of the French troops marched to the walls, eager to shame the English. The garrison, as usual, struck their atabals; and the dreadful occasion of the alarm

was

\* Vineauf, I. 1, 2. † See note D.

was soon communicated to Saladin. But high as was the valour of the assailants, their numbers were not adequate ; and they were repulsed in every point. When Saladin, however, attempted to carry destruction into the army and camp of his baffled foes, he was driven back with loss. The French re-appeared as assailants ; once again displayed their imprudent spirit ; and more than one cavalier emulated the fame of the noble Alberic Clement, who had sworn that he would enter Acre or die in the effort, and who expired upon the walls. In sickness and in convalescence Richard was carried to his military engines on a mattress,\* and was so active in making and using his petrarie, that he soon destroyed half of one of the Turkish towers. He preserved his machines from the Greek fire of the city ; and he rewarded his Balistarii for every stone which they removed from the walls. The ditch was filled up ; the tower was completely levelled ; and the English heroes, particularly the earl of Leicester† and the bishop of Salisbury, prepared

Heroism of  
Richard.

\* The martial spirit of Saladin also rose above corporeal sufferings. Bohadin gives several instances of his firmness, particularly on one occasion, when he formed his troops in battle array, and rode about the field from morning to night, though his legs were covered with biles, and it was thought that he could only recline. Bohadin, p. 18.

† Robert Fitz Parnel accompanied king Richard from England,



CHAP. II. pared to enter the breach. The conflict was close and sanguinary. The Pisans came to the assistance of the English; but the fury of the Turks was irresistible; and the walls were cleared of the enemy. The failure of the ambitious attempts of each of the monarchs at the capture of Acre without the aid of his rival, evinced the necessity of co-operation. A reconciliation in consequence was effected between Richard and Philip; and they determined that one should attack the walls, while the other guarded the camp from the approaches of Saladin.\* But Acre had suffered so dreadfully from a two years' siege, that the inhabitants were reduced to the melancholy necessity of resolving to desist from defence. They sent ambassadors to the camp of their foes, offering the surrender of the city, unless a relief from Saladin should speedily arrive; and requiring free egress for themselves and property. Philip and the French barons were willing to accept these terms; but Richard terminated the negotiation, by insisting that both public and private possessions should be delivered to the conquerors.

Reconciliation of the kings.

England, and became earl of Leicester, before he left France, on hearing of the death of his father in Greece, on his return from Palestine. Dugdale, Baronage, vol. i. p. 88.

\* Vinesauf, iii. 5-11. Hoveden, 694. Ben. Ab. 659.

querors. Saladin endeavoured to infuse his own invincible spirit into the minds of his people, and revived for a moment their languid courage, by directing their hopes to succour from Egypt. The Christians continued their assaults by day and night; and so distressed were the Turks, that many of them left the city and became renegadoes. The expected aid from Cairo did not arrive; and the citizens wrung from Saladin his permission for them to capitulate. Their safety was accordingly purchased by their agreeing to deliver unto the two kings the city itself, and five hundred Christian prisoners who were in it. The true cross was to be resigned, with one thousand other captives, and two hundred knights selected by the allies from those who were in the hands of Saladin: and unless the Muselmans paid to Richard and Philip the sum of two hundred thousand pieces of gold within forty days, the inhabitants of Acre should be at the mercy of the conquerors. These conditions were assented to; and, before the city changed its lords, a proclamation was made in the French and English camps, that no one should injure or insult such of the Turks as quitted the place. The Christians entered Acre; the banners of the two kings floated on the ramparts; but precedence seems to have been given to Richard,

for

CHAP. II.

Surrender  
of Acre,  
July 12,  
1191.

**CHAP. II.** for he and his wife and sister inhabited the royal palace, while Philip occupied the house of the Templars.\* The royal conquerors appropriated to themselves the city's store of arms and provisions. They could not refuse the justice of their soldiers' claim, founded on the principle, that those who had shared the labours should divide the reward; but payment was so long deferred, that many persons were forced by poverty to sell their military equipments, and return to Europe.† The kings were divided in opinion respecting the title to the sovereignty over Palestine. Guy of Lusignan, and the princes of Antioch and Tripoli had visited Richard in Cyprus, and the English monarch was persuaded to espouse the cause of the weak and miserable Lusignan. Conrad had shewn himself worthy of a kingdom; and though it is most probable that the love of opposition to Richard was the feeling which gained him the friendship of Philip, yet the side which the French king took was certainly that of merit.

\* Vinesauf, iii. 12-18. Hoveden, 694-696. Bohadin, cap. 98-114. The Arabic writers are warm in their praises of the conduct and bravery of Richard. Bohadin says that the army thought Philip the greatest sovereign in name and dignity, and Richard the wealthiest prince and ablest warrior, c. 97.

† Bened. 666.

merit. The disputes were sometimes heard of during the siege; but after the capture, they raged with violence. Negotiations, however, were entered into, and mutual rights were compromised by the agreement that Lusignan should be styled king of Jerusalem, and lord of Jaffa and Ascalon; yet that if Conrad should be the survivor, he and his heirs were to have perpetual sovereignty.\* The English monarch afterwards generously surrendered the isle of Cyprus to Lusignan.

CHAP. II.

A few weeks after the capitulation of Acre, and before the time had elapsed for the performance of all the conditions of the treaty, Philip Augustus expressed his wish of returning to Europe. The French nobility attributed to him motives of selfishness; and Richard, with a mixture of seriousness and sarcasm, declared that if the French king were really ill from bodily infirmities,

Departure  
of the  
French  
king.

VOL. II.

E

ties,

\* Vinesauf, iii. 20. Bromton, p. 1191, 1208. Hoveden, 685, and Benedict, p. 630, give the names of most of the great persons who died at Acre. Some of them we have mentioned. Among the others, those which are interesting to the English reader, are Ralph, archdeacon of Colchester, Silvester the seneschal of the archbishop of Canterbury, William earl Ferrers, Robert Scrope, of Barton, Henry Pigot, seneschal of Lord Surry, Walter Scrope, Mowbray, Talbot, and St. John. Vinesauf computes those who died during the siege of Acre at three hundred thousand. Bohadin, p. 180, doubles the number.

CHAP. XL. lies, or from dread of the enemy, he had better return to his native air; but that it would be disgraceful to leave the work of the Crusade unperformed. The English monarch, however, consented to his departure, yet dreading the violence of his ambition, he compelled him to swear not to make war upon his allies, until at least forty days after the return of their king. The duke of Burgundy and the largest portion of the French army, it was also stipulated, were to remain in Syria under the command of Richard. Philip Augustus went to Tyre, gave to the marquis of that city his moiety, both of Acre and of the Turkish prisoners, and then set sail for Europe.\*

July 31.

Richard

\* Newborough, iv. 22. Bernardus, Thes. 811. Hoveden, 697. Vinesauf, iii. 12-18. Bohadin, cap. 98-114. Richard resented Philip's keeping the prisoners from him. He sent the Bishop of Salisbury to demand them from Conrad. The marquis would not deliver them up, until the duke of Burgundy threatened him with war. Taking his choice of the bad motives which may be attributed to Philip, Robert of Gloucester says that envy was the passion which made him wish to return to Europe.

"So that king Philip was annoy'd there at the thing,

"That there was not of him a word, but all of Richard the king,

"Vaste he let trossi,\* to France for to draw,

"Sori was the king Richard to lose his felawe."

\* He commanded his soldiers quickly to make ready for departure.

Richard repaired the shattered walls and houses of Acre; and the bishop of Salisbury and the rest of the clergy re-edified and consecrated the altars.\* The piece of holy wood under which the Syrian Christians had so often fought, was still in the hands of the Saracens; and, from bad principle or inability, the two hundred thousand pieces of gold had not been paid to the Croises. Shortly before the expiration of the forty days, Saladin endeavoured to avert from the prisoners in Richard's hands the doom which was allotted them by the treaty in case of failure of payment. But the English king rejected with disdain his presents and courtesy, murdered all the poorer class of the Musselman prisoners, and reserved the more opulent ones for ransom.†

The lion-hearted monarch prepared for hostile operations: but it was with difficulty that the soldiers would leave the pleasures of Acre. An historian tells us that the wine in the city had already changed the complexion of the gravest Christian knights, and, for the preservation of discipline, women were prohibited from marching with the army.‡ The largesses

E 2

of

\* Ben. Ab. p. 665.

† See note E.

‡ The city was abundant, says Vinesauf, "vino peroptime  
 "et puellis pulcherrimis; mulieres igitur frequentantes et  
 "vina,

## CHAP. II.

22 August,  
1191.  
March of  
the Croises  
from Acre  
to Azotus.

of Richard to the duke of Austria, the count of Champagne, and others, kept them from following Philip to Europe, and Plantagenet was at the head of nearly thirty thousand French, German, and English soldiers.\* These holy warriors left Acre under the glorious ensign of the cross, and marched † in a southerly direction, generally within sight of their ships, which coasted

"vina, nimis dissolute se gerebant quamplurimi, ut civitas  
"pollueretur a luxuria insipientium, et gula inhabitantium  
"in ea, a quorum impudentia facies sapientiorum contra-  
"hebat ruborem. Ad auferendam autem hujus maculæ  
"rubiginam spurcitiam procuratum est de consilio, ne quæ  
"mulier exiret a civitate cum exercitu, sed remaneret in  
"civitate, nisi tantum pedites lotrices quæ non forent gravi  
"nec occasio peccati."

\* Trivetii Annales, p. 47.

† The army were sadly tormented by tarantulas. The sick people cured the bite by applying theriaca to the part affected. Others (Vinesauf calls them the prudentiores) drove the vermin away by making shouts and noises of every description. Vinesauf, iv. 13, and see before, vol. i. p. 239, note. The practisers of leechcraft, according to the romances of chivalry, had much faith in treacle as a cure for poison, and, indeed, of all diseases. According to T. Bartholinus, the great Danish physician in the middle of the seventeenth century, so much importance was in ancient times attached to this medicine, that the herbs and drugs which entered into the composition of it were publicly exposed previously to the preparation being made. Daillecourt sur les Crusades, p. 324. n.

coasted along the shores, bearing forage and provisions, and military necessities. Clouds of Turks overhung and burst on the advancing army; the red cross knights in the van, and the military friars in the rear, frequently broke the violence of the storm; but the safety of the Crusaders was principally owing to the indissoluble firmness of their columns, and their resolute forbearance.\* The army always halted at night-fall; heralds thrice cried aloud, "Save the holy sepulchre!" and the soldiers, thus reminded of their duties and their object, immediately with raised hands and tearful eyes implored the pity and the aid of Heaven.† Near Azotus a general engagement could no longer be avoided by Richard. The right of his line was commanded by that heroic and hardy champion of the cross, James D'Avesnes.

E 3

The

\* Defensive war was so completely the object of the Crusaders, that each man was covered with pieces of cloth, united together by rings, on which he received without injury the enemy's arrows. Bohadin (who narrates this curious circumstance) adds, that he himself saw several of the Christians who had not one or two, but ten arrows adhering to their backs, and yet who marched forwards with a quiet step, and without trepidation. Bohadin, p. 189. So close did they march, that if an apple had been thrown, it must have struck either a man or a horse. Vinesauf, iv. 17.

† Vinesauf, iv. 9-16.



CHAP. II. The Duke of Burgundy, a man of doubtful virtue, headed the left: and Plantagenet himself was the stay and bulwark of the centre. The hosts of Syria and Egypt led by Saladin made a general and impetuous charge on their foe. The right wing of the Christians was repulsed; the left drove back the Saracens, but it was drawn by the enemy far from the other divisions of the army. Richard hastened with a select band to the aid of the duke of Burgundy, and Saladin, in his endeavour to strengthen his right wing, removed the weight of hostility from James D'Avesnes. No deep impression had been made on the English lines. The cavalry had often in the course of the battle, when galled by the enemy's arrows, clamoured for leave to attack: Richard was firm, cool, and steady to his purpose. But when he saw that the Turkish quivers were exhausted, and the enemy's impetuosity had led to their confusion, his trumpets sounded the charge, his infantry wheeled behind the cavalry, and the knights giving full scope to their fury, rushed on their scattered foe. The personal bravery of Richard achieved wonders; his countenance, his gestures, his invocations to St. George, seconded the ardour of his troops, and the Turks were driven back with great slaughter to Azotus. The loss of the Christians, though

Richard defeats Saladin.

though not numerous, was severe, for James CHAP. II.  
D'Avesnes perished, and his death was justly  
regretted by the king as the loss of a great pil-  
lar of the Christian cause.\*

The progress of Cœur de Lion was no longer  
molested, and he quickly arrived at Jaffa. That  
city was now without fortifications, for when  
the tide of victory turned from the Musselmans  
at Azotus, Saladin commanded the dismantling  
of all his fortresses in Palestine. It was policy  
to keep his enemies perpetually in the field, and  
to exhaust them by ceaseless skirmishes and  
engagements. As the road to Ascalon was open,  
Richard wished to press his advantages: but  
the spirit of faction renewed its baneful influence,  
and the French barons insisted on the necessity  
of restoring the works of Jaffa. Their opinion He marches  
to Jaffa.  
was in unfortunate accordance with the inclina-  
tions of an army already attenuated by incessant  
marching, and who thought with regret on the  
pleasures which had been for a while familiarised

## E 4

\* Vinesauf, iv. 17-22. Neubridge, iv. 28. Hoveden,  
638. Bohadin, c. 120: and also Peter Langtoft, 187-190,  
a writer that may be safely followed, except when he mis-  
gles his history with the fables in the romance of Richard.  
Trivet says, that at the battle of Azotus seven thousand  
Turks and thirty-two of their emirs were slain: and that of  
the Christians there did not fall a tenth part of that number,  
nor even a tenth part of a tenth. Annales, p. 109.

**CHAP. II.** and endeared to them at Acre. It was resolved, therefore, that Jaffa should be re-fortified. Plantagenet, alive to every duty of a general, urged the completion of the works. The soldiers, however, gradually sunk into that state of luxury and idleness, from which they had been with such difficulty recovered by Richard. The Muselmans roused themselves from the distress and panic of their late defeat at Azotus; they began to collect in the vicinity of Jaffa, and their military appearance awoke the English and French from their disgraceful sleep of licentiousness. Richard, as ardent in pleasure as in war, enjoyed the amusement of falconry, heedless of the enemy. On one occasion the royal party would have paid dearly for their temerity; if a Provençal gentleman, named William de Pratelles, had not cried aloud, "I am the king;" and by this noble lie the attention of the Saracens was drawn upon himself, while the real sovereign escaped.\* Shortly afterwards, a body of Templars fell into an ambuscade of the Turks. Richard sent the earl of Leicester to the aid of the brave but exhausted knights, and promised to follow straight. Before he could buckle on his

\* The noble Provençal was taken prisoner by the Turks. Richard was not ungrateful, for his last act in the holy land was the purchase of his deliverer's freedom.

his coat of steel, he heard that the enemy had triumphed. Despising all personal solicitude, and generously declaring he should not deserve the name of king if he abandoned those whom he had vowed to succour, he flew to the place of combat, plunged into the thickest of the fight, and his impetuosity received its usual reward of success.\* The fortifications of Jaffa were at length restored, a vigorous renewal of the war was determined on, and Plantagenet declared to the Saracens that the only way of averting his wrath would be to surrender to him the kingdom of Jerusalem, as it existed in the reign of Baldwin the leper. Saladin did not reject this proposal with disdain, but made a modification of the terms, in offering to yield Baylastine from the Jordan to the sea. The negotiation lasted for some time. Richard was deceived and cajoled by the presents and blandishments of Saphadin, who was the brother of Saladin, and the Christians were ashamed that their leader should be so friendly with an infidel. The barons soon saw, and compelled their royal lord to see, the artifice of the Turks, who resumed their attacks, and the negotiation was broken off. The soldiers of Richard pursued their course to Ramula; they had taken few precautions

CHAPTER II.

He advances to  
Ramula.  
Nov.

\* Vinesauf, 26, 30.

## CHAP. II.

Dissuaded  
from  
marching  
to Jerusa-  
lem.

Falls back  
on Ascalon.

cautions against the inclemency of the season; the winds tore up the tents, and the rains spoiled the provisions, and rusted the arms. The earl of Leicester was of especial service in preserving them from the incessant attacks of the Turks. As they approached Jerusalem, they were joined by those whom they had left at Jaffa, and every person prepared for the completion of his pilgrimage in the holy city. But the Templars, Hospitallers, and Pisans, dissuaded the king from attacking Jerusalem, on the arguments, that even if it should be taken, they would immediately have to fight with the Turks in the neighbourhood; and that as soon as that great object of the religious journey, the recovery of the sepulchre, was attained, the soldiers would return to Europe, and leave the holy land to its fate.\* The people, who were the objects of these suspicions of inconstancy, murmured and then clamoured at this vacillation of council; but Richard commanded a retreat, and the army fell back upon Ramla, and then continued its retrogression to Ascalon, a city of high consequence in the judgment of the Latins, because it was the link between the Turks in Jerusalem and the Turks in Egypt.† Until the return

\* Vinesauf, iv. 31, 35.

† Vinesauf, v. 1.

return of the spring, all commerce between Assalon and other countries was cut off, and the army endured therefore the hardships of famine, in addition to the usual severities of the climate. The impatient duke of Burgundy deserted the standard of Richard; some of the French soldiers went to Acre and Jaffa; and others found a welcome reception at the court of the marquis of Tyre. But discontent gave place for a while to better feelings; and, at the solicitation of Plantagenet, most of the deserters returned to their duty. But Conrad disdained an answer to the royal summons. The walls of Assalon\* were soon repaired, for the proudest nobles and the most dignified clergy worked like the meanest of the people. The duke of Austria was the only distinguished man who was wrapped in haughty selfishness, and who could say that he was neither a carpenter nor a mason.† Before indeed the works were completed, Richard lost the aid of his French allies, who, more mercenary than chivalric, retired to Acre, because the royal coffers were exhausted.

\* The Crusaders amused themselves, also, with rebuilding Gaza. They gave it to the Templars, who had enjoyed it before the Saracenian conquest. J. de Vitry, p. 1123, in Bongarsius.

† The cause of the dispute between Richard and the duke of Austria is mentioned in note E.

CHAP. II. exhausted, and the king could not give them their stipulated pay. Commercial jealousy, as well as military envy, obstructed the Crusades. The Genoese and Pisans made Acre the theatre of their animosities; and an appearance of dignity and disinterestedness was given to their feuds, when they fought in the name and for the interests of their respective friends, Conrad and Guy. The marquis of Tyre joined his troops to the Genoese, and the civil war would have spread through all the Christian powers, if Plantagenet had not marched from Ascalon to Acre. Conrad prudently retraced his steps, and by the address of the English king the breach between the republicans was closed. Richard endeavoured to conciliate the marquis; but the young nobleman aspired to independence and sovereign power, drew seven hundred French soldiers from Ascalon to Tyre, and allied himself with Saladin. When Richard had retired from Jerusalem, and his army became broken, Saladin had dismissed many of his troops to their families and homes; but when he heard of the defection of Conrad, he thought that the moment of active hostility was arrived, and he accordingly spread his standard, and summoned his hosts.\* Richard was cool and undismayed

at

\* Vinesauf, iv. 36, 37, v. 1, 15.

at the military port of his enemy, but political disturbances in England demanded the presence of the monarch, and he was compelled to yield to his necessities, and solicit his generous foe to terminate the war. He declared that he required only the possession of the sacred city, and of the true cross. But the Muselman replied, that Jerusalem was as dear to the Moslem as to the Christian world, and that he would never be guilty of conniving at idolatry, by permitting the worship of a piece of wood. Thwarted by the religious principles of his enemies, Richard endeavoured to win upon their softer affections. He proposed a consolidation of the Christian and Muhammedan interests, the establishment of a government at Jerusalem, partly European and partly Asiatic; and these schemes of policy were to be carried into effect by the marriage of Saphadin with the widow of William king of Sicily. The Muselman princes would have acceded to these terms; but the marriage was thought to be so scandalous to religion, that the imams and the priests raised a storm of clamour, and Richard and Saladin, powerful as they were, submitted to popular opinion.\* The necessity

CHAP. II.

March

1192.

Fruitless  
negotiation  
for peace.

\* Bohadin, chap. 127, &c. Abulfeda, iv. 111. D'Herbelot, article Salaheddin, vol. iii. 178. In all these negotiations, the people of the two armies lived in friendly inter-

course,



CHAP. II. necessity of Richard's return to England grew stronger, and the only cause of his delay was the choice of a military commander of the Christians. The imbecile Guy had but few partisans, and the public voice was in favour of the valiant Conrad: Richard generously overlooked the circumstance, that the prince of Tyre was his enemy, and the friend of Saladin, and consented to the public wish. But while preparations were making for the coronation, Conrad was slain by two of the Assassins. In the first moments of indignation, the French declared that Richard had instigated the murderers.\* They demanded from the widow of Conrad the resignation of Tyre, but she was too politic to encounter the anger of the king. Count Henry

Death of  
Conrad.

course, and mingled in the tournament and dance. More than this; through the whole of the war, Saladin and Richard emulated each other as much in the reciprocation of courtesy, as in military exploits. If ever the king of England chanced to be ill, Saladin sent him presents of Damascene pears, peaches, and other fruits. The same liberal hand gave the luxury of snow, in the hot seasons. Hoveden, p. 693. Saladin could not but have felt some kindness for gallant warriors, whether Christians or Muselmans, if it be true, that as soon as he was old enough to bear arms, he had requested and received the honour of knighthood from a French cavalier, named Humphrey de Thoron. Hist. Hier. in Bongarsius, p. 1152. Vinesauf, book i. chap. iii.

\* On this subject, see note G.

Henry of Champagne appeared in the midst of the tumult; he took the throne upon the invitation of the people, and, following the approved precedent, he secured himself from opposition by marrying the widow of Conrad.\* Richard confirmed the election of the people, and the civil war was closed.† The duke of Burgundy and the count of Champagne joined Richard. Disregarding the calls from England, the king led his English and Normans to the fortress of Darum, reduced it, and gave it to the French, whose preparations for the attack had been rendered needless by the superior activity of their allies.‡ Some new messengers from England brought fresh accounts of the increasing power of Prince John, and the treachery of Philip Augustus. The army continued its march towards Jerusalem, and encamped in the valley of Hebron. The generals and soldiers vowed that they would not quit Palestine without having redeemed the sepulchre. Every thing were the face of joy when this resolution was adopted; Richard participated in the feeling, and although he thought that his presence in England would be the only means of restoring affairs there, yet he professed to the duke of Burgundy

CHAP. II.

May.  
Advances  
towards  
Jerusalem.

\* Vinesauf, v. 16, 28.

† Vinesauf, v. 35, 37.

‡ Vinesauf, v. 36, 38. Sanutus, 200.

CHAP. II. The Duke of Burgundy, a man of doubtful virtue, headed the left: and Plantagenet himself was the stay and bulwark of the centre. The hosts of Syria and Egypt led by Saladin made a general and impetuous charge on their foe. The right wing of the Christians was repulsed; the left drove back the Saracens, but it was drawn by the enemy far from the other divisions of the army. Richard hastened with a select band to the aid of the duke of Burgundy, and Saladin, in his endeavour to strengthen his right wing, removed the weight of hostility from James D'Avesnes. No deep impression had been made on the English lines: The cavalry had often in the course of the battle, when galled by the enemy's arrows, clamoured for leave to attack: Richard was firm, cool, and steady to his purpose. But when he saw that the Turkish quivers were exhausted, and the enemy's impetuosity had led to their confusion, his trumpets sounded the charge, his infantry wheeled behind the cavalry, and the knights giving full scope to their fury, rushed on their scattered foe. The personal bravery of Richard achieved wonders; his countenance, his gestures, his invocations to St. George, seconded the ardour of his troops, and the Turks were driven back with great slaughter to Azotus. The loss of the Christians,

though

Richard de-  
feats Sala-  
din.

though not numerous, was severe, for James CHAP. II.  
D'Avesnes perished, and his death was justly  
regretted by the king as the loss of a great pil-  
lar of the Christian cause.\*

The progress of Cœur de Lion was no longer  
molested, and he quickly arrived at Jaffa. That  
city was now without fortifications, for when  
the tide of victory turned from the Musselmans  
at Azotus, Saladin commanded the dismantling  
of all his fortresses in Palestine. It was policy  
to keep his enemies perpetually in the field, and  
to exhaust them by ceaseless skirmishes and  
engagements. As the road to Ascalon was open,  
Richard wished to press his advantages: but  
the spirit of faction renewed its baneful influence,  
and the French barons insisted on the necessity  
of restoring the works of Jaffa. Their opinion  
was in unfortunate accordance with the inclina-  
tions of an army already attenuated by incessant  
marching, and who thought with regret on the  
pleasures which had been for a while familiarised

He marches  
to Jaffa.

E 4

\* Vinesauf, iv. 17-22. Neubridge, iv. 28. Hoveden,  
698. Bohadin, c. 120: and also Peter Langtoft, 187-190;  
a writer that may be safely followed, except when he mis-  
gles his history with the fables in the romance of Richard.  
Trivet says, that at the battle of Azotus seven thousand  
Turks and thirty-two of their emirs were slain: and that of  
the Christians there did not fall a tenth part of that number,  
nor even a tenth part of a tenth. Annales, p. 108.

CHAP. II. march to Cairo : and although they acquiesced, yet as they were not zealous, Richard remained in inactivity and indecision.\* Active hostility against the Saracens was abandoned by the Christians for the fiercer employment of civil rancour and dissensions : and if a retreat had not been commanded, the army would have been totally destroyed by Saladin. Richard could preserve but little order and discipline among the soldiers. Some retired to Jaffa, but Acre was the rendezvous of most of the army, Saladin's spies had communicated to their master the vacillations of the Crusaders' councils ; and even before they had quitted the object of their armament, he had sent news of the probable turn of affairs to many of the Muselman states. Hope succeeded to despondency, vigour to relaxation, and twenty thousand horsemen and crowds of infantry were soon collected under the walls of Jerusalem. The Turks actively proceeded to avail themselves of the declining fortunes of the invaders. By the quickest marches Saladin reached Jaffa, and so vigorous was his siege of it that in a few days one of the gates was broken down, and such of the people as could not defend themselves

\* On the history of the circumstances respecting the deserting of the cause of the holy land, see note H.

selves in the great tower, or escape by sea, were destroyed. Already were the battering rams prepared for execution, when the patriarch and some French and English knights agreed to become the prisoners of Saladin, and that heavy ransoms should be fixed for the redemption of the citizens, if succour did not arrive during the next day. Before the morning, however, the brave Plantagenet reached Jaffa. Abandoning the hope of rescuing the holy land from infidel subjection, he was on the point of quitting Acre, and of returning to Europe, when the precipitancy of his Moslem rival opened again all his visions of glory and conquest. The French refused to march; but the Templars and Hospitallers, the Pisans and Genoese, the earl of Leicester and the other English nobles, vowed to save their friends. Richard and some of his troops went by sea to Jaffa; other soldiers took the land course, but were dreadfully distressed by those impediments which Saladin, in anticipation of their approach, cast in their way. Plantagenet was the first who leaped on shore, and the most active with his deadly sword. So furious was their attack, that the astonished Turks deserted the town, and when the army at a little distance saw the standard of Richard planted on the walls, they retreated some miles into the country. Their

Richard's  
herolam  
at Jaffa.

CHAP. II. terror was changed into shame and rage when it was found that the Turkish hosts had been panic-struck by a troop of five hundred men.\* Saladin in the next night attempted to regain his advantages. But the anxiously vigilant Richard started from his tent armed at all points, and called his faithful friends to his side. His archers and cross-bow men formed an impenetrable phalanx; his soldiers that were on horseback (and they were only ten) fought singly like true heroes of chivalry; and when the Turks felt again the edge of the falchion, which had turned the day at Azotus, their panic was renewed. Indeed so splendid and worthy of admiration were the achievements of the *Melech Ric*, that even the brother of Saladin, at one time seeing him dismounted, sent him two horses as tokens of respect.† Richard's victory placed him in a commanding attitude. Instead of wishing for new battles he solicited peace; and Saladin, at length exhausted by wars, submitted to necessity. The Christian king, and the sultan of Egypt, interchanged

It leads to  
an honour-  
able peace.

Courtesy of  
the king

\* Vinesauf, vi. 8-16. M. Paris, 142. Bohadin, c. 163, 164.

† Vinesauf, 20, 22, 23. Some months before the battle of Jaffa, Saphadin had shewn his respect for the military character of Richard, by obtaining from him the honour of knighthood for his (Saphadin's) son. Vinesauf, v. 6.

changed expressions of esteem, and as the former avowed his contempt of the vulgar obligation of oaths, they only grasped each other's hands in pledge of fidelity. A truce was agreed upon for three years and eight months: the fort of Ascalon was to be destroyed; but Jaffa and Tyre, with the country between them, were to be surrendered to the Christians.\* The people of the west were also at liberty to make their pilgrimages to Jerusalem, exempt from the taxes which the Saracenian princes had in former times imposed.

CHAP. II.

and of the  
Sultan.

The French soldiers at Acre prepared to return to Europe; but wished first to behold the sepulchre which was so dear and sacred to the Christians. But Richard was indignant at the audacity of men who claimed the benefit of a treaty which no efforts of their own had procured. They had lost the laurel of holy warriors, and they deserved not to bear the pilgrim's palm. The rest of the army visited the hallowed places, and Saladin, alive to every honourable obligation, prevented his subjects from injuring the persons and insulting the feelings of the devout palmers. The bishop of Salisbury was treated with marked respect. The generous

Miscellaneous  
events.

F 3

Curd

\* Vinesauf, 25-28. D'Herbelot, article Salaheddin, vol. iii. p. 178.



CHAP. II. **Curd** admired valour and nobleness even in a Christian, and when the prelate arrived at Jerusalem he was invited to the royal palace. In a familiar conversation Saladin expressed his admiration of the bravery of Plantagenet, but thought that the skill of the general did not equal the valour of the knight.\* The courteous prelate complimented the Muselman by replying that there were not two such warriors in the world as the English and the Syrian monarchs. Often have we had occasion to observe the generosity of Saladin in the moment of victory. At the solicitation of the bishop he allowed establishments of Latin priests in the holy sepulchre, and in the churches of Bethlehem and Nazareth. He had pity, too, on the different barons whom his conquests had dispossessed. He gave to the lord of Saffet a handsome town near Tyre; to Belian of Ibelin a castle, four miles from Acre; and he restored Caiphas, Cesarea, and Azotus to their respective lords. Count Henry of Champagne became master of Jaffa.†

The loss of many thousand soldiers on the  
plains

\* But Saladin might have praised Richard for the steadiness with which he moved from Acre to Azotus, and his coolness and decision during the great battle.

† Vinesauf, vi. 30-36. Cont. William of Tyre, 640.

plains of Acre, and the bravery and conduct of the English monarch, had prevented some of the anticipated issues of the battle of Tiberias: Palestine did not become a Muselman colony; and so much of the sea coast was in the hands of the Christians, and so enfeebled were the enemy, that fresh hostilities could safely be commenced whenever Europe should again pour forth her religious fanatics, and military adventurers. Richard gained more honour in Palestine than any of the emperors of Germany and kings of France who had sought renown in foreign war: and although these distant ages may censure his conduct as unprofitable to his country, yet his actions were in unison with that spirit of the times which looked upon valour as more important than empire, and esteemed achievements in battle more highly than the consequences of victory.

In the month of October, Richard, with his queen, the English soldiers, and pilgrims, set sail for England. But storms, of violence uncommon even for the boisterous season of autumn, soon scattered his fleet. The people thought that Heaven had directed the elements against them, because Jerusalem was still in the hands of the infidels; and they were convinced of the justice of this condemnation, when they afterwards heard of the death of

25 Oct.  
1192.  
Richard  
leaves the  
holy land.

CHAP. II. **Saladin**, an event which, they thought, would have led them to the accomplishment of the object of their vows. Many of the vessels were wrecked on hostile shores, and the warriors of England, who might once have bade defiance to the world, now pennyless, naked, and famished, were led into Saracenic prisons. Other ships fortunately reached friendly ports, and in time returned to Britain. At the end of six weeks from his departure from Acre, Richard was off the Barbary shores, within three days' sail of the port in the south of France whence he had embarked for the holy land. His misfortunes had become known, and he heard that the French lords had resolved to seize him, if he landed in their territories. The condition of his vessel forbad the hope of a safe return to England, and Germany was the only country through which he expected to escape. He purchased the maritime guidance of some pirates, and the course of his vessel was changed from Marseilles to the Adriatic. His companions were Baldwin de Betun, a priest, Anselm the chaplain, and a few Knights Templars. The royal party landed at Zara.\* They wished to pursue

Lands in  
Dalmatia.

\* The place of his landing is called, in M. Paris, Gazara. Hoveden proves that it was Zara, for he says it was in the country

pursue their route to the north ; and accordingly one of them went to the governor of Goritia\* for passports, who, unfortunately for Richard, was nephew of the late marquis of Tyre. The messenger was desired to declare the quality of his masters. He described them as pilgrims, on their return from Jerusalem. " Their names ? " asked the governor. " One is called Baldwin de Betun," answered the man ; " and the other Hugh the merchant ; and the latter has commanded me to give you a ring, as a proof of his good dispositions towards you." The governor admired the beauty and splendour of the ruby ; † he was struck with the singularity of the transaction ; he naturally thought that he who sent the gift could be no common person ; and after weighing the circumstances in his mind, he exclaimed, " the name of the owner of this ring is not Hugh the merchant, but king Richard : tell him, however, that although I have sworn to detain returning pilgrims, yet the magnificence of this gift, and the dignity of the donor, induce me to violate the rule, and to allow your master

His adventures in Germany.

country of Ragusa. Zara is called Jazara by the archbishop of Tyre, lib. ii. c. xxii.

\* See the emperor's letter to the king of France, Hoveden, 721.

† The ring was worth three hundred besants ; Richard had lately purchased three of them from a Pisan merchant.

CHAP. II. ter to pass." Plantagenet heard with alarm of the discovery which his generosity had occasioned ; the knowledge of the circumstance of the dispersion of his fleet was not confined to France, and every Christian monarch was prepared to seize as a prisoner the great champion of the cross. Richard and his friends took to their horses in the middle of the night, and the news was spread that the king of England was in Germany. The fugitives were unmolested till they reached Frisak, near Saltzburgh. The governor of that country commanded one of his relations, a Norman knight, to examine all travellers. The speech and manners of Plantagenet were marked with curiosity by him, who knew the English character, and his prayers and tears produced an avowal from the king, that the object of his search was discovered. Honorary and pecuniary rewards had been offered as incentives to diligence, but the generous Norman thought only of the safety of his liege lord, entreated him to fly, and presented to him a swift horse. He then returned to his master, and told him that Baldwin de Betun and his companions were the only pilgrims in the town, and the report that Richard was of the party was false and ridiculous. The governor, however, relied upon the certainty of his previous information, suspected the old knight

night of deceit, and issued orders for the detention of strangers. Six of the English were put into prison, but the king escaped, accompanied only by William de Stagno, and a boy who understood the German language. After travelling for three days and three nights, and scarcely ever stopping for refreshments, Richard arrived at a town near Vienna. He heard that the duke of Austria was in the place, and he knew that that haughty impetuous nobleman remembered him with feelings of hatred, because in the siege of Acre the English monarch had checked his arrogance and presumption. The fugitives were so much harassed that they could not pursue their course. The German boy was sent to the market-place in order to purchase provisions; and as he had experienced the generosity of his master, he was usually dressed with elegance and nicety. The contrast of the vulgar demeanor and the handsome clothes of the youth, attracted the attention of the people: they demanded his name and condition; and he replied, that he was the servant of a very rich merchant, who three days before had arrived in the town. The boy saw that his story was not credited, and on his return to the king he advised his immediate escape. But Richard was ill and weary, and totally unable to depart. The boy continued his visits to the market-place,

CHAP. II. place, and for some days attracted no further  
 21st. Dec. notice : but on one occasion the citizens saw in  
 his girdle a pair of such gloves as were usually  
 worn by kings. The poor lad was immediately  
 seized and scourged, and the threat of cutting  
 out his tongue if he did not tell the truth, drew  
 from him the secret of the real quality of his  
 master. The Austrian soldiers immediately  
 surrounded the house of Richard, and the king,  
 knowing the fruitlessness of resistance, offered  
 to resign his sword. The duke advanced and  
 received it, and in the excess of his joy he  
 treated him for a while with respect.\* But it  
 was soon apparent that Plantagenet was his  
 prisoner and not his guest.† The king of  
 England

Taken pri-  
 soner.

\* The story of Otho de Blaise, respecting the mode in which Richard was discovered, is as follows :—" The king entered a house of public entertainment in a town near Vienna, and, in order that no suspicion might be excited concerning his rank, he busied himself in turning the spit. He forgot, however, to conceal a splendid ring which he wore on his finger. A man who had known his person at Acre recognised him, and gave the news to the duke." O. de Blaise, in Muratori, vol. vi. cap. 38. p. 894.

† For here though Cœur de Lion like a storm  
 Pour on the Saracens, and do perform  
 Deeds past an angel, arm'd with wrath and fire,  
 Ploughing whole armies up, with zealous ire,

And

England was confined in Gynasia till the following Easter, when he was sold to the emperor of Germany. Henry VI. removed him to a castle in the Tyrol; and the prison was so strong, that no one had ever escaped from it. But in the mind of a tyrant, mountains form not impenetrable barriers, and walls are a doubtful security. Imperial cruelty therefore commanded that armed men should always be present in the chamber of Richard, and that he should never speak in private to any of his companions. Sometimes the royal captive calmed his angry soul by singing the warlike deeds of the heroes of romance. At other times he diverted melancholy by the composition of poems; in one of which he declares, with simple pathos, that his barons well knew that he would have ransomed any of his companions who had been overtaken by a misfortune similar to his own; but he would not reproach them, although he was a prisoner.

And walled cities, while he doth defend  
That cause that should all wars begin and end;  
Yet when with pride, and for humane respect  
The Austrian colours he doth here deject  
With too much scorn, behold at length how fate  
Makes him a wretched prisoner to that state;  
And leaves him, as a mark of fortune's spight,  
When princes tempt their stars beyond their light.  
Ben Jonson.



**CHAP. II.** prisoner.\* Occasionally he forgot his misfortunes, and the apparent negligence of his friends. His native hilarity conquered the bitterness of his spirit ; he laughed at the frequent intoxication of his jailors, he sported the keenness of his wit, and in the boisterousness of his merriment displayed his personal strength and agility. He was soon removed to Hagenau, where he was treated with respect by the emperor, and he was afterwards immured in a prison at Worms.†

The king of France rejoiced at the calamities of his rival, and implored the emperor never to allow him again to molest the world. Philip Augustus then invaded Normandy ; and after having met with some successes, laid siege to Rouen : but he was repulsed by the earl of Leicester, who had lately returned from Palestine, and whose valour was as conspicuous in political as in religious wars. Prince John made another attempt to seat himself on the English throne ; but the barons were indignant at his perfidiousness to his brother, and sympathised with their imprisoned king.‡ Queen Eleanor wrote two long and plaintive letters to the Pope on the subject of her son's confinement.

\* See note I.

† For further remarks on Richard's adventures, see note K.

‡ Bromton, 1252. Neubridge, iv. 34. Hoveden, 724.

ment. She thought that it would be no degradation of Papal dignity, if Celestine would make personal intercession for Richard's liberation. The princes of the earth were agreed to destroy a Christian king, and yet the sword of St. Peter remained in its scabbard.\* The Pope accordingly threatened the emperor and French king with excommunication, unless the one gave freedom to Richard, or the other did not cease from his barbarous wars.† The ecclesiastical and secular princes of Germany assembled in diet at Worms in the month of July; and Richard, attended by the bishops of Bath and Ely, was brought before them. He was arraigned by the emperor for the crimes of supporting an usurper in Sicily, of quarrelling with the king of France, of insulting the duke of Austria, and of murdering the marquis of Tyre, who was a relation of the emperor. To all these charges Richard replied in so clear and argumentative a manner, that the members of the diet were filled with admiration of him; and no suspicion of guilt remained in their minds.‡ Richard, however, was treated by the emperor as a prisoner of war; a treaty was concluded between them, by which the English monarch was

July 1193.  
His trial at  
Worms.

\* Rymer, i. 57, 58, new edit.

† Heyden, 725.

‡ See note L.

CHAP. II. was to obtain his liberty on payment of one hundred thousand marks of silver, according to the Cologne standard, and the delivery of hostages for thirty thousand marks to the emperor, and twenty thousand to the duke of Austria.\* The great council of England immediately imposed taxes for the amount of the first payment of the ransom; and although the wishes of the nation were in accordance with its decrees, yet the money was with great difficulty collected.† In

\* Speaking of Richard's ransom, Otho de Blaise (*Muratorius*, vi. 895) says, he must not venture to mention the sum, for if he did, he should not expect to be believed.

† Hoveden, 725. Waverley, 164. The poverty of the nation was only pretended, for Bromton relates, that when some German nobles entered London with Richard, in March 1194, they were struck with the magnificence of the city, and exclaimed, that the people had been wise in concealing their wealth, which if known to the emperor, a larger ransom would have been required, p. 1256, 1258. Caxton and Stow are wrong in saying that all the ransom was paid in coin. Bullion would be more valuable to the emperor than English money. The plate ornaments of the churches were melted down together into bars or ingots. Some stamp might have been put upon them in order to denote their goodness. The word mark expressed in old times both coin and weight in silver: and the treaty mentions Cologne weight and not English sterling. See Ruding's *Annals of the Coinage*, i. 336-338. North's *Remarks on Clarke's Conjectures*, p. 34, &c. An old traveller through Germany, towards the close of the seventeenth century, says,  
" that

In the month of October Richard was removed from his dungeon at Worms to one at Spire; and his imprisonment was to be terminated at the assembly of the diet at Christmas. The emperor and the princes of Germany assembled, the imperial commissioners appeared with the one hundred thousand marks, and queen Eleanor with the hostages; but the friends of Philip and John offered the emperor such large sums of money for the extension of the captivity of Richard, or his delivery into their hands, that the irresolute Henry VI. postponed the subject till the meeting of the diet at Mayence at the end of January. In that conference of the German princes, perpetual imprisonment seemed at one moment to be the fate of Richard, for the emperor declared he would cancel the treaty, and would accept the noble offers of Philip and John. But the clerical and secular princes of Germany were so highly indignant at this projected violation of the honour of their country, that they compelled their lord to accept the money and hostages of the English king. Ri-

VOL. II.

G

chard

“ that the ransom of Richard beautified Vienna; and the  
 “ two walls round the city, the one old and inward, little  
 “ considerable at present, were built with the ransom of  
 “ Richard I.” *Brown’s Travels through Germany*, p. 74,  
 4to. 1677.

CHAP. II. chard was released on the 6th of February.  
— The archbishop of Cologne and other noble-  
men paid him the highest honour as he passed  
through their territories on his road to Antwerp,  
whence he embarked for England, and landed  
at Sandwich.\*

His return  
to England.  
March  
1194.

\* M. Paris, 147. Bromton, 1252-1257. Hoveden,  
731-734.

## CHAP. III.

## THE FOURTH AND FIFTH CRUSADES.

*Death and character of Saladin.....His successors....  
 ...Pope Celestine III. promotes a Crusade.....It is  
 embraced by Germany.....Adventures of the Ger-  
 mans in Palestine.....Fair prospect of complete  
 success.....Ruin of the cause.....Return to Eu-  
 rope of some of the Germans.....and massacre of  
 the rest at Jaffa.....Death of Henry, king of Jeru-  
 salem.....Almeric and Isabella, the new king and  
 queen.....Character of Fulk, preacher of the fifth  
 Crusade.....Politics of the Papacy respecting the  
 Crusades.....Pope Innocent III. promotes a new  
 Crusade.....It is embraced by France and Flanders  
 .....The barons wish for the maritime aid of Ve-  
 nice.....Embassy to Venice.....Treaty between  
 the republic and the envoys.....Departure of the  
 Croises.....Arrival at Venice.....Suspension of  
 the Crusade.....Subjugation of Zora.....Papal  
 politics.....Grecian politics.....The Croises sail  
 to Constantinople.....Attack and siege of the city  
 .....Captured by the Croises.....Revolution in the  
 government.....Another revolution.....The Croises  
 renew the war.....Their complete victory.....Sack  
 of Constantinople.....Division of the plunder.....  
 Vengeance of the Croises on the fine arts.....Elec-  
 tion of a Latin emperor.....General remarks on the  
 empire of the Latins in Greece.*

## CHAP. III.

Death and  
character  
of Saladin.  
A. D. 1193.

WHILE Palestine was enjoying independence and peace, an event occurred that promised it confirmation of the security of which Richard's victories had held out a prospect. Saladin died : he was in the fifty-seventh year of his age ; during twenty-two years he had reigned over Egypt, and for nineteen was absolute master of Syria. No Asiatic monarch has filled so large a space in the eyes of Europe as the antagonist of Cœur de Lion. He was a compound of the dignity and the baseness, the greatness and the littleness of man. As the Moslem hero of the third holy war, he proved himself a skilful general, and a valiant soldier. He hated the Christian cause, for he was a zealous Muselman ; and his principles authorised him to make war upon the enemies of the prophet : but human sympathy mollified the rigour of his enthusiasm, and when his foes were suppliants, he often forgot the sternness of Islamism. He was fond of religious exercises and studies ; but his mind was so much above the age in which he lived, that he never consulted soothsayers and astrologers. He had gained the throne by blood, artifice, and treachery ; but though ambitious, he was not tyrannical ; he was mild in his government ; the friend and dispenser of justice. Eager for the possession, but indifferent to the display of power, thinking more of the sub-  
stance

stance than the pageantry of grandeur, he was CHAP. III.  
 simple in manners, and unostentatious in deport-  
 ment. He attempted by conciliation and  
 tuition to change the religious sentiments of the  
 Egyptian Fatimites, but the intolerant spirit  
 of his religion would sometimes appear ; the  
 politician was lost in the zealot, and he inflicted  
 punishment on those who presumed to question  
 any of the dogmas of a Muselman's creed.\*

Wars and rebellions had filled all the thoughts His succe-  
sors.  
 of Saladin, and he had established no principles  
 of succession. Three of his numerous progeny  
 became sovereigns of Aleppo, Damascus, and  
 Egypt ; others had smaller possessions, and the  
 emirs and atabeks of Syria again struggled for  
 independence. The soldiers of the late sultan  
 rallied round his brother Saphadin, whose wis-  
 dom and valour were familiar to them. Both  
 by stratagem and liberal policy he reared a large  
 fabric of empire † in Syria, and he was the most  
 G 3 powerful

\* Abulfeda, iv. 133, 141. Bohadin, passim, and De  
 Guignes, ii. 237. D'Herbelot, art. Salaheddin, and see  
 note M.

† Saphadin's power was, however, only personal ; for in  
 1218, the year of his death, the half-extinguished embers of  
 civil discord blazed afresh : some of Saladin's children and  
 the atabeks enjoyed Syria, till they were swept away by the  
 successors of Zinghis Khan. Egypt was ruled by a descen-  
 dant of Saladin ; but the Mamelukes usurped the throne,  
 and



CHAP. III. powerful of all the Moslem princes, when the time for the expiration of the peace arrived. The Saracenic power was, however, palsied for a while by a dreadful famine in Egypt, and the Latins in Palestine suffered also from the miserable state of this general granary. The knights of St. John cast their regards towards Europe, and particularly to England, for succour, and entreated that new armies would march to Palestine, and destroy the exhausted Moslems.\* Two years before this favourable moment, the daring and ambitious Pope Celestine III. had again sounded the trumpet of war. He exhorted the archbishops and bishops of the Christian church to persuade their congregations to spread the crimson standard, and to march against the persecutors of the faith of Jesus Christ. Plenary indulgence was offered to those faithful soldiers, and the protection of the church to their families and possessions. France had not revived from its losses in the third crusade, and Philip Augustus heard the appeal with indifference. Many of the people of England enrolled their names as holy warriors, obtained spiritual

Pope Celestine III. promotes a crusade.  
A. D. 1195.

and, as they were of the same blood as the Tartars, they were invincible.

\* See the grand master's letter to the prior in England. Hoveden, p. 827.

spiritual absolution, and then abandoned their pious resolves. The Pope hurled his thunders against those who deserted their profession, except for some legitimate cause; but all thoughts of a crusade gradually died away in England, for the king was too much occupied in political concerns to encourage it.\* But wild schemes of war were occasionally in his mind, and the early writers have ascribed to his dauntless spirit the vast design of conquering Egypt, and after having gained the holy land, of possessing himself of the throne of Constantinople.†

Designs equally ambitious were entertained of the emperor Henry, the enemy of Plantagenet. Seconded by imperial influence, the clergy successfully preached the crusade through all the German states. The emperor declared that he would provide a passage for both rich and poor who wished to go.‡ But though influenced, he was not absorbed by the love of barren glory, and when the possession of Sicily seemed an easy achievement, he postponed the gathering of laurels in Palestine, till he had added a great state to his empire in Europe. Tancred, prince of Sicily, had lately died; and

G 4

Henry,

\* M. Paris, 150.

† *Sanctus*, lib. iii. pars xi. ch. i.

‡ *Cont. William*, p. 643.

CHAP. III. Henry, in right of his wife Constantia, put in his claims. This defection from the holy war was declared to be in accordance with the opinions of his wisest princes and lords, and it did not quench the spirit of fanaticism and romance. From the north to the south of Germany, the frenzy of crusading had spread, and it had infected the bishops of Bremen, Wurtsburg, Passau, and Ratisbon; the dukes of Saxony, Brabant, Bavaria, and the son of the duke of Austria; the marquis of Brandenburg and Moravia; the landgrave of Thuringia; the count Palatine, and the counts of Habsburg and Schwembourg. Both laymen and clergy burnt with divine zeal, and received the sign of the sufferings of Christ in token of the remission of their sins.\* The son of Henry duke of Limberg, and the archbishop of Mayence, led the vanguard of the holy warriors; and in the passage through Hungary they were joined by Margaretta, sister of the French king and queen of Hungary, who, as one mode of consolation for the loss of her husband, had vowed to pass the remainder of her life in the pains of pilgrimage. Though the time of peace, as settled by the treaty between Richard and Saladin, had expired;

It is embraced by Germany.

\* Chron. Slav. lib. v. c. i. *L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, vol. iii. p. 115.

pired, yet the Christians and Muselmans continued to live in amity. When the new champions of the cross arrived at Acre, no remonstrances of the Latins against fresh wars, no suggestions that all new Crusaders ought to be obedient to the discretion of the residents in the holy land, could abate the furious desire of the Germans for hostility. Their aggressions were quickly returned by the Muselmans, civil feuds were hushed, and Saphadin again headed the veteran forces of Syria and of Egypt. The important city of Jaffa was taken by him before the Christian army from Acre could relieve it. The care and expense of Richard were dissipated in a moment; the fortifications were destroyed, and several thousands of the people of Jaffa were put to the sword. In these unhappy moments, another portion of the German force, under the command of the dukes of the Lower Lorraine and Saxony, arrived at Acre. They had made the voyage from the northern ports of Germany, and in their route had chastised the Moors of Portugal. Confident in their strength, the united forces of Europe and Palestine, led by the duke of Saxony, directed their march towards the city of Beritus; but Saphadin, ever observant of events, quitted the vicinity of Jaffa, and overtook his foes between Tyre and Sidon. The close columns of the duke of Saxony's

CHAP. III

Adventures  
of the Ger-  
mans in  
Palestine.

CHAP. III. Saxony's army were impenetrable to his vigorous and continual attacks. The victory of the Christians appeared to be decisive, the enemy's force was scattered, and so extensive was the panic, that the Saracens abandoned Laodicea, Gabala, Jaffa, Sidon, and Beritus. Nine thousand prisoners were redeemed without ransom: and the statement that there were three years' provisions for the inhabitants of Beritus in the storehouses of that town, shews the importance of the day of Sidon. The exultation of the Crusaders was still further advanced, by the arrival of a third body of friends, headed by Conrad, bishop of Hildesheim and chancellor of the German empire. By the usual process of ambitious princes, Henry had subjugated Sicily, and now devoted to the conquest of the holy land, he sent his third army as his immediate precursors.\*

Fair prospect of complete success.

It seemed that the hour was now at hand when Europe would receive the reward of her invincible heroism. All the sea-coast of Palestine was already in the possession of the Christians!

\* The continuation of the *Chronica Slavorum*, by Arnold of Lubec, lib. v. c. iii. and a letter of the duke of Lorraine on the subject of the war to the archbishop of Cologne, in the second vol. of Freher, *Rer. Scrip. Germ.* p. 362. Bernardus, 816, 818. Heyden, 722. Abulfeda, iv. 165.

tians: and even they who had generally most CHAP. III.  
 desponded, were now elevated with the conviction that the cross must ere long surmount the walls of Jerusalem. But in their march from Tyre towards the holy city, they made a fatal halt at the fortress of Thoron. The lofty and solid pile of stones withstood the attacks of the common engines of violence. But by a month's labour of some Saxon miners, the rock itself which supported the fortress was pierced through; and the battlements tottered to their foundation. The Saracens were now at the feet of the Christians suing for clemency. A free passage into the Moslem territories was all that they asked; and the fort might then be at the disposal of the Crusaders. After much time had been passed in balancing considerations of revenge or mercy, a treaty founded on these terms was signed; but although just principles of war prevailed with the majority, yet the smaller party, who breathed nothing but slaughter, impressed their menaces so deeply on the minds of the Saracens, that the latter vowed to submit to the last extremity, rather than confide in the agreements and oaths of champions of the cross.\* They gained resolution

Ruin of the  
cause.

\* Indeed the Arabic writers state that the French soldiers assured the garrison that the Germans would slay them even if they surrendered.

CHAP. III. tion from despair; they met their foes in the passages which had been mined in the rocks; and in every encounter the Moslem scymitar reeked with Christian blood. Factionous contentions disordered the Latin council; insubordination and vice raged in the camp; and, to crown their miseries, the Croisés heard that the Infidel world had recovered from its defeat at Sidon, and that the sultans of Egypt and Syria were concentrating their levies. Daunted at the rumour of their march, the German princes deserted their posts in the middle of the night, and fled to Tyre. In the morning their flight was discovered by the soldiers, and horror and despair seized every breast. The camp was deserted by those who had strength to move; the feeble left their property, the cowardly their arms behind them. The road to Tyre was filled with soldiers and baggage in indiscriminate confusion; but so exhausted was the state of the Muselmans in Thoron, that the Christians were not molested in their retreat by any accidents except those which their own imprudence and precipitation occasioned.\*

When the fragments of the army were collected, and the soldiers were at a distance from danger, every one reproached the other as the cause of the late disgraceful event. The Germans

\* Chron. Slav. lib. vi. c. 4, and 5. Hoveden, 773.

mans accused the Latins of cowardice ; and the barons of the holy land declared that they would not submit to the domineering pride of the Germans.\* Conrad and his soldiers went to Jaffa, and resolved to repair its fortifications, and to wait the moment for revenge on the Latins of Syria. Saphadin marched against them, and the Germans did not decline the combat. Victory was on the side of the Christians ; but it was bought by the death of many brave warriors, particularly of the duke of Saxony, and of the son of the duke of Austria. But the Germans did not profit by this success, for news arrived from Europe that the great support of the crusade, Henry VI. was dead. The archbishop of Mayence, and all those princes who had an interest in the election of a German sovereign, deserted the holy land. The queen of Hungary was the only individual of consequence whose fanaticism was stronger than worldly considerations. The remnants, and they were more than twenty thousand, of this once powerful host, fortified themselves in Jaffa. But a new storm arose in the Turkish states. It swept over Beritus and the land of the Christians ;

CHAP. III.

Return to  
Europe of  
the Ger-  
mans.

\* All the quarrels were conducted in Scriptural language. Treachery was the crime of which each party accused the other ; for the case of Judas was in the minds of all.



CHAP. III. tians ; and, on the eleventh of November, while  
 Nov. 1197. the Germans were celebrating the feast of St.  
 and massa- Martin, the Moslems entered the city of Jaffa,  
 cre of the and slew every individual whom they found.\*  
 rest at  
 Jaffa.

Death of  
 Henry, king  
 of Jerusa-  
 lem.

About the time of the massacre at Jaffa, Henry count of Champagne, the acknowledged king of Jerusalem, died.† Private pleasures alone had charms for him, and he never executed the few offices of royalty which still formed the duties of the lord of the holy land. The barons always desired to preserve in Palestine the semblance of a kingdom, for their proud spirit would not own the full extent of the Moslems' victories, and if no appearances of state were preserved, Europe would think that the whole of Palestine was lost. The grand master of the Hospitallers represented to Isabella the propriety of her marriage with Almeric de Lusignan;

\* Old Fuller says, "At this time, the spring-tide of their mirth so drowned their souls, that the Turks coming in upon them, cut every one of their throats to the number of twenty thousand : and quickly they were stabbed with the sword that were cup-shot before. A day which the Dutch (the Germans) may well write in their calendars in red letters died with their own blood, when the camp was their shambles, the Turks their butchers, and themselves the Martinmasse beeves, from which the beastly drunkards differ but a little." Holy War, book 3, c. 16.

† Bernardus, p. 815.

nan, king of Cyprus, who had lately succeeded CHAP. III.  
 his brother Guy. It was thought that Acre  
 and its vicinity could not remain in the hands of  
 the Latins, unless they were governed by a  
 king, and that, in every circumstance, Cyprus,  
 as a place of succour and retreat, would be a  
 valuable ally to Jerusalem. With equal truth,  
 it might have been argued, that, if there were a  
 powerful king in Palestine, faction, the great  
 foe of the state, could not raise its head. Fa-  
 miliarised to the joys of royalty and love, the  
 widowed queen embraced with rapture new  
 prospects of happiness, and in her eyes Almeric  
 was as estimable as she had found her divorced  
 husband Humphry, or her deceased lords Con-  
 rad and Henry. The union was approved of  
 by the clergy and barons, it was celebrated at  
 Acre, and Almeric and Isabella were proclaimed  
 king and queen of Cyprus and Jerusalem.\*

Almeric and  
 Isabella,  
 new king  
 and queen

The third and fourth Crusades were created  
 by the ordinary influence of papal power and  
 royal authority: but the fifth sprung from ge-  
 nuine fanaticism.† At the close of the twelfth  
 century a hero arose in France, worthy of com-  
 panionship with Bernhard. Fulk, of the town  
 of

Character  
 of Fulk,  
 preacher of  
 the fifth  
 Crusade.

\* Cont. William, II. 16. Siquetus, 901.

† The authorities for the fourth and fifth Crusades are  
 described in note N.

CHAP. III. of Nuiilly, near Paris, was distinguished by the vehemence and ability of his preaching, and as in early life he had drank deeply of the cup of pleasure, he was well qualified to describe the different states of the sinner and the saint. He did not involve himself in the speculative absurdities of the day, but declaimed against the prevailing vices of usury and prostitution. For two years he preached without success, but after that time Heaven lent its aid to the efforts of the preacher, in order that his words, like arrows from a powerful bow, might penetrate the depraved hearts of men.\* Accordingly, miracles attested celestial approbation, and his sermons were received as oracles. With the extension of his fame his wishes for religious good increased, and his soul was inflamed with the desire of accomplishing the great aim of Christendom. He accordingly assumed the cross, and war with the infidels became the copious matter of his sermons. When the people saw that the man of God was signed with the sanguinary badge, and heard him promise to

\* Sed pius Conditor nolens Prædicatoris sui semina ulterius deperire, contulit voci Prædicatrix sui vocem virtutis, ut verba ejus quasi sagittæ potentis acutæ, hominum prava corda, consuetudine obdurata penetrarent, et ad lachrymas et penitentiam emollirent. Rad. Coggehalensis.

to become their leader, the rich and the poor, the noble and the ignoble, the old and the young of both sexes, thronged around him, and received from him with devout alacrity the insignia of holy warriors. His miracles and preaching were soon reported in Italy, and the pope bestowed upon his exertions the apostolical benediction. CHAP. III.

At the early age of thirty-six, Innocent III. was seated in the papal chair, and he discharged the high duties of his august station with the same ardour with which he had pursued his studies in the solitude of the cloister. Since the days of Gregory VII. the papacy had not been filled with a more arrogant and aspiring prélate. He was the first pope that endeavoured to include the fortunes as well as the consciences of men in the dominion of the holy see. Louis, and Philip Augustus, kings of France, and Henry II. king of England, had imposed taxes on their subjects for the benefit of the Crusades, and these precedents were embraced by Innocent. Following the suggestions of an ambitious spirit, his military predecessor Gregory wished to arm Europe against Asia. Personal interest had induced Urban to adopt and encourage the general wish for the redemption of the holy sepulchre. For a whole century papal protection, superstition, and valour kept

Politics of  
the papacy  
in the Cru-  
sades.

**CHAP. III.** the flame alive. But when Innocent, for the avowed purpose of supporting the Crusades, presumed to tax the clergy, a new character was given to the sacred wars, and a new impulse to the minds of men. The pecuniary levies were not meant for the benefit of Palestine, but for the filling of the coffers of Rome. For the gratification of his luxury and avarice, therefore, the pope became interested in the Crusades; Each time of his inspiring the people with religious ardour was the season for general plunder; for although the tax was nominally on the clergy alone, yet every artifice was used to drain money from the laity. All the influence of papal royalty was for awhile exercised in the promotion of Crusades, and the animating counsels of the Vatican checked the chivalry of Europe from sinking into despair.

Innocent  
III. pro-  
motes a  
new Cru-  
sade.  
A.D. 1200,  
&c.

Innocent III. wrote to the various temporal and spiritual chiefs\* of Christendom, requiring them to take up arms for the defence of Palestine, or at least to send him considerable suc-

cours

\* He even wrote to the heretical emperor of Constantinople to permit the Crusade. Vit. Innoc. III. Muratori, Rer. Scrip. Ital. vol. iii. p. 507. The departure of the Germans from the holy land, and the divisions among the Muselman princes, are the circumstances upon which the pope chiefly builds his arguments for the necessity of a new war.

cours of men and money. His nuntios travelled through Europe preaching the holy theme, and the pardons and indulgences which they offered, induced many men to become soldiers of God.\* The pope commanded the clergy to contribute the fortieth part of their revenues, and to place boxes in the churches for the reception of the alms of the laity. The imposition was complied with, and the voluntary oblations of the princes and people equalled the amount of the contributions of the clergy.† The military spirit of the day directed religious ardour, and some noble knights prevented the preaching of Fulk, and the commands of Innocent, from producing no effect than that of enriching the treasury of the Vatican. At a public tournament in Champagne, Thibaud III.‡ the youthful count of that province,

CHAP. III.

It is embraced in France and Flanders.

H 2

Leto. iii.

\* Villehardouin, No. 1. Porce que cil pardons fu issi gran, si s'en esmeurent mult li cuers des gens, et mult s'en croiserent, porce que li pardons ere si gran.

† Baluz. vit. Inn. in Muratori Rer. Scrip. Ital. iii. 526. See too Hoveden, p. 828. We can well understand with Diceto that not much of this money was applied by the pope to religious purposes.

‡ Villehardouin (No. 19) says that no baron of France had more vassals than the count of Champagne. He had one thousand eight hundred knights in complete feudal tenure, and four hundred by inferior ties. Du Cange, note on No. 4. Thibaud and Louis were nephews both of Richard

CHAP. III. province, and his relation, count Louis of Blois and Chartres, resolved to exchange the image of war for its reality. Reginald of Montmirail, and Simon de Montfort,\* two of the noblest barons of France, and a proud corps of gentlemen, vowed to partake of the glory of their friends: and the people of the Netherlands would not want a leader, for Baldwin, count of Flanders, and brother-in-law of Thibaud, received the cross at Bruges.

1200.  
The barons  
wish for  
the mari-  
time aid of  
Venice.

The counts and barons met in deliberation at the parliament of Soissons, and afterwards at Compeigne. By sad experience Europe had learned the horrors of a land journey to Palestine. The kings of France and England had made their military pilgrimage by sea. The resources of two powerful kingdoms were at the command of Philip Augustus and Richard, but the barons of Champagne were destitute of all maritime advantages, and they therefore determined to purchase the aid of one of the great naval

Richard king of England and Philip Augustus of France. Du Cange, note 2. Thibaud was a brother of the late Henry king of Jerusalem.

\* This Simon de Montfort, lord of the Mantois between Chartres and Paris, was the father of the Simon de Montfort, who by marriage with the sister of the earl of Leicester succeeded to that title of English nobility. *L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, ii. 677.

naval powers of Europe. Thibaud, Baldwin, CHAP. III.  
 and Louis invested six of their friends with au-  
 thority to conclude a treaty with the Venetians,  
 and these deputies immediately repaired to Ve-  
 nice. Henry Dandolo,\* the doge, and the prin-  
 cipal citizens, received their illustrious visitors  
 with distinction, but were astonished on learn-  
 ing the general nature of their powers; and  
 their surprise was not diminished when the de-  
 puties declared that they could only reveal the  
 details of their object to the general council of  
 the state. With the required solemnities they  
 professed that they came to Venice to procure,  
 upon any terms which the queen of the Adriatic  
 should dictate, the aid of her ships and maritime  
 necessaries in order to assist the barons of France  
 in their endeavour to reconquer Jerusalem, and  
 to revenge the wrongs of Jesus Christ. After  
 several days had been passed in deliberation on  
 this important message, Henry Dandolo an-  
 nounced to the deputies that the republic  
 would, for eighty-five thousand marks of silver,  
 H 3 according

Embassy to  
Venice.

Treaty be-  
tween the  
republic  
and the  
envoys.

\* Henry Dandolo was eighty-four years of age on the 1st of June 1192, when he was elected doge. Du Cange on Villehardouin, 204. It by no means appears that Dandolo had totally lost his sight. The expression of the Chronicler Dandolo is that he was *visu debilis*, p. 322. See too Sanutus, lib. iii. pars. 11. c. 1. Sabellicus, Hist. Venet. dec. 1. lib. 7.



CHAP. HI. according to Cologne weight, furnish flat-bottomed vessels for the passage of four thousand five hundred horses, and nine thousand squires, and ships for four thousand five hundred knights, and twenty thousand foot soldiers; and provisions were also to be furnished for one year. Venice would likewise become a principal in the war, and support fifty galleys of her own, on condition that all acquisitions should be equally shared between the two allied nations.\* The deputies cheerfully submitted to these terms. The council of ten and the grand council supported the doge, and a solemn assembly of the people was held in the chapel of St. Mark for the final ratification of the treaty. The marshal of Champagne addressed the assembly. "Signors," said he, "the most noble and powerful barons of France have sent us to you, in order to entreat you in the name of God to have compassion on Jerusalem, which groans under the tyranny of the Turks; and to aid us on this occasion in revenging the injury which  
" has

\* See the treaty in Andrew Dandolo's Chronicle, Muratori, xii. 323. Sismondi appears to be right in estimating the mark at fifty livres, and the sum total will be four millions two hundred and fifty thousand livres, modern French money, by no means an unreasonable charge. *Hist. des Républiques Ital.* vol. ii. p. 383, n.

"has been done to your Lord and Saviour. CHAP. III.  
 "The barons of France have turned their  
 "eyes to you as the greatest maritime power in  
 "Europe. They have commanded us to throw  
 "ourselves at your feet, and never to change  
 "that supplicatory posture till you have pro-  
 "mised to aid them in recovering the holy  
 "land." The simple eloquence of Villehar-  
 douin, the tears and humble attitude of his  
 companions, touched the hearts of the people.  
 Cries of "We grant your request" sounded  
 through the hall. The treaty was sealed by  
 the deputies and the grand council, and after  
 the conditions had been ratified by oaths, it was  
 sent to the pope for his confirmation. The de-  
 puties borrowed two thousand marks from some  
 Venetian merchants, and paid them to the  
 state. They then quitted the republic, two re-  
 turned straight to Champagne, and others went  
 to Pisa and Genoa, in order to awaken those  
 republics from dreams of avarice to the vision-  
 ary delights of fanaticism. Villehardouin re- 1201.  
 paired to France with the welcome news of the  
 conclusion of the treaty with the Venetians.  
 Thibaud sprung from the bed of sickness, called  
 for his war-horse, and declared his intention im-  
 mediately to march. But this effort was his  
 last. The debility which succeeded this exer-  
 tion gave his disease opportunity to encrease,

CHAP. III. and he expired in the art of distributing to his feudatories the money which he had intended to expend upon the holy war.\* The command of the knights and people who had enlisted under his banner was successively refused by the duke of Burgundy, and the count of Bar, and finally accepted by Boniface, marquis of Montferrat.† In the church of Soissons the cross was affixed to his shoulder by the hands of some priests, and particularly by Fulk of Nully.

Departure  
of the  
Croises.

Shortly after Easter, in the year 1202, the French Crusaders assembled. The renewed exertions of Fulk had often been successful in changing superstition into enthusiasm, but on the other hand, as two years had elapsed since the cross had been assumed by the people, the zeal of many had cooled, and they basely applied to worldly purposes the money which the count of Champagne had bequeathed to them for the holy war.‡ After having traversed France, the

\* Villehardouin, 19.

† He was younger brother of the celebrated Conrad, marquis of Tyre.

‡ Fulk did not live to hear the issue of his exertions. He died while the French were at Venice in 1202. He was buried in the church of Nully. Du Cange adds (note on Villehardouin, No. 37), "Son tombeau se voit encore à présent en l'église de Nully, où l'on rend l'honneur de sa mémoire de ce saint homme, et particulièrement és jours  
"solemnels,

the soldiers of Champagne crossed mount Cenis CHAP. III.  
into Lombardy, joined the Italian Crusaders  
under the marquis of Montferrat, and finally  
arrived at Venice, where they were lodged in  
the island of St. Nicholas. The bishop of  
Autun, and many of the French, embarked at  
Marseilles and other ports for the holy land, and  
if the marshal of Champagne, and the count of  
St. Paul, had not met and remonstrated with  
count Louis and his force in Lombardy, the  
soldiers of Blois would, like many other Croises,  
have sailed from the eastern shores of Italy, and  
have left the Flemish and Champagne knights  
to accomplish the treaty with the Venetians.\*

Arrival at  
Ven.cc.

The Venetians were munificent and liberal  
to the honourable strangers, but instances of  
defection from the cause had been so numerous,  
that the Crusaders were unable to make a cor-  
responding return in money.† The counts of  
Flanders, and Blois, and St. Paul, and the mar-  
quis

“solemnels, ausquels on couvre ce tombeau d'un drap de  
soye, et le Curé après avoir été aux autels y donne de  
l'encens.”

\* Villehardouin—the first twenty-nine paragraphs. Ra-  
masio, p. 29.

† By the conditions of the treaty the money was to be  
paid to the Venetians *before* the sailing of the expedition.  
Mercantile caution!

CHAP. III. **quis of Montferrat, sold all their jewels, but thirty-four thousand marks were still wanting. The high minded cavaliers resolved to pawn their lives rather than fail in their promise to the Venetians, but the timid and lukewarm began to rejoice at any probability of the breaking up of the enterprize. In this exigency the doge suggested an equivalent. The town of Zara,\* in the Adriatic, off the Dalmatian coast, had revolted from the republic to Hungary. Henry Dandolo solicited the Crusaders to assist in its reduction, and it was agreed that the payment of their contribution should be deferred till they had conquered the infidel Saracens. The doge himself, old and feeble as he was, offered to be their leader. He put on the cross, and some of the Venetians (the historians lament the paucity of the number) imitated his piety and courage. The French were at that time reinforced by a large body of Germans, led by the**

Suspension  
of the Cru-  
sade.

† Jadera is the Roman, Diodora the barbarous, and Zara the modern name for this town. It was originally a Roman colony, and on one of its marbles is the inscription that Caesar Augustus was its founder. The Turks have often attempted to take it from the Venetians. Bajazet the Great was successful in 1498; but it was recovered. The present population is between four and five thousand. Cassas, *Voyage de Dalmatia*, p. 83, Paris, 1802.

the bishop of Halberstadt, armed with the artillery of the age. The soldiers of the cross \* were transported to Zara; the ships broke through the chain which defended the port, and the troops disembarked. The terror of their arms would have produced a bloodless revolution, if some disaffected soldiers had not assured the Zaratenes that the French were not disposed to co-operate with the Venetians. Dandolo called on the barons to prove the truth or the falsehood of the charge; and the vigour with which the noble cavaliers attacked the walls shewed their anger at the disgraceful implication of want of fidelity. Zara surrendered at discretion; and as the season of winter had set in, it was agreed that the army should repose in the city till the spring.† The Vatican had in vain prohibited the Crusaders from drawing the sword against their Christian brethren; and the legate scarcely escaped with his life, when he endeavoured to mitigate the rage of the conquerors against the fallen Zaratenes. The French pretended, however, to lament

November  
1202.  
Subjuga-  
tion of  
Zara.

Papal poli-  
tics.

\* The marquis of Montferrat, however, would not accompany them. The Pope had forbidden the enterprise: and the marquis was the only leader who, on that occasion, respected his authority. Villehardouin, No. 39, and note.

† Villehardouin, 29-34, 39-43. Ramusio, p. 21-28.

CHAP. III. lament the hard necessity which diverted them from the holy land ; a party of knights and monks went to Rome ; his Holiness pardoned his suppliant children, and sympathised with them at that want of firmness and union in their friends which had occasioned the second treaty with their allies.\* The Venetians were slow in soliciting Papal absolution. The superiority of the Pope, which other nations acknowledged by subserviency, these haughty republicans merely acquiesced in by respect. The personal vices of the Popes were better known in Italy than in France. When Venice withdrew herself from imperial dominion, her spirit of freedom was transfused through her ecclesiastical as well as her civil constitution. Her happy situation had thrown into her hands much of the commerce of the world ; wealth had introduced the arts of life ; intellectual culture succeeded social embellishments, and the people detected and despised the frauds of the Papal chair.

The  
\* Villehardouin, No. 53, 54. Baluzius, however, tells us (p. 529-531), that Innocent heard with astonishment of the repeated violations of his commands ; and, not addressing himself to the Venetians, who seldom regarded his authority, he assured the French that the only means of pardon, were for them to restore the fruits of their plunder to the Zarenènes, and not to sail to the holy land in company with the heretical Venetians.

[11] The Zaccare expedition, memorable in itself as a political diversion from a religious purpose, is lost, however, in the brilliancy of succeeding events. The eye of classical enthusiasm dwells with melancholy fondness on the city of Constantinople, the sister and rival of Rome, and the depository of all that was learned and eminent in the ancient world. But, viewed by itself, and independent of Roman images, the empire of the east awakens no great or pleasing associations. The free spirit of the republic, and the hardy virtues of a conquering nation, were subdued and effeminated by the despotism and luxury which are congenial to Asia. By the co-operating and mutually reflecting causes of private vices and bad government, the decline of the new empire was almost coeval with its foundation. Some of its fairest provinces were swept away by the Saracenian tempest; and, though its capital was saved, yet the preservation was more owing to the mountainous frontier of Asia Minor than to the spirit and valour of its people. The Seljuk Tartars blackened the horizon of the city, but the storm was diverted before the time arrived for its bursting over its menaced prey. Constantinople stood during the first century of the Crusades, because until the days of Saladin no wide spreading power of the Muselmans was formed; and Saladin's

CHAP. III.

Politics of Constantinople.



CHAP. III. **diu's exertions were bent upon Palestine. But** treason and faction were active; and the state was fallen so low from its Roman dignity, that the aid of the western barbarians was invoked by a claimant to the throne of the Cæsars. One of the most singular and interesting pages of history is now before us. The fortunes of the Greek empire were put into the hands of a few French barons and a commercial republic. Alexius II.\* the successor of the emperor Manuel Comnenus, was sacrificed to the lawless ambition of his uncle Andronicus. Under the specious pretext of revenging so unnatural an action, Isaac Angelus, a remote relation of the murdered youth, took up arms, and seized the person of the violator of the rights of men and of sovereigns. The revenge of Isaac was sated by blood; and in reward for his own virtue he placed himself on the throne. He enjoyed it for nearly two years, when, by a new revolution, he was hurled from his royal elevation, imprisoned, and deprived of sight. The author of these enormities was his brother Alexius, a brother, too, whom he had redeemed from Turkish slavery. The son of the imprisoned

\* Alexius II. was son of the emperor Manuel, and of the empress Maria, daughter of Raymond of Poitiers, prince of Antioch.

soned emperor escaped, and sought refuge with Philip, duke of Suabia, who had married his sister Irene. As he passed through Lombardy, he met a few straggling pilgrims, who advised him to entreat the aid of the generous Frenchmen at Venice. The young Alexius sent some friends to the marquis of Montferrat and the French barons, who consented to his wishes, on condition that the duke of Suabia would, in return, succour the cause of Palestine. While the French and Venetians were in quarters in Zara the ambassadors again appeared. They declared in public assembly, that Philip had commanded them to represent to the lords and cavaliers of France, that, as they had undertaken a long and perilous pilgrimage for the love of God, and for the maintenance of right and justice, so they ought to be ready to use their swords for the restoration of a dethroned prince. If they would place Alexius on the throne, religious schism should be healed; the eastern church should be brought into subjection to the church of Rome; and Greece should pour forth her population and her treasury for the recovery of the holy land. Some impatient spirits clamoured against this proposed interruption to the great object of the crusade, but the majority determined in favour of the alliance; the characters

**CHAP. III.** characters of avengers of wrong was proud and honourable, and Saracenian Palestine would tremble when it heard of the approach of an army already covered with honours.\* This assumption of power trenched upon the prerogatives of the Pope; he reprehended the barons for audaciously thinking themselves the general defenders and arbiters of justice; they must not deceive themselves by the speciousness of piety, but it behoved them to go straight to the holy land.† But it was in vain that one of the most commanding of all the successors of St. Peter issued decrees and bulls; the knights of France and Italy not only received them either with indifference or disdain, but the Venetians, in absolute contempt of his regard for the Zaratzenes, destroyed the walls, plundered the churches and

\* Villehardouin, 45, 52.

† We are indebted to Baluzius (p. 533) for this notice respecting the remonstrance of the Pope. Villehardouin is silent: he thought proper to disobey his spiritual lord, but it seems that he would not attempt to justify his disobedience. The reason why the Pope prohibited the Crusaders from meddling with Grecian politics was this:—the emperor Alexius had already ingratiated himself into the favour of his holiness, and Innocent thought that he could make the feudal and religious submission of the Greek empire to the see of Rome the price of keeping the usurper on the throne.

and houses, and divided the spoil with the French.\* CHAP. III.

The young prince Alexius arrived at Zara in Easter 1203; and the army embarked and sailed to Corfu. But the soldiers began to tremble at the novelty and danger of the enterprise; dread of Papal anger mingled itself with personal fear and prudence; Simon de Montfort,† and many other men eminent for rank and power deserted,‡ and one half of the army would have returned home or gone to the holy land, if the barons had not sworn that under every contingency they would sail for Syria in the middle of the succeeding November. The navy

The Croises  
sail to Con-  
stantinople.

VOL. II. I  
\* Gunther, Blondus, Dandolo, and the epistles of Innocent, amply prove the assertion in the text. Villehardouin says, "Li Venisiens firent abatre la ville, et les tors et les murs." The good old knight does not mention the co-operation of his countrymen. The translator has incorrectly rendered the passage, "Les Venetiens firent démanteler les tours et les murailles."

† De Montfort enlisted himself in the service of the king of Hungary. Ramusio (p. 36), as a Venetian, is bitter against him for going into the service of the enemy of the republic. He afterwards went to the holy land, and distinguished himself more by the splendour than the success of his arms.

‡ During all the winter there had been many instances of desertion. But the deserters were worse off than the French spirits. Most of them perished by the wintry storms, or by the hands of the peasants in Sclavonia.

CHAP. III. navy then held due course to Constantinople,\*  
 and when they arrived in the Propontis, they  
 20th June, anchored off the abbey of St. Stephen's, three  
 1203. leagues to the west of the great city. "It was  
 " at that time," says Villehardouin, with ex-  
 pressive simplicity, "that the magnitude and  
 " splendour of Constantinople awed the cou-  
 " rage of the bravest, and not without reason,  
 " for never since the creation of the world, had  
 " so bold an enterprise been undertaken by so  
 " small a force."† The irregular swarms of  
 Greeks must be opposed by soldiers who were  
 formidable from their united strength, and as dis-  
 cipline can alone be preserved in a well provided  
 camp, the barons, at the suggestion of the pru-  
 dent and experienced Dandolo, resolved to re-  
 plenish their magazines of corn and other ne-  
 cessaries from the little islands between Constan-  
 tinople and Chalcedon, before they encamped  
 under the walls of the metropolis. Accordingly,  
 with all the pride of military and naval power,  
 the adventurers again set sail: their silken ban-  
 ners and streamers were displayed from the  
 masts

\* Andrew Dandolo tells us that there were fifty galleys  
 which formed the convoy of two hundred and forty vessels in  
 which the soldiers sailed, a hundred and twenty palandars,  
 and seventy store ships.

† Villehardouin, No. 66.

masts and poops of the vessels ; the emblazoned and ornamented shields were ranged along the sides of the decks, like the battlements of towns, and the valiant knights stood behind their shelter, contemplating those boastful arguments, and picturing in their strong and ardent fancies the feats which they should soon achieve.\* But they were amazed on beholding the ramparts of Constantinople crowded with people and soldiers ; and when some of the enemy's stones and darts fell into their ships, the boldest hearts were appalled, the resolutions of the preceding day vanished in a moment, security by flight alone was thought of, and they were glad that the wind drove them to Chalcedon. After the men and horses had been refreshed in the imperial palace, the army moved to Scutari, whither the emperor sent offers of assistance to them in their passage through Asia Minor, but threatened them with destruction if they committed any aggression upon the Greeks. Conon de Bethune, the orator of the knights and barons, replied, that his companions entered the Grecian territories in the name of God, and in order to redress wrongs : if the usurper would descend from his throne, they would entreat pardon and an honourable station for him from the son of

\* Villehardouin, No. 67.

CHAP. III. his brother, the emperor Isaac. But they sternly advised the ambassador never again to use the language of dictation and reproof.

25th June. The French and Venetian vessels sailed under the walls of Constantinople, exhibiting young Alexius to the people, and endeavouring to incite them to revolt against the reigning emperor. Not an individual Greek, however, answered the call.\* The barons made several subsequent attempts to converse with the inhabitants, but arrows were the return which their exhortations received. War then became the only means of effecting the projected revolution. The invaders divided their army into six battalions. Baldwin of Flanders had the vanguard, because his soldiers were bowmen. His brother Henry commanded the second division; the third, fourth, and fifth, were led by the counts of St. Paul and Blois, and Matthew of Montmorency; and the rear guard of Tuscans, Lombards, and Germans, was headed by the Marquis of Montferrat.† The bishops and clergy exhorted the soldiers to confess their sins, and to make their wills, for they did not know how soon it might please God to deliver them to

Attack and  
siege of the  
city.

7th July.

\* Villehardouin, 67-74. Ramusio, 44-47; and the letter of the barons to the Pope, in Baluzius, p. 533.

† Villehardouin, 76-80.

to death. The day for the attempt being arrived, the knights, armed cap-à-pie, their shields suspended from their necks, and their helmets laced, went on board the palandars, with their war-horses covered with rich caparisons. The large and heavy vessels received the other soldiers. The palandars were linked to galleys which were to conduct them over the rapid Bosphorus.\* The navy of the Greek empire consisted only of twenty† ships, and they were in the harbour of Constantinople. Without opposition, therefore, the channel was crossed; the knights, with their lances on their wrists, leaped from the vessels as they approached the shore, directly the water reached only to their girdles. The long and cross bowmen, and other foot soldiers, imitated their boldness. The palandars were brought to anchor, the horses were let out of their doors,

I 3

the

\* Villehardouin, No. 82. I have almost literally translated Villehardouin's description of the scene. We may add from Du Cange, that the caparisons mentioned above were as much the mark of chivalry as the coat of arms. The Greek emperors used them, and they were the only persons who could have them of a purple colour.

† According to Nicetas, the reason why the ships were so few, was, that the admiral, a brother-in-law of the empress, had sold the anchors, cables, sails, &c. of most of the navy. Nicetas in Alex. Comn. iii. 9.



CHAP. III. the knights mounted, and formed in order of battle. So little resistance was made to the Franks, that if their foresight or sagacity had been equal to their courage, Constantinople would have been taken by a single effort. The capture of the tents and camp equipage of the Greeks, the port of Constantinople, and the tower of Galata, were the first consequences of the terror which the naval and military force of the invaders inspired.\* Five days after these successes, the astonishing spectacle was exhibited, of a handful of men commencing the siege of the largest city in the world. So far from being able to surround it, they could scarcely blockade one side, and as the port was theirs, the walls in that quarter were chosen as the subject of attack. Catapults and balistæ were brought against the small part of the city which was besieged, and the beautiful houses and palaces were destroyed by the enormous stones which were thrown into the city. The Venetians, whose skill did not consist in military operations, reembarked, and prepared their engines of naval war. After many skirmishes, it was resolved that a general attack should be made by land and sea. The camp was left in the charge of three of the French battalions,

\* Villehardouin, 82. Nicetas, p. 269, edit. 1557.

battalions, under the orders of the marquis of Montferrat ; while the counts of Blois, Flanders, and St. Paul led the rest. But the walls were so bravely defended by the Pisans, and by the English and Danish auxiliaries,\* that the French were repulsed. The van of the Venetian navy was formed of small vessels, and the rear was large ships, which carried towers as lofty as the walls of the city. After some hours had been consumed in murderous conflicts by the first line and the Greeks on the ramparts, the invaders were depressed and exhausted. But during the dreadful pause, the voice of the veteran Doge was heard threatening tremendous punishments to those who would not assault the walls.

CHAP. III.

17th July.

I 4

walls

\* Du Cange is at great pains to prove that the English and Danes, mentioned in the text, were people who inhabited the province of Denmark, whence the Angles proceeded. He proves that the emperors of Greece were accustomed to have stipendiary soldiers from various parts of Germany, and that the weapons of the Danes were hatchets. All this is true ; but the assertion of Villehardouin remains disproved. Ordericus Vitalis was guilty of an anachronism, in making the natives who left England at the time of the conquest (1066) enter into the service of Alexius, who began to reign in 1181. But we know that the persecutions of the English were carried on through the whole of the reign of William the First; and that a large emigration of the subjugated nation to different countries was the consequence of every fresh act of cruelty of the rapacious Normans.

CHAP. III. walls. The large ships approached the shore ;  
 — rage and shame infuriated the Venetians ; the  
 Greeks were panic struck ; the men of Dandolo's  
 vessel planted the standard of St. Mark on the  
 battlements of one of the towers, and imme-  
 diately a long extent of wall was conquered.  
 The emperor, who had not so well stationed his  
 troops as to succour in a moment any particular  
 point of attack, sent a tardy reinforcement to  
 the quarter where the enemy was powerful. But  
 the Doge set fire to the houses, and while the  
 imperial troops were engaged in the diversion  
 of occupation which this circumstance occasion-  
 ed, the triumphant allies fortified themselves in  
 the towers.\* At length the splendid but feeble  
 Grecians poured from the city, and formed in  
 martial front before the French. The Venetians  
 quitted their holds, and the Doge was the first  
 man that joined the Latin lines. For a moment  
 the Latin leaders were overawed by the number  
 of their foes, and forgot that the nerves and  
 soul of war were not in the Greeks. For some  
 while the armies stood gazing on each other ;  
 but suspense gave birth to terror in the mind of  
 Alexius, and a retreat into the city was sounded.  
 After this disgraceful resignation of empire,  
 flight from the scene of his shame alone remain-  
 ed

\* Nicetas, 270. Villehardouin, 82, 94.

ed to the usurper. On the same evening, therefore, he deserted and fled from the city, with his daughter and treasure.\* Abandoned by their emperor, a victorious army on the walls, the people of Constantinople drew old Isaac from his prison, clad him in imperial robes, and seated him on a throne in the palace of Blachernæ. The courtiers, who watched the change of fortune's vane, immediately paid their homage of falsehood and flattery ; but at the solicitation of the French and Venetians, he shared his title and power with his son Alexius. Peace and friendship existed for a while between the Greeks and Latins.† The Pisans, who had been the friends and soldiers of the deposed Alexius, became reconciled to the Venetians.‡ The French soon remembered the grand purpose for which they had taken up arms, and sent heralds to the sultan of Egypt, announcing their intention of making him feel the edge of their conquering sword, unless he immediately delivered up the holy land. They implored  
also

CHAP. III.

Revolution  
in the go-  
vernment.

\* This is Nicetas's account of the flight of Alexius. Baldwin (Baluzius, 594) says, that he left his family behind him. His daughter Irene was certainly with him some time afterwards, and it is as probable that she went with him, as that she followed him.

† Nicetas, 272. Villehardouin, 97, 101.

‡ Du Cange's note on No. 115 of Villehardouin.

CHAP. III. also the Pope's pardon for having violated his commands in attacking Constantinople; but his holiness replied, that he should withhold the word of reconciliation until it should be seen whether the new emperor and his friends were sincere in their professions of wishing to unite the Grecian heretics to the Roman Catholic church.\* The young Alexius paid the allied army part of the tribute, and kept them in the vicinity of Constantinople by every means of courtesy and promise. He assured the barons, that, next to God, he owed his throne to them: but he entreated his allies to consider that the Greeks hated him for his friendship with the Latins. Much time was necessary for the conciliation of forfeited allegiance: and great assistance would be required for his firmly grasping the reins of power. Nor would the Christian cause in Palestine be injured, if the French would for a while support the throne. None but enthusiasts could think of crossing the Mediterranean in autumn, and even were the perilous voyage effected, still no measures of hostility

\* Afterwards, however, the French received papal absolution. The Venetians also condescended to solicit the same formal approbation of their conduct; and Innocent, glad of the least sign of their repentance, pardoned them. Baluzius, 534.

tility could be taken against the Turks in winter. Let impatience be restrained till the more benignant season of spring, and then the armies of Greece should be transported to the holy land, and assist the Europeans in redeeming the sepulchre. These appeals to prudence and interest were disdained by lofty chivalry ; but when the Venetians peremptorily declined to tempt the seas at a dangerous period, military spirit sunk into acquiescence.\*

The marquis of Montferrat, and many of the French and Flemish knights, accompanied Alexius in a journey through Greece, where he received the tenders of his people's allegiance. While he was absent from Constantinople, the citizens had a new occasion of lamenting the presence of the Latins. Some Flemish soldiers, unrestrained by the prudence or humanity of the leaders of the army, embraced the dark and malignant feelings of the Latin residents, and openly attacked the votaries of another religion. The contest in arms would have been in favour of the Latins, but the sword was suspended when the attention was turned to a new calamity. In the tumult and confusion an edifice was set on fire. For eight days the flames spread through three miles of streets, and their last

\* Villehardouin, 101, 108.

CHAP. III. last effects were seen in the ships in the port.\* The French barons proclaimed their regret at this evil, and their indignation against its authors. But the enraged Greeks treated with ridicule and contempt these expressions of sorrow, and the Latins were obliged to seek shelter from their wrath among the Franks at Galata.† The folly of the emperors widened the breach between their allies and their people. The father and son were disunited, because Alexius presumed to place his own name before that of Isaac, and the old man, though totally unequal to discharge the duties of royalty, yet was indignant at being deprived of its honours. Alexius too offended the Greeks by his free and bacchanalian intercourse with the Barbarians. The gay cavaliers of France taught him to ridicule the repulsive pomp, and the cold and laboured ostentation of oriental grandeur; in their carousals they shewed the equality which it is the nature of dissoluteness to create, and the successor of the Cæsars was not ashamed to exchange his royal diadem for the cap of a Venetian sailor.‡

The

\* This fire consumed the northern part of the city. The first fire destroyed the western quarters.

† Nicetas, p. 273 and 4.

‡ Nicetas, 275. Villehardouin, 105-108.

The people had beheld with apathy the late CHAP. III.  
 great change in the imperial throne, for they  
 did not anticipate any revolution in their reli-  
 gious and civil institutions. But their passions  
 were roused to madness, when they saw the re-  
 ligion of Rome suddenly and violently tramp-  
 ling on their own opinions,\* and they then  
 reflected with grief and rage that the political  
 convulsion had been effected by the barbarous  
 nations of Europe. In order to discharge his  
 promises to the Latins, relating to money,  
 Alexius had imposed numerous and severe taxes  
 on his people. The odious duties were collected  
 with difficulty, and the officers of the emperor  
 resorted to the violent measures of robbing the  
 churches of their gold and silver.† For some  
 time the citizens regarded with mute anguish  
 this contempt of the national altars. But one  
 cause of hatred against the Latins stimulated  
 the other, and the Greeks silently and secretly  
 meditated the destruction of the Barbarians.  
 Alexius Murtzuple Ducas was not of the cha-  
 racter of those Grecian princes, who are de-  
 scribed

Another re-  
 volution.

\* Among other acts of cruelty and folly the barons of France made the patriarch of Constantinople proclaim in the church of St. Sophia that Innocent III. was the legitimate successor of St. Peter.

† Nicetas, 273.



CHAP. III, scribed by Nicetas, as having more timidity of the Crusaders than the deer has of a lion. He was eloquent and brave, and as often as he talked of patriotism and detestation of the Latins he found the people willing auditors. By the rights of his birth he was admitted to the royal palace, where his counsels were congenial to princes who felt the oppressiveness of their debt of gratitude to those who had placed them on the throne. Yet Alexius and his father paused, and more than common sagacity was necessary for the decision of so perplexed a case. If they should continue to support the Latin army, the hatred of the Greeks would be further increased by its presence, and would unquestionably burst into a flame immediately after the departure of the Crusaders. Were they openly to defy the Latins, they would by that measure conciliate their subjects, but they could not exalt the nerveless Greeks into an equality in arms with the vigorous French. The counsels of Ducas, though they did not prevail with the emperor to declare hostility against the Croises, yet occasioned some delay in the payment of the tribute. The barons observed with scorn and rage the vacillations of the court, they called upon Alexius to decide between the alternatives of peace or war, between the performance or breach of the treaty which he and his father had entered

entered into with their deliverers. No language but that of submission had ever before been heard in the palaces of Constantinople. The courtiers were astonished at the audacity of the French in defying the emperor : the feeling of indignation spread through the court, and the ambassadors sought their own safety in flight.\* On that day war commenced between the Greeks and Latins, and the marshal of Champagne had the happiness of thanking God that in every engagement the French were victors. In the darkness of the night the emperor directed seventeen vessels, filled with Greek fire, into the Venetian fleet. The walls of the city were crowded with people who joyfully flocked to behold the destruction of their enemies. But the Latin soldiers were prompt and active : the Venetians hurried to the shore, threw themselves into galleys and boats, and reached the fire-ships before the dreadful purpose had been accomplished. By means of poles and hooks they seized the Grecian vessels, drew them from their own ships, and directed them to exhaust their fury in the Bosphorus. One vessel

CHAP. III.

The Croises  
renew the  
war.

\* Villehardouin, 112. Ramusio, 76. Even in the wars between the Christians and the Muselmans, the former always demanded the objects of the war before they drew their sword. The defiance was generally carried by a person of condition, and often by the clergy.

CHAP. III. vessel, belonging to a Pisan merchant, was the only Latin ship that was destroyed.\*

As the remedy of all political evils, the Greek populace thought that a new emperor would be adequate. They assembled in the church of St. Sophia, and would not listen to the counsel of the patricians, that a change of princes would make no alteration in affairs. For three days they searched in vain for an individual who would accept the splendid but dangerous distinction. A young man, Nicholas Canabus, was, however, dazzled by the offer of the purple. He was crowned and proclaimed emperor of Greece. The marquis of Montferrat generously entered the city, and went to the palace of Blachernæ, in order to save Alexius. But the deposed emperor was a prisoner. Ducas ingratiated himself with the guards of the palace, and took the imperial buskins.† The people received their favourite with joy; and Canabus was

\* Villehardouin, 119.

† This circumstance was agreeable to the fashion of the Greek empire; for when an emperor was proclaimed, he was not immediately crowned or clothed with an imperial robe, but red buskins were given to him as the first and principal mark of dignity; thus commencing a ceremony at the foot, which most nations begin at the head. When an emperor was deposed or degraded, his buskins were taken from him. Oriental and Roman kings and princes have always wished to be distinguished from the people by the coverings

was deposed and soon forgotten. Murtzuple became emperor; he secured Alexius by imprisoning him in a dungeon; the old Isaac fell a victim to terror, and the usurper was left in quiet possession of the throne. Horror and astonishment seized the minds of the French and Venetians at the news of this inhumanity and treason. They declared that the Greeks were monsters in the sight of God and men, and that to punish them would be the height of virtue.\*

The enemies of Constantinople passed the remainder of the winter in preparing for war, and in gaining and enjoying the plunder of Grecian cities. Philippopoli was a principal source of booty; and on one occasion, as Henry of Hainault was returning from it, he routed the troops of Murtzuple; and though the emperor escaped, yet the joy of the people at that circumstance was more than balanced by the loss of the standard of the holy virgin.† The em-

VOL. II.

. K

peror

coverings of the legs and feet. Buskins of scarlet or purple were worn by the Roman generals who triumphed. Ornaments, as well as colour, distinguished the buskins of the great. Du Cange on Villehardouin, 116.

\* Villehardouin, 116-118. Baldwin's official letter to the Pope, in Baluzius, 534. Ramusio, 79.

† Nicetas, 280. Villehardouin, 119.

CHAP. III. peror was prompt and vigorous in measures of defence; and the Latins confessed that his military engines were larger and more powerful than any which they had ever beheld. Yet he was not so perfectly confident in his military preparations as to disdain the advantages of conciliation. He solicited and obtained a conference with the doge, but Dandolo declared to him that he would never treat with an usurper; and that his only measure of procuring favour would be to place his master on the throne; and implore his pardon.\* The doge was impenetrable to the arts of Murtzuple; and the arrival of some Latin cavalry terminated the discussion. The cruel policy of Murtzuple suggested the idea of evading for the future a similar demand by the murder of Alexius: and he was put to death that same night in prison. His tragical fate was soon known in the Christian camp; and a solemn treaty was then signed by the French and Venetians, that, in the event of the capture

\* See Baldwin's letter, p. 534. Nicetas, p. 280, makes the doge demand fifty thousand pounds of gold; and does not state in specific terms any other conditions. Baldwin's means of information were more direct than those of Nicetas. Baldwin adds, that Murtzuple killed Alexius that night in prison. It appears that this conference was held in the winter; and that the partition treaty, consequent on the death of Alexius, was signed in March 1204.

capture of Constantinople, the booty should be CHAP. III.  
 equally divided between the two people, after  
 the republic had been satisfied their pecuniary  
 demands. Six persons should be appointed  
 by each of the allied powers for the purpose of  
 electing an emperor. The fortunate object of  
 their choice should have the fourth part of the  
 city, with the palaces of Blachernæ and Bucó-  
 leon; and the rest of the metropolis of Greece  
 was to be equally partitioned among the Vene-  
 tians and the French. All claims of the Greek  
 empire upon the homage of the republic of Ve-  
 nice were to be renounced: and the doge was  
 to be the only individual who was not to ac-  
 knowledge the feudal superiority of the em-  
 peror. In order to balance as nearly as possible  
 the power and consequence of the French and  
 Venetians, the patriarch was to be chosen from  
 the nation to which the emperor did not belong.\*

The invaders, after they had taken these pre-  
 cautions against lawlessness, prepared to con-  
 summate their boldness. In the first siege the  
 operations by sea had given possession of the  
 city to the Venetians, and the French were  
 emulous of their glory. All the soldiers em-  
 barked; and the vessels were impelled against  
 the walls near the palace of the Blachernæ, on

April 8.

K 2

the

CHAP. III. the side of the port. But their attacks, though fierce and dreadful, were unavoidably desultory, for a perfect line of advance was not formed ; the Latins were repulsed with loss, and the Greeks congratulated themselves on the safety of their capital. Though Constantinople, on the side of the Propontis, seemed more accessible than through other fortifications, yet the Venetians declined the war in that quarter, because the current was strong, and some sudden gust of wind might perhaps drive the ships from their anchorage. On the fourth day the attack was renewed at the accustomed parts ; and the invaders guarded against a repetition of defeat, by lashing the vessels two by two ; and it was thought that no station of the Greeks could resist the double assault. For some hours the Greeks and Latins waged a distant war of arrows and darts ; but about noon the wind drove the vessels against the walls ; the French and Venetians leaped upon the ramparts, and the soldiers on board the *Paradise* and *Pilgrim*, commanded by the bishops of Troyes and Soissons, were the first to whom the Grecian towers yielded. The gates were soon in the possession of the Latins ; the knights galloped through the streets in such a noble array, that many of their terrified foes fled from the city ; and Murtzuple shut himself up in his palace. In the struggle

struggle between grief and rage, the Greeks made a momentary rally; but a German count dispersed the re-formed squadrons by setting fire to the city,\* and by that cruel means diverted their attention. The victors reposed that night midst the subjugated towers and palaces, and in the morning it was found that Muntzuple, his wife, and many of the despairing people, had fled from the city.†

Complete  
victory.  
April 12,  
1204.

The conquest of the seat of the Grecian empire was achieved, and the triumphant barbarians had the choice of mercy or revenge. But the ferocity to which they were indebted for success, was not readily extinguished; and they abandoned themselves to the usual vices of conquerors. In their work of blood they found willing auxiliaries in the Latin population, who had contributed to the luxury of the inhabitants of Constantinople without conciliating their respect and kindness. Two thousand Greeks became victims of the rage of conquest, and the malignity of long concealed hatred. The scenes of female violation need not be de-

Sack of  
Constanti-  
nople.

κ 3

scribed.

\* Gunther, p. 15. This was the third fire. Villehardouin (No. 130) says it lasted a night and a day, and burnt more houses than were contained in any three towns of France.

† Villehardouin, 120-130.



CHAP. III. scribed.\* The palaces of the rich, and the meanest houses of the poor, were explored for plunder by the cruel diligence of the victors. Their sacrilegious hands tore away the ornaments of churches; the coffins of the emperors were broken open, and the mouldered imperial vestments were stripped from the corpse of Justinian. Their destruction of the rich and beautiful altar of the church of St. Sophia would pass as an ordinary circumstance in the history of sieges; but the annals of profanation have seldom presented us with an instance of a vulgar courtesan, the priestess of the furies, seating herself in the chair of the patriarch, and singing a bacchanalian song to the corresponding actions of the surrounding soldiers and mob. The marquis of Montferrat, and the French and Venetian ecclesiastics, prayed and threatened their companions; but the voice of reason and religion could not abate the storm of the passions. Nothing was so difficult as to soften the ferocity of these barbarians, and to gain their affections. They were so irritable, that a single word would kindle the flame: it was folly to attempt

\* Pope Innocent describes the crimes of the Crusaders against women and property, in no very gentle terms, p. 538.

attempt either to lead them or to make them hear reason.\* CHAP. III.

Yet occasionally a ray of virtue pierced the dark scenes of horror, and shone with bright and benignant influence. A Venetian merchant was bound to Nicetas, the Grecian historian, by the pleasing obligation and honourable tie of gratitude. The Italian longed to display the ardour and sincerity of his feelings; and as soon as the rapine commenced, he placed himself as a sentinel opposite the door of his benefactor. He was armed like a Crusader; and as he could converse in most of the languages of Europe, his speech corresponded with his appearance. For a while the men whom he wished to deceive passed him, on his assurance that he was guarding the mansion in obedience to the orders of the chiefs. But when the soldiers were maddened by indulgence in savageness, and their avidity for plunder increased as the objects of gratification were exhausted, the merchant saw that his protection would soon be but of small avail. He therefore told his friend, that unless he quickly left Constantinople, he would lose his liberty or life, and his family would become subject to the license of victory. Forced then to abandon his home and property, Nicetas,

K 4

accompanied

\* Nicetas, p. 283.

CHAP. III. — accompanied by his wife and children, entrusted himself to the conduct of the Italian. At every step they were joined by some of the Greeks, who were flying through the streets, and who, in the extremity of despair, sought for safety even in the companionship of their unarmed countrymen. The scenes of sensuality which every where presented themselves, compelled husbands and fathers to surround their female friends, and to command them to disfigure their faces by dirt. The wild glances of a French soldier fell however on a girl, whose charms shone through every attempted concealment or disguise. The licentious wretch pressed his way through the trembling crowd, and snatched the object of his brutal passion from the arms of her aged and helpless father. Nicetas invoked the name of Heaven, and called on his companions to save the virgin from dishonour, and her parent from premature and wretched death. The ruffian smiled in mockery on their misery and helplessness. But so venerable was the appearance of the old man, and so affecting were the shrieks and tears of his child, that the French soldiers, whom the circumstance had drawn to the spot, indignantly tore their comrade away, and virtue had its triumph. The noble Venetian conducted his friends beyond the walls, and  
Nicetas

Nicetas gained repose and safety on the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus. CHAP. III.

The heralds of the army proclaimed the orders of the barons, that all the plunder should be carried into three churches, preparatory to its distribution. But injustice and selfishness went hand in hand; and many of the soldiers, both of high and low condition, secreted the dear bought spoils. But all those who were convicted of self-appropriation, expiated their crime by death; and the place of execution was crowded.\* The French absolved themselves of all pecuniary claims on the part of the Venetians; and in the division of the remainder of the money that was collected, twenty marks were given to a knight, ten to a horse serjeant, and five to a foot soldier. The rest of the booty was divided; and the only notion we can obtain of its value, was the offer made to the French by the mercantile Venetians, of giving in exchange for the whole of it, four hundred marks to a knight, two hundred to a priest and a horse- Division of the plunder.

\* Villehardouin, 132-134. Et de l'emblor cels qui en fu revoiz sachiez que il en fu fais granz justice. Et assez en i ot de penduz. Li Cuens de Sain Pol en pendi un suen Chevalier l'escu al col, qui en avoit retenu. Et mult i ot de cels qui en retendrent des petez et des grands; Mès ne fu mie seu. Baluzius, 535. Ramusio, 90-95.

CHAP. III. a horseman, and one hundred marks to an ordinary soldier.\*

Vengeance  
of the Croi-  
ses on the  
fine arts.

The misfortunes of a city may be repaired by future prosperity; the disgrace of defeat may be effaced by subsequent glory; and the sympathy of after ages for the demolition of edifices, and the waste of property, is softened by the reflection, that the tomb has long since closed upon the sufferers. But there are calamities which extend their influence to all ages and countries; and a liberal selfishness will kindle indignation when barbarism has not spared the noble monuments which genius has reared. By the different sources of purchase and plunder,  
Constantine

\* Cont. of Archb. of Tyre in Martenne, v. 667. "Since the creation of the world," says Villehardouin, "there never was so much booty found in any conquered city." In the same strain Baldwin remarks, in a letter to the Pope, the gold and silver, the silk, the gems, and precious stones, and all those things which are accounted riches, were found in more abundance than all the Latin world could furnish. Villehardouin says that there fell to the share of the French five hundred thousand marks, and ten thousand horses. It is difficult to understand that so much coin fell into the hands of the conquerors; yet the specification of horses forbids the idea that the sum expresses value and not specie. However, in another place he has said that fifty thousand marks were paid to the Venetians: and that the surplus, namely, one hundred thousand marks, was paid among the soldiers. Villehardouin, No. 134, 135.

Constantine had adorned his city with the sculpture and statuary of the Pagan world.\* The most beautiful Grecian temples were converted into churches, and though in the course of time penal laws were enforced against heathen worship, yet the pride of ancestry guarded the monuments of ancient fame, till in the eighth century the world became divided into the opposite factions of the admirers and the haters of image worship. The statues and pictures of Christian saints and martyrs should alone have been the objects of the fury of the Iconoclasts, but the blind zeal of party and superstition hurled into the gulph of destruction the marble representations of heathen virtue and greatness, and for one hundred and twenty years the fine arts were the victims of theological controversy. The silent and mouldering effects of time were less injurious than the anger, hatred, ignorance, and fanaticism of man. In days of sedition, public edifices were set on fire, but the wantonness and malice of the mob were more destructive than the flames. Notwithstanding all these causes  
of

\* Procopius, in his account of the siege of Rome by Belisarius, mentions the important fact, that, all the fine monuments of art which had been left there by Constantine were entire, and valued: so that it is false and calumnious to charge the Goths and Vandals with their destruction.

CHAP. III. of ruin, Constantinople had enough statues yet remaining to gratify the revenge of the Latins, whose envy was inflamed by the fancied superior learning and taste of the Greeks. The barbarians, devoid of all love of the beautiful and fair, destroyed a figure of Juno, which had formerly been at Samos, and which was so tremendously colossal, that eight oxen could scarcely draw its head from the forum of Constantine to the palace of Bucoleon, after the French had made the mutilation. Two celebrated figures of a man and an ass, formed by order of Augustus, on occasion of a fortunate omen before the battle of Actium. A beautiful statue of Venus receiving the apple of discord; an exquisite Helen,\* in all the freshness and modesty of youth, could not command the admiration of the iron-hearted French and Venetians. An obelisk of varied and tasteful workmanship, surmounted by a female figure, which moved by the least agitation of the air, and was, for that reason, called the servant of the winds. An equestrian statue, the Bellerophon, adorned the square

\* "What," observes Nicetas, "shall I say of the beautiful Helen; of her, who brought together all Greece against Troy? Did she mitigate these inimitable, these iron-hearted men? No; nothing like it could even she effect, who had before enslaved so many spectators with her beauty."

square of Mount Taurus. The Hippodrome CHAP. III.  
 had a colossal statue of Hercules, perhaps the  
 work of Lysippus, and the ornament success-  
 sively of Tarentum and Rome. The statue was  
 of a hero in repose. His lion's skin (that looked  
 formidable even in brass) was thrown over him.  
 He was sitting, without a quiver, a bow, or a  
 club. His right leg was bent at the knee; his  
 head gently reclined on his left hand, and his  
 countenance was full of dejection. And yet this  
 Hercules the barbarians did not spare! Such  
 of the venerable monuments of antiquity as were  
 in marble were broken or destroyed, and such  
 as were in bronze were melted into coin or  
 various utensils.\* The guilt of this savage  
 destruction

\* I have mentioned only a few of the most memorable  
 pieces of statuary in Constantinople. The aggregate merit  
 of the collection it is difficult to ascertain. Nicetas (our  
 only original authority) can seldom be depended on for strict  
 accuracy: his hatred of the invaders is, at least, equal to  
 his love of truth, and his general style is bombastical and  
 inflated. His account of the destruction of the statues is  
 not contained in the common editions of his works. Fraud  
 and shame, as Harris says, made the editors leave it out. It  
 is printed, however, in the eighth vol. of Fabricius, *Bibl.*  
*Græc.* and the first vol. of Banduri, *Imperium Orientale*.  
 In several dissertations in the eleventh and twelfth volumes  
 of the memoirs of the Gottingen Society, Heyne has given  
 a catalogue of the Constantinopolitan collection, and has  
 examined the history of their ruin with philosophy and  
 taste.



CHAP. III. destruction lies chiefly on the French: for the four bronze horses in the square of St. Mark in Venice, shew that at least in one instance the more refined Venetians were satisfied with the milder crime of robbery.

The boldness of a few thousand soldiers\* had been rewarded by the subjugation of the largest city in the world, the injuries of the Crusaders were avenged, and nothing now remained to complete the degradation of Greece, than to invest a barbarian with the Roman purple. The eyes of every one were fixed on the marquis of Montferrat and the count of Flanders, for they were the most distinguished generals among the Latins.† The barons dreaded lest the rejected candidate

\* The number of the united French and Venetians was only twenty thousand. There were four hundred thousand men capable of bearing arms in Constantinople. Et bien en dûrent nostre Seigneur loer, que il n'avoient mie plus de vingt mil homes armez entre uns et altres, et par l'aie de Diex si avoient pris de quatre cens mil homes où plus; et en la plu fort ville qui fust en tot le monde, qui grant ville fust et la mielz fermée. Villehardouin, No. 133. The amount of the force of the Venetians when they left Venice, is thus stated by Sanudo, in his *Vite de Duchi di Venezia* (Muratori, *Rerum Italicarum Scriptores*, vol. xxii, p. 528): "E questo stuolo d'armata fu di Galere, 60. Navi, 240. Uscieri, 20, e—fino al numero di 300. Vele e poi gente d'arme (come scrive il Bionde e Marcantonio Sabellico) cavalli 450 e fanti 8,000 in esse."

† Dandolo was not thought of, for he was already the sovereign

candidate should, in spleen and discontent, CHAP. III.  
 imitate the treachery of the count of Tholouse  
 on the formation of the kingdom in Jerusalem,\*  
 and therefore it was determined that the em-  
 peror should bestow upon the other in feudal  
 tenure the island of Candia, and all the Grecian  
 states on the other side of the canal. Twelve  
 electors were then appointed; six on the part  
 of the Venetians, and six for the French, and  
 their consciences were bound by a solemn obli-  
 gation to allow merit alone to the crowned.  
 The choice fell upon the count of Flanders.†  
 The bishop of Soissons, one of the electors,  
 announced

Election of  
 a Latin  
 emperor.

veraign of a state. The constant residence of the em-  
 peror in Constantinople was necessary, and pride forbad  
 the Venetians from wishing to change their seat of govern-  
 ment.

\* The treachery of the count of Tholouse was accu-  
 rately remembered. The barons said, that Raymond, after  
 the election of Godfrey, was so highly indignant, that he  
 persuaded many of the knights to return to Europe. The  
 new and feeble state was consequently in the greatest peril.  
 Villehardouin, No. 136.

† The debates of the electors were not minuted and pub-  
 lished. In the absence of the detail, Du Cange rationally  
 conjectures that the opinion was started and prevailed, that  
 if the count of Flanders were chosen, he might expect the  
 friendship of his former neighbours, the kings of France;  
 but that the marquis of Montferrat could not support the  
 empire by an equal assistance from the various divided sove-  
 reignties of Italy.

CHAP. III. announced to the anxious multitude the name of their future lord; and the barons and knights, agreeably to the Byzantine custom, elevated the emperor on a buckler, and bore him into the church of St. Sophia. When the pomp of magnificence and dignity was prepared, the coronation took place. The papal legate threw the imperial purple over Baldwin; the soldiers joined with the clergy in crying aloud; "he is worthy of reigning;" and the splendour of conquest was mocked by the Grecian ceremony of presenting to the new sovereign a tuft of lighted wool, and a small vase filled with bones and dust, as emblems of the perishableness of grandeur, and the brevity of life.

General remarks on the empire of the Latins in Greece.

The establishment of the Latins in Constantinople was the important though unlooked for issue of the fifth crusade: but their dominion lasted only fifty-seven years. The history of that period forms a part of the annals of the Lower Empire, and not of the holy wars. But we may remark, generally, that in a very few years fortune ceased to smile on the conquerors. Their arrogant and encroaching temper awakened the jealousy of the king of Bulgaria. The fierce mountaineers, who had so often insulted the majesty of the Roman empire, now redeemed themselves from the sin of rebellion, by ceaseless war on the usurpers of their former master's

master's throne. The change of the Greek ritual into the service of the Latin church, was a subject of perpetual murmur and discontent. The feudal code of the kingdom of Jerusalem was violently imposed on the people, in utter contempt of their manners and opinions. The Greeks, too, were not admitted into any places of confidence in the government, and the nobility gradually retired from Constantinople, and associated themselves with the princes of the deposed royal family. Several of those princes formed states out of the ruins of the empire, and Manuel Paleologus,\* the emperor of Nice, descendant of Lascaris, son-in-law of the usurper Alexius, had the glory of recovering the throne of the Cæsars, and of finally expelling the usurpers from Constantinople. On the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus the Latins never had much power. CHAP. III.  
July 1261.

The jealousy which Genoa entertained of her great rival, Venice, was one of the most active causes of the fall of the Latin empire. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries, commercial concessions had often purchased for Constantinople the military and naval aid of the sovereign of the

VOL. II.

L

Adriatic ;

\* He was the stock of the Paleologi, who reigned at Constantinople till the capture of that city by the Turks, in the year 1453.

CHAP. III. **Adriatic; and at the time of the fifth crusade,**  
 the empire appeared to acknowledge the equality of the republic. The imperial throne gained the friendship of other Italian princes, and the Pisans as well as the Venetians, had almost unlimited commerce with the Grecian states. Each of these allies had its church and its exchange in Constantinople; its consuls decided the causes of their respective citizens, and both nations enjoyed the rare and blessed privilege of exemption from payment of public taxes. In the middle of the twelfth century, Genoa had obtained commercial immunities; but it does not appear that they were so extensive as those which had been acceded to the Venetians and Pisans. When the Crusaders captured Constantinople, the commerce of the Black Sea was open to the Venetians, a commerce, which before that event had only been slightly enjoyed by the Italians.\* The Genoese, alarmed at the maritime progress of the Venetians, took up arms against them; fortune befriended the inferior power, and in the year twelve hundred and fifteen a treaty was concluded, whereby the Genoese were confirmed in the commercial privileges

\* Marin, *Storia civile e politica del commercio de' Veneziani*, vol. iv. p. 145, &c. cited in Heeren, *Essai sur l'Influence des Croisades*, 2 partie, 1 sec.

villages which they had enjoyed under the Greek emperor. But the political situation of the Venetians continued a great source of superiority, and their rivals incited and assisted\* the Greeks to throw off the Latin yoke, and recapture Byzantium.†

CHAP. III.  
—

\* So much superior to the religious prejudices of the age were the commercial republics of Italy, that the Venetians took Constantinople in defiance of the orders of the Pope, and the Genoese dethroned the emperor, although he was supported by his Holiness.

† Although the Greeks recovered Constantinople, yet most of the Archipelago and Proper Greece, from Thessaly southwards, continued for years to belong to the Latins.

## CHAP. IV.

## THE SIXTH CRUSADE.

*State of the East during the fifth Crusade.....History of Antioch.....Effects in Palestine of the fifth Crusade.....Death of the sovereigns of Jerusalem.....Mary, the new queen.....Her marriage with John de Brienne.....Another Crusade instigated by Innocent III.....Letters of Innocent to Muselman princes.....Character of De Courcon, preacher of the sixth Crusade.....Fourth council of Lateran...Extent of the ardour for a holy war.....Hungary and Lower Germany send the chief Crusaders.....*  
*— Criminal excesses of the Croises.....Their useless pilgrimages.....Defection of the king of Hungary.....Fresh Crusaders.....Change of crusading operations.....Siege and capture of Damietta.....Arrival in Egypt of English Crusaders.....Events subsequent to the capture of Damietta.....The Croises take the road for Cairo.....The legate refuses favourable terms of peace.....Consequences of his violence.....Damietta surrendered to the Muselmans.....The emperor Frederic II.....His marriage with the heiress of Jerusalem.....His disputes with the Popes.....He sails to Acre.....His friendship with the Moslems.....The recovery of the sepulchre, and other advantageous results of his crusade.*

WHILE

WHILE the barons of France were preparing for the fifth Crusade, the remnants of the Latins of the east enjoyed repose on the coast of Palestine. They were generally overlooked by the Muselmans in the contest for supremacy between the Atabeks and the family of Saladin. But their greatest security arose more from the misfortunes than from the occupations of their enemies. In 1199 the Nile did not rise to its usual height,\* and the subsequent famine of Egypt was felt through all the Muselman countries. The miseries of the Egyptians were unexampled. The streets of every town were strewed with dead bodies, and when the vilest descriptions of food had been exhausted, men arrested the progress of the demon of famine by eating the flesh of men. There are degrees even in cannibalism, but the Egyptians must have carried it to the extremity, for women were executed in Cairo for sustaining their own lives by devouring their children.† Pestilence

CHAP. IV.

State of the  
east during  
the fifth  
crusade.

L 3

is

\* Abulfeda, iv. 183. Whenever there was a want of water in Egypt, the Ethiopians were charged with having turned the course of the Nile. The caliph always sent an embassy to the lords of the higher provinces, for permission for the water to descend; and, when the Nile was at its usual height, the people sent a complimentary return of thanks to the Ethiopians.

† Abdallatiphus, Hist. Egypt. lib. ii. ch. ii.



CHAP. IV. is the faithful attendant on famine ; and a year  
1200— of scarcity was followed by a year of disease.  
1201, The most populous provinces became festival  
halls for birds of prey. The shores of the Nile  
were covered with dead bodies. So numerous  
were the funerals in the cities, that it became  
at length impossible to perform that last sad  
act of humanity with decency, and carcasses  
were thrown into the fields, or collected into  
heaps. Of those who died of famine and dis-  
ease, no calculation was made, and the Arabic  
historians dismiss the dreadful subject with the  
remark, that God alone could reckon the  
number.

The Christians, in consequence of their convenient situation for commerce, did not suffer the extremities which depopulated Egypt, but they fully shared in a calamity of another description. Syria, Mesopotamia, and Palestine were almost ruined by an earthquake. Acre, Tripoli, Tyre and Damascus felt the storm in various degrees ; superstition engendered the idea that it was the awful convulsion of nature which was to precede the last judgment, and the idea was strengthened by the fact that Jerusalem, the sacred city, had not suffered like the rest.\* The waste of edifices was easily restored,

\* Abulfeda, iv. 195.

mored, for common Asiatic dwellings are simple and of moderate cost. But the fortifications of Acre had been extensive and substantial, and much time and expense were used in the re-edification. The treasures of the king and of the military orders purchased the materials, and the Muselman prisoners assisted in the labour. The stern ferocity of soldiers has no respect for genius or literature, and the Persian poet Sadi, at that time a captive, worked like the meanest hewer of stones.\*

CHAP. IV.

But before we continue the history of the Christians in their few cities in Palestine, we must bring down the annals of Antioch from the conclusion of the third Crusade to the close of the fifth. We have seen that the victories of the duke of Suabia restored independence to the principality, and from subsequent events it appears that Bohemond the Third was once more upon his throne. Between two neighbouring states motives to war are frequent; the eastern frontier of Palestine was the scene of the altercation of Christians, but Armenia was

History of  
Antioch.  
A.D.  
1193-1205.

L 4

generally

\* I met with the notice of this curious circumstance respecting Sadi in Michaud's *Histoire des Croisades*, vol. 3. p. 357. M. Langlès found the anecdote in the Persian author Daulet Chah, and inserted a notice of it in the *Magazin Encyclopédique*, 1796, tome 2. p. 477. A merchant of Aleppo redeemed Sadi from Christian captivity.

CHAP. IV. generally compelled to own the superiority of the Latins at Antioch. In the proudest days of the Persian and Byzantine empires, Armenia had been both the occasion and the theatre of imperial wars, and she fluctuated in her allegiance till the reign of Theodosius the younger, when a territorial partition terminated the animosity of her rival lords. The Armenian provinces of the empires experienced the political revolutions of their respective states, but in the conflicts between the Seljukians and the Grecians, some dawnings of independence appeared among the Christian lords of Mount Taurus. In the eleventh century several Armenians, eminent for birth and military accomplishments, attained different steps of power, and in the following age both the Latins and Greeks acknowledged the *kingdom* of the Less Armenia. Kaghic Basile (a name unmusical to European ears) was a man who outstripped his countrymen in the race of ambition, and his dominions comprised much of Cilicia and much of Cappadocia. Christianity had made some impression on Armenia in very early ages of the church, but from the time of Constantine it had been the rule of the faith and the morals of all the people: Armenia was however branded with the name of schismatic, for in the world of opinions respecting the incarnation, she adopted the

the heresy of Eutyches, that the divine nature alone existed in Jesus Christ. The presence of the European population in Asia had been witnessed with joy by the Armenians as the completion of an old and national expectation, that the people of Rome would one day come into the east, and redeem the holy land. After the formation of the French and Italian states in Syria and Palestine, there was some intercourse of friendship between the Armenians, and the new settlers. But the union was not cordial or lasting; religious and national distinctions kept the people asunder, and the princes were intent upon aggrandizement and ambition.\* Under the pretence of concerting general measures of policy, Bohemond drew Rupin, the lord of Armenia, to Antioch, and in violation of public right put him in prison, and invaded his dominions. Livon, the brother of Rupin, prepared every method of fraud and force to revenge the wrong. A crafty politician rather than a valiant warrior, Bohemond aimed at the annexation of Armenia to Antioch, by imprisoning its sovereign. He proposed a conference between himself

CHAP. IV.

1194.

\* Haithon, *Hist. Orient.* c. 9. 14. M. Edessa, vol. 9. p. 276, of *Notices des MSS. du Roi. La Lignage d'Outremer*, art. *Rois d'Arménie*, the *Chronological Tables of De Guignes*, vol. 1. p. 432. Mosheim, *Ecc. Hist.* vol. 1. p. 337.

CHAP. IV. self and Livon, and desired that each prince should come unattended. Livon anticipated the treachery of his fellow sovereign, and concealed two hundred horsemen in the forest near the place of conference. After some moments had been passed in reciprocal courtesies and formal discussion, a troop of armed men at the signal of Bohemond appeared and surrounded Livon. The Armenian prince gave the note of alarm, and his soldiers started from their retreat. Their courage and numbers were irresistible, and they not only rescued their master, but took Bohemond himself prisoner. This event gave the preponderance of power to Armenia. The principality of Antioch was declared to be a fief of its successful rival, and before the two princes were set at liberty, Raymond, the eldest son of Bohemond, was married to Alice, a daughter of Rupin, and the issue of the marriage, the contending parties agreed, should inherit the states of Armenia and Antioch. About the year 1200 Raymond died, and left a son, named Rupin. Bohemond designed him for his successor, and his pretensions were recognized by the states of Antioch and Armenia. The regency of Tripoli was bestowed upon Bohemond, the younger son of Bohemond III. with a promise of the absolute possession of his vicarious state, if he should support young Rupin

Rupin in his hereditary rights to Antioch. Bohemond the regent thought that on the death of his brother Raymond he should have been looked upon as the heir to the principality of Antioch. Discontent took possession of him, and quickly ripened into hostility; he revolted against his father, and by the aid of some Templars and Hospitallers drove the lawful owner from the banks of the Orontes. The old man, however, recovered his authority, for the regent was abandoned by his allies. Bohemond the prince died in the year of the pestilence in Egypt. The annals of Antioch are obscured with treachery and blood: and the cloud is particularly thick over the period of which we are writing. From some faint glimmerings of light it appears that Livon of Armenia recovered, but could not retain Antioch, and that the authority of Bohemond IVth. the usurper, was generally paramount. In 1205, he acknowledged the feudal superiority of the new emperor of Constantinople,\* and in the three subsequent years

\* The largest part of the Flemish force which was destined for the general purposes of the fifth crusade did not join Baldwin. It sailed from Flanders to Marseilles, and then pursued its course to the holy land, while the rest of the Crusaders were conducting the first siege of Constantinople. The fate of most of the impatient Flemings was death: but some obscurity surrounds the circumstances of their

CHAP. IV. years he exercised various rights of sovereignty.\*

Effects in  
Palestine of  
the fifth  
Crusade.

We may now return to the general history of Palestine. The successful heroism of the French adventurers before Constantinople alarmed the Muselmans, and Saphadin gladly concluded a treaty for six years peace with the Christians. Sinners only and not heroes, repentant pilgrims and not hostile bands, were therefore the new visitors of the shores of Syria. The murderers of the bishop of Wurtzburgh expiated their crime in the holy land, and at the conclusion of various penances, a sentence of three years abode in that country was pronounced by the pope on a wretch, who avowed that during the famine in Egypt he had slain and eaten his own wife and daughter.† But Palestine soon again became

their history. Others allied themselves with Bohemond IV. The wife of Baldwin was at Antioch, and directly the news arrived of the elevation of her husband to the imperial throne, Bohemond saluted her by the title of empress, and did homage to her for his principality. Villehardouin, 52, 120. Sanutus, 203, 204. Cont. of Arch. of Tyre in Martenne, v. 656, &c.

\* Cont. of Archb. of Tyre, v. 648. Sanutus, 201.

† In the scale of canonical punishments, the pilgrimage to Jerusalem or Rome was called the greater pilgrimage, as a penitentiary expedition to other holy places was the less pilgrimage. By the laws of King Henry I. of England, a priest who revealed the secrets of the Confessional was subject

became the theatre of ambition and of glory. Almeric and his wife died, and Mary, the daughter of Isabella and Conrad of Tyre, was the new ideal queen of Jerusalem, while Hugh de Lusignan, son of Almeric by his first wife, was proclaimed king of Cyprus. Hugh had married the princess Alice, half sister of the young queen, and daughter of Henry count of Champagne, and Isabella. There was not at that time any nobleman of rule or influence in Palestine capable of governing the state; and the ecclesiastical and civil potentates resolved, that Philip Augustus of France should provide a husband for Mary. The bishop of Acre and the lord of Cesarea were the deputies; and the French king received them with a kindness which corresponded to his sense of the distinction that was paid him. Philip Augustus fixed his eyes on John de Brienne, son of the count of Brienne in Champagne. The favourite was wise in council, and experienced in war, and well known among the knights of Europe. Though the sovereignty over Jerusalem was titular, yet the command of the Christian army in Palestine, and the possession of a young queen so desirable as the ambassadors painted the daughter of Almeric, were circumstances

CHAP. IV.

1206.  
Death of  
the sove-  
reigns of  
Jerusalem.  
The new  
queen.

ject to the penalty of perpetual wandering. Du Cange, Glossary, art. Peregrinatio.



CHAP. IV. circumstances so flattering to the imagination of an aspiring cavalier, that John de Brienne received the gift with joy; and the deputies were dismissed with the promise that in two years he would join them in Palestine with a powerful band.\* The bishop of Acre and the lord of Cesarea were naturally disposed to exaggerate the success of their mission; and on their return to the holy land, their accounts of the impression which they had made on Europe elated the Christians to insolence, and depressed the Saracens into gloom. The truce of six years was on the point of expiring, and Saphadin offered to renew it, and to resign to the regency any ten castles or towns they might select, to be retained by them in perpetuity if the Saracens broke their faith. The knights of St. John, and those of the Teutonic order, argued strenuously for the acceptance of this offer; but the spirit of party was always the enemy of Palestine, and the Templars and clergy declared for war.†

September  
1210.  
Her marriage.

At the appointed time John de Brienne arrived at Acre: the next day he received the hand of Mary, and shortly afterwards was crowned, and received the oaths of allegiance of the barons. Only three hundred knights had participated

\* Sanutus, 205.

† Ibid. 206.

participated in his hopes of restoring the for- CHAP. IV.  
 tunes of the holy land, for the enthusiasm and  
 love of glory of the western chivalry were di-  
 verted into new channels. England\* and Ger-  
 many were torn by internal disturbances, the  
 court of France was watching the turn of events,  
 and Pope Innocent employed the penitents in  
 putting an end to the heresy of the Albigenses.  
 The destroyers of heretics and of infidels were  
 alike praiseworthy ; and a crusade into the south  
 of France was less dangerous than a voyage to  
 Syria. From these various causes the Musel-  
 mans in Asia were forgotten or disregarded.†

As

\* Innocent's letter to John was short and cold. See it in  
 Rymer, i. 104, new edit.

† " Pope Innocent III. having lately learned the trick of  
 " employing the army of pilgrims in bye-services, began now  
 " to set up a trade thereof. He levied a great number of  
 " Crusaders, whom he sent against the Albigenses in France.  
 " These were reputed heretics, whom his holiness intended  
 " to root out with all cruelty ; that good shepherd knowing  
 " no other way to bring home a wandering sheep than by  
 " worrying him to death. He freely and fully promised the  
 " undertakers the self-same pardons and indulgences as he  
 " did to those who went to conquer the holy land ; and very  
 " conacionably requested their aid only for forty days,  
 " hoping to chop up these Albigenses at a bit. The place  
 " being nearer, the service shorter, the work less, the wages  
 " the same with the voyage into Syria, many entered them-  
 " selves

CHAP. IV. As peace had been refused, Saphadin marched an army to the country round Tripoli. The king displayed his valour in many a fierce encounter; and though he never conquered his foes, yet he broke the impression of the enemy, and saved his states from utter annihilation. He foresaw the approaching ruin of the holy cause; every day the Saracens made some acquisition; and the Latin barons, by every opportunity, and for every pretext, returned to Europe. He wrote, therefore, to the Pope that the kingdom of Jerusalem consisted only of two or three towns, and that the civil wars between the sons of Saladin alone suspended its fate.\*

Another  
Crusade  
instigated  
by Innocent  
III.

Every project of ambition which the daring genius of Gregory VII. had formed, was embraced by the ardent spirit of Innocent III. In raising a fabric of ecclesiastical policy on the ruins of gospel liberty, the importance of guiding the military arm of Europe was not lost sight of.† The commands of the Vatican were hurled

“selves in this employment, and neglected the other.” Fuller, *History of the Holy War*, book iii. ch. 18.

\* Sanutus, 206. Cont. William in Martenne, p. 680.

† He had also “the office of bearing the bag and what put into it, as contributed to this action from pious people, and expended but some few drops of the showers he received.” Fuller, *Holy War*, book i. ch. 2.

hurled upon every part of Europe, calling men to exterminate infidelity. In a circular letter to the sovereigns and clergy, the Pope declared that the time was at last arrived, when the most happy results might be expected from a confederation of the Christian powers. Such men as fought faithfully for God, would obtain a crown of glory ; but those who, on the present urgent occasion, refused to serve him, would be punished everlastingly. “ Jesus Christ has kindly pointed out to you the way for your redeeming yourselves from the vices and frivolities of the world. But he will condemn you of gross ingratitude and infidelity, if you neglect to march to his succour in a time when he is in danger of being driven from a kingdom which he acquired by his blood. The Muhammedan heresy, the beast foretold by the spirit, will not live for ever ; its age is 666. On the very spot, on Mount Thabor itself, where the Redeemer shewed his future glory to his disciples, the Saracens have raised a fortress for the confusion of the Christian name. They hope, by means of this fortress, to possess themselves of Acre, and then to subjugate all the holy land, at present almost destitute of sacred soldiers.” His holiness then remitted the punishment of sins, not only for those who went, but for such as

CHAP. IV. contributed largely to the expenses of the enterprise. The protection of St. Peter was promised to the families and fortunes of the pilgrims. They who had bound themselves to pay usury were released from their oaths; and secular power should compel the Jews to remit their claims. Three years was the time for which the faithful were to enlist under the banners of Christ: and the wealthy clergy and nobility were to support the poor but faithful pilgrims. The maritime powers were to contribute their ships. The war against the Saracens was to be the permanent consideration of Europe. The laws should be put in force which forbade the sale of warlike materials to the enemy.\* The indulgences were revoked which had been granted to those who quitted their homes in order to exterminate heresy in Provence, and infidelity in Spain.†

Letters of  
Innocent to  
the Mus-  
selman  
princes.

In a letter to the sultan of Aleppo, written in 1212, the Pope had complimented the Saracen upon his respect for Christianity, and implored him

\* It seems to have been the general rule throughout the Crusades, that Christians should not sell military weapons to infidels. I observe that Charlemagne prohibited his subjects from selling arms to foreigners of any nation or religion. *Capitularia*, lib. iii. cap. 75, vol. ii. p. 186.

† This letter was encyclical through all Christian Europe. See Labbe, *Concilia*, vol. ii. p. 119-123.

him to regard with favour, and protect to the utmost of his power, the patriarch of Antioch and his church.\* But when some probability

M 2

appeared

\* This complaisance of the Pope brings to recollection the politeness of Hildebrand. In 1076, the king of Morocco granted liberty to some Christians, and permitted them to live freely in his territories. Hildebrand wrote him a handsome letter of thanks. He says he is sure the king had been moved by the spirit of God; and that both he and the king worshipped, believed, and trusted in the same God, though the modes of their adoration and faith were different. See this curious epistle in Labbe, vol. xi. ep. Greg. lib. iii. ep. 21. Equally liberal with Hildebrand was the emperor Manuel Comnenus. He wished to conciliate the followers of the Arabian prophet: and for that reason he was anxious to expunge from the Greek catechisms the anathema against the God of the Muselmans, whom the Christians chose to think was a different Being from the object of their own adoration. The sticklers for orthodoxy were alarmed; and the din of polemics resounded through the empire. A moderate party, however, reconciled the combatants; and it was agreed that the imprecation of the catechism should be transferred from the God of Muhammed to Muhammed himself, his doctrine, and his sect. Mosheim's Ecclesiastical History, cent. 12. part 2. chap. 3. sec. 17. "We must take care," says Zebedeus the Roman catholic zealot, "that we fall not unawares into the heresy of Manuel Comnenus, emperor of Greece, who affirmed that Mahomet's God was the true God: which opinion was not only rejected and condemned by the synod, but imputed to the emperor as extreme madness; being reproached to him also by the bishop of Thessalonica, in those bitter and strange words as are not to be named." Bacon's Advertisement touching an Holy War.

CHAP. IV.

CHAP. IV. appeared that the successor of Urban could, like his great predecessor, arm Europe against Asia, Innocent wrote to Saphadin as the sultan of Cairo and Damascus that the holy land was in possession of the Muselmans, not on account of their virtue, but because of the sins of the Christians. The anger of Heaven was however tempered with mercy ; and the time was at hand when that mercy would be shewn in an especial manner. His holiness then in peaceful language solicited Saphadin to resign the holy land to the Christians, and not retain, out of false glory, a country which was the source of more inconvenience than profit to the Moslems.

Character  
of De Cour-  
con, preach-  
er of the  
sixth cru-  
sade.

The Crusade was preached in every cathedral, and in every church of Western Christendom. The Pope was earnest, and his legates were active. Among those who most loudly and successfully pleaded the cause of religion, was Robert de Courcon ; a man inferior in talents and consideration to St. Bernard, but whose fanaticism was as fervent as that of Peter and Fulk. By parentage and birth he was an Englishman ; but he had been educated in the university of Paris, and in that famous seat of learning had lived as a friend with a fellow student, who afterwards sat in the papal chair, under the title of Pope Innocent the Third.

The

The associate of his Holiness was promoted to various dignities in the church; his talents for business were employed by Innocent in clerical embassies, and his abilities as a public orator were matured under the care of Fulk de Nully. He was the Papal legate in France, and after having appeased the foreign and internal distractions of that kingdom, he quitted Paris (in the year twelve hundred and fifteen), descended by the way of Burgundy to the southern provinces, left no quarter of the south unvisited; and then, after having traversed with speed and success the western provinces, the saint-errant returned to the capital. He signalised his zeal for the Christians of the east in the church of every town through which he passed. Twenty years before he had preached the same theme to the same people, as the humble assistant of Fulk. Clad in the Roman purple, and armed with the authority of the vicar of Jesus Christ, the cardinal gave every possible dignity to the office of missionary. But his prudence kept not pace with his zeal, for, like Peter the Hermit, he admitted every one to take the cross. Women, children, the old, the blind, the lame, the lepers, all were enrolled in the sacred militia. The high minded cavaliers felt therefore a great repugnance at becoming his disciples, because



CHAP. IV. such a confusion would naturally injure the success of an expedition, which required skilful co-operation. The multitude of the Crusaders was innumerable, and the voluntary offerings of money which were put into the charitable boxes in the churches, were immense. Philip Augustus contributed the fortieth part of his revenues; and it is singular, that this money was to be employed for purposes of the holy war, agreeably to the directions of the kings and barons of France and England. But the alms of the people of France were not applied exclusively to sacred purposes. Robert de Courcon was openly convicted of peculation, and his papal friend was obliged to remit his own dignity, and intercede with the French prelates, in order to save the legate from punishment.\*

Fourth  
council of  
Lateran.

The Pope, treading in the steps of his predecessors, convoked a general council for the purpose of chastising vice, condemning heresy, and of inducing the princes and people to undertake the sacred expedition. In the month of November,

\* Notice des Manuscrits, tom. vi. p. 603, 613. The talents and general moral conduct of De Courcon, in time, overcame this blot in his conduct. In 1218, he requested from Honorius the office of legate of the Crusade. Pelagius, bishop of Albano, had been already appointed; the Pope, however, added Robert to the commission.

November, 1215; the religious and political authorities assembled in the church of the Lateran, and the greatness of their number, and their exalted rank, testify the zealous preaching of the Pope's legates. There were present the patriarchs of Constantinople and Jerusalem, the ambassador of the patriarch of Antioch, seventy-four metropolitan primates, and three hundred and forty bishops. The abbots and friars numbered eight hundred, but the representatives of the higher clergy could not be calculated. The emperor of Constantinople, the kings of France, England, Hungary, Jerusalem, Arragon, and the sovereigns of many other countries, were represented in the assembly. After some opinions differing from those of the established church had been pronounced odious and damnatory, war against the Saracens was declared to be the most sacred duty of the European world. The usual privileges, such as were mentioned in the Pope's letter, were accorded to the pilgrims. In order, say the decrees of the council, that his Holiness should not be considered a mere preacher of the duties of mankind, he gave to the purposes of the war thirty thousand pounds, besides the maritime expenses of the Roman pilgrims. The patriarch of Jerusalem, the Hospitallers, and Templars, were to be the dis-  
tributers

**CHAP. IV.** tributers of the papal bounty ; and through the same agency, and for the same purposes, all the clergy (except those who were Croises) were for three years to contribute the twentieth part of their ecclesiastical revenues. Referring to the decrees of old councils, tournaments during the three years of the Crusade were forbidden, lest the representation of war should draw men's attention from war itself. Civil dissensions were to be suspended, and peace was to reign in the Christian world during all the time of the holy contest.\* In the sermons which he preached to the council, Innocent declared his intention of visiting the holy land. The pulpits of Europe announced the grateful intelligence.

\* Concilia, vol. ii. 224, 233. The crusade (the sixth) consequent on the council of the Lateran (A.D. 1215) is divided into three parts. The expedition of Andrew, king of Hungary,—the war in Egypt,—and the campaign in the holy land of the emperor Frederick II. For the first two divisions, my authorities are Abulfeda, Bernardus, Sanutus, Matthew Paris, and the two Continuations of the archbishop of Tyre. The Chronicle of Alberic, a contemporary (edited by Leibnitz) contains some curious particulars respecting the Germans. Another contemporary was Godfrey, monk of St. Pantaleon, whose Annals are contained in the German historians, collected by Freher Marquard. But the richest materials are the third book of the Oriental History of James de Vitri, who was an eye-witness of the siege of Damietta.

gence, and the people agreed with their pastors, CHAP. IV.  
 that success would be certain, if they were led  
 by the sovereign Pontiff.

The holy war was again the subject of poetry as well as of preaching, and the castles of the nobility resounded with the songs of the Troubadours.\* “Great men are fired by the noble ambition of meriting the glory of this world, as well as the glory of heaven. You who dedicate yourselves to a pious pilgrimage will obtain both. Great God! The Turks have conquered and profaned the holy sepulchre. Let us feel to the bottom of our hearts this mortal disgrace. Let us impress upon our bodies the sign of the cross, and pass the seas: we have a firm and courageous guide, the sovereign Pontiff Innocent.† If there be any thing like loyalty, any thing like bravery in our hearts, we should wish to restore Christ to his inheritance: but we prefer, we love what is evil, and despise what is good. And why? There

*Extent of  
the ardour  
for a new  
war.*

\* The Troubadours, though spread over most countries, were chiefly patronised by the counts of Provence, with whom the king of France was at war. The grateful minstrels wished to divert the course of hostility from the south of France to the holy land.

† Whether sincerity or artifice prompted the Pope, time would not admit of the disclosure. He died before the sailing of any part of the expedition.

CHAP. IV. There is no safety in our own country, and death in the holy land is the gate of life. Should we hesitate to suffer for him, who did not disdain to suffer for us? Why do not the emperors and the kings terminate their discords and their wars? Oh, that they would make peace, that they would unite for the deliverance of the holy sepulchre, the divine lamp, the true cross, the kingdom of Christ, which have been for so many ages under the dominion of the Turks! At these words, who does not groan with shame and grief? Valiant marquis of Montferrat, your ancestors formerly covered themselves with glory in Syria. Spread then the sacred banners, pass the seas, and by your deeds of arms merit the admiration of men, and the approbation of heaven.”\*

The necessity of extirpating heresy, and quelling rebellion in the south of France, was the pretence of the French king for not embracing the Crusade. The emperor, Frederic II. feigned to be the faithful son of the church, but his zeal cooled when Otho IV. his rival, died, and instead of travelling to Palestine, he remained in Europe, in order to establish his authority in Apulia and Sicily, and to advance the favourite project.

\* Raymouard, *Choix des Poésies Originales des Troubadours*, vol. ii. p. 73, &c.. Paris, 1817.

project of himself and family, of making Italy the seat of the empire of the west.\* A people who had been the scourge of the first Crusaders, took the lead on this new occasion. In the time of Peter the Hermit, the Hungarians were such young religionists, that they had not embraced half the superstitious usages which had been grafted on Christianity. But in the century that succeeded, they often breathed the hot air of fanaticism; and when the sixth holy war was preached, they aspired to the glory of recovering the sacred sepulchre. Their king, Andrew, incited by the example of his mother, Margaret, the wish of his father, and certain political considerations, made a vow to march to Jerusalem. The dukes of Austria and Bavaria, and indeed all the ecclesiastical and secular potentates of Lower Germany joined their forces to those of the monarch. The united army marched to Spalatro. The ships of Venice, and other ports of the Adriatic, transported them to Cyprus; and

CHAP. IV.

Hungary  
and Lower  
Germany  
are the  
chief cru-  
saders.

A. D. 1216,  
&c.

\* The Pope and emperor were struggling for supremacy, and the cunning pontiff thought he could get rid of his rival by commanding him to take the cross: and such was the state of the times, that Frederick would not have been considered a Christian if he had refused. Voltaire is right in saying, "L'empereur fit le vœu par politique; et par politique il différa le voyage." *Essai sur les Mœurs des Nations*, chap. 52.

CHAP. IV. and after having enjoyed for a while the pleasures of an island consecrated to Venus, and the more sober and religious welcomes of the ambassadors from the king of Jerusalem and the military orders, the holy warriors sailed for and arrived at Acre, in company with fresh crowds of Crusaders from Marseilles, Genoa, and Brundisium: The Muselman powers were astonished at, and unprovided for this sudden and large reinforcement of the Latins. The sons of Saphadin were the lords of Syria, while Saphadin himself, retired from the constant toils of royalty, was contented with the respect of the army and people in times of difficulty and danger. The Saracens pressed to the country about Naplausa, but not in sufficient numbers to meet the new Croises, who ravaged the country, and slew thousands of their foes.\* But they did not confine their cruelties to the infidels. The soil of Palestine, in the year in which the present Crusaders landed, had been less productive than in most seasons; the soldiers had carried thither no provisions, and when not engaged in distant excursions into the enemy's territories, they took the shorter course of robbing the private and religious houses of the Latins and Syrians. The Bavarians were marked as the principal

Criminal  
excesses of  
the Croises.

\* Abulfeda, iv. 261.

principal actors in these disgraceful scenes. CHAP. IV.  
 Pious exercises, however, re-established order.

The ecclesiastical chief of the Latin Christians led the army in religious procession across the river of Kishon, to the valley of Jezrael. They bathed in the Jordan, made their pilgrimage to the lake of Genasareth, observed with devout awe the scenes of various miracles performed by Christ, and returned to Acre.\* But they soon repaired their wasted strength, and trod with holy reverence the road to the scene of the transfiguration. The ascent to Mount Thabor, however, was difficult: and the summit was defended by a strongly garrisoned tower. Conducted by a Saracenian youth, and stimulated by their own enthusiasm, the armed pilgrims overcame every obstacle, and approached the walls of the fortress. Impetuous valour clamoured for an immediate and furious assault: but the experienced chiefs saw the remoteness of success, and contended that the troops should retire to Acre for the defence of their camp and stores, which would certainly be attacked by those swarms of Muselmans that every day were pouring into Palestine. This counsel was adopted.† In both these expeditions the Christians

Their useless pilgrimages.

Dec.

\* James de Vit. 1229, 30. Bernardus, 821.

† James de Vit. 1130. Herold, 91. Sanutus, 207. Bernardus, 822. Cont. William, 631. Abulfeda, iv. 263. The monkish



CHAP. IV. tians made many prisoners, and such of them as were children were baptised by the bishop of Acre, and delivered into the charge of those Latin women who had devoted themselves to a religious life. Attached as much to pilgrimages as to war, the Crusaders went in holy order to Tyre and Sidon ; but the inclemency of the season drove them into disorder, and the Saracens made dreadful havoc on their divided parties.\* The Christians separated for the remainder of the winter. The kings of Cyprus and Hungary repaired to Tripoli ; and if the people were grieved at the death of the former of these princes, their feelings were quickly changed into indignation against the latter. Neither the entreaties nor the threats of the clergy could persuade the unstable Andrew to remain in Palestine. Mere restlessness overcame every suggestion of duty. Taking with him most of his

Defection  
of the king  
of Hungary.

monkish writers generally ascribe to treachery those actions which mere prudence dictates. They make a bold assertion of treason, and never bring the slightest proof that there was any intercourse between the Saracens and Christians. The king of Jerusalem is thus strikingly mentioned by James de Vitry :—" Rex quantum meruit ascendendo, tantum demeruit descendendo." But the king had displayed much personal courage, and he would not have declined the assault except for high and important reasons.

\* James de Vit. 1130.

his soldiers and stores, he traversed Armenia and the Greek empire, spent much time in collecting relics, and at last returned to his kingdom, which had been so deeply exhausted by this expensive expedition, that it did not for years recover its pristine strength. The weak and infirm pilgrims, and such as courted pleasure, went to Acre. The king of Jerusalem, the duke of Austria, and the master of the Hospitallers, took up a strong position on the plains of Cesarea. The Templars, the Teutonic knights, and Walter d'Avesnes, occupied Mount Carmel, and their station was defended by a tower which the Templars had formerly erected, for the defence and protection of the Jerusalem pilgrims.\* In the spring of the following year they were joined by new and zealous Crusaders from the north of Germany. Cologne had been the rendezvous, and nearly three hundred vessels sailed from the Rhine. Many of the ships were wrecked by the violence of the autumnal winds, and the remainder anchored off the Portuguese shore. By the aid of the Germans, the queen of Portugal took Alcaçar from the Moors. Conscience and valour would be equally satisfied by the slaughter of Saracens, in whatever country they might be; and William I. count

Fresh Crusaders.  
1219.

the

of

\* James de Vit. 1180, 1.

CHAP. IV. of Holland, entreated permission of the Pope to remain a year in Portugal. But Honorius assentedly pursued the plans of which Innocent had laid the foundation. Most of the soldiers, too, wished to pass to the holy land; and as crosses were seen in the air pointing to the south, they sailed at the earliest appearance of spring.

Change of  
crusading  
operations.

In the few flourishing days of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem, when projects of conquest, and not of mere defence, engaged the passions of warriors, the various cities of Syria, on account of the relative situation of countries, were generally more ambitiously regarded than those of Egypt. But subsequently to the fifth, and before the formation of the sixth Crusade, so small a portion of the holy land belonged to the Christians, that politics almost wore the same face as they did at the time of Peter's preaching. Various schemes were formed for the destruction of the Muselman power; and the court of the Vatican revived the politics of Almo-ric king of Jerusalem. Ambition and cupidity sighed for the possession of the potent and rich country of Egypt. Palestine would be abandoned; were the heart of the Muselman power assailed; and flying from the remembrance of the ensanguined plains of Syria, deeds of re-

\* James de Vit. 1132. Godef. Mon. ii. p. 385.

noun might be achieved in a land which was associated with few appalling ideas of Christian discomfiture. As soon, therefore, as the Cologne reinforcement arrived, the chiefs assembled in council, and it was agreed that siege should be laid to Damietta, which was looked upon as the key of Egypt.\* It was situated on the eastern bank of the Nile, about a mile from the sea;† it was of an oblong shape, and defended on every side, except on those parts which were near the Nile, by a triple wall. A double wall, and a tower in the midst of the river, connected with the city by a chain, formed the defence from naval attacks.

A voyage of a few days brought the Christian army within sight of Damietta. The soldiers landed, and encamped on the western side of the Nile. The duke of Austria, the knights of St. John, and the troops of Germany and of the Teutonic order, endeavoured to take the tower, for the purpose of facilitating an attack on the city's walls next the Nile. But their

Siege of  
Damietta.  
A. D.  
May 1218,  
Nov. 1219.

VOL. II.

N

ladders

\* Cont. William, p. 682. Godef. Mon. ii. p. 388.

† The modern Damietta is some distance to the south of the city which the Christians besieged, and which was destroyed by the Muselmans, A. D. 1250. Abulfeda, iv. 519. The Egyptians dreaded the reappearance of the Franks, and choked the entrance of the harbour, to prevent the anchorage of large vessels.

CHAP. IV. ladders broke, many of the soldiers were precipitated into the water, and the noise of the Egyptian brazen drums and trumpets announced to the camp the fate of the escaladers. Ingenuity assisted valour, and a priest of Cologne, aided by the Teutonic knights, built an immense wooden castle, on the basis of two vessels lashed to each other. The chiefs of the army declared, that all, which skill or expense could furnish, had been used, and that the world had never witnessed so noble a work. By processions round the cross, by fasting and prayer, heaven was propitiated; in the spirit of fanaticism, or of excellent policy, a saint's day, that of St. Bartholomew, was fixed for the new assault; and in order to banish envy and discontent, and to excite emulation, the gallant band destined for the attack was selected from every nation in the army. At the appointed time the duke of Austria, and three hundred soldiers, took their stations in the galleys, and on the draw-bridge at the top of the tower, and the vessels moved from their anchoring ground towards the castle, amidst the acclamations of their comrades in the camp, and the benedictory vociferations of the priests. The cavaliers made their assault with all the courageous fury which their peculiar circumstances could inspire. The battle lasted for twenty-four hours, and

and the city of Damietta and the Christian camp resounded at different times with the shouts of victory and the lamentations of defeat. In spite of every precaution, the Muselmans set fire to the ladders of the Franks, and the ensign of the duke of Austria fell beneath the triumphant banner of the Saracens. The acclamations of the people of Damietta enraged the duke and his troops, and the clamorous appeals to heaven of the patriarch and his clergy, kept their courage unallayed. The catapults and balistæ shook the walls of the castle to their foundations, and the garrison were happy in surrendering to the discretion of the besiegers.\*

Before the joy of the Christians had subsided, news arrived of the death of Saphadin. The power of his house had lately been strengthened by the death of the sultan of Mosul, the last great supporter of the name of the Atabeks. But Saphadin did not live to complete the addition of all Mosul to his empire of Damascus and Egypt. The brother of Saladin has been variously represented, according to the different feelings with which he was regarded. But the

\* Bernardus, 825, 828. Godef. 388, and James de Vit. 1133, 4, who says, that the tears of the people put out the flame which the Greek fire had made: *extinxerunt ignem flamme vellicæ græcæ had made: extinxerunt ignem lachrymæ.*

CHAP. IV. Crusaders had such a limited knowledge of oriental affairs, that their invectives cannot be opposed to the reputation which he acquired for virtue and ability. By his own historians he is styled a child of fortune, not that they meant to exclude mental talents from his character. His success was apparent, but the means through which it was obtained were unknown, and the ignorant world attributed to chance, events that in truth were the result of either refined and artful policy, or secret treachery and murder. He was an usurper; yet, as was the case, when all the competitors for the throne were sanguinary and remorseless; the higher the abilities, the more signal the success. The brother of Saladin was splendid in his apparel; he preserved all the magnificence and dignity of an oriental court; and left a full and ample treasury.\* His second son Coradinus, the prince of Syria and Palestine, did not proclaim the death of his father till he had secured himself in the possession of the royal coffers. Discord and rebellion were universal throughout Egypt, when the news arrived of the death of Saphadin; and his son Camel, lord of that country, was compelled to fly into Arabia for protection from his mutinous people.†

After

\* De Guignes, livre 13. Abulfeda, iv. 265—271.

† Abulfeda, 271.

After the surrender of the castle of Damietta CHAP. IV. the acquisition of the city appeared so easy an achievement, that the besieging army sunk into inertness and dissoluteness. The Germans fancied that the success to which they had so much contributed was equivalent to the performance of their vow, and many of them returned to Europe. But the siege of Damietta was not delayed for want of men. Italy sent forth her choicest soldiers, headed by Pelagius and Robert de Courcon, as legates of the pope. The counts of Nevers and la Marche, the archbishop of Bourdeaux, the bishops of Meux, Autun, and Paris headed the valiant youth of France. The English troops were led by the earls of Chester and Arundel, William Longespee, earl of Salisbury, and the baron Harcourt, men celebrated for their heroism and nobility.\* For some

Arrival of  
Croisces  
from Eng-  
land.

N 3

months

\* Annals of Waverly in Gale, vol. 2. p. 185. M. Paris, 285. The earl of Salisbury mentioned in the text was the son of king Henry the Second by fair Rosamond. His Christian name was William, and his wearing a longer sword than was usual gave him his surname.\* His half brother, king Richard the First, gave him in marriage Ela, eldest daughter and coheirress of William de Eureux, earl of Salisbury and Rosemer; and also raised him to the title of earl.

Ela

\* Thus his epitaph, as reported by Matthew Paris, p. 277, says,  
Flos Comitum Willielmus oblit, stirps regia, longus  
Esis vaginam coepit habere brevem.



CHAP. IV. months after the arrival of this reinforcement distress and discord raged amidst the Europeans. The Nile in its overflow injured their camp, and pestilence and famine thinned their ranks. The cardinal Pelagius distracted their attention from foreign enterprise by the claims which he set up to the distinction of commander in chief. Robert de Courcon fell a victim to disease, and the death of this haughty and ambitious prelate materially detracted from the power and influence of his equally imperious coadjutor. In this time of inaction among the Crusaders, Conradinus came into Egypt for the purpose of quelling a rebellion raised by a soldier of fortune, and reinstated his brother Camel. But before those objects could be achieved, the Christians had time to recover from their misery and folly, and prepare for the renewal of the attack upon Damietta. They attempted the passage of the river, but many of their vessels were destroyed by the Greek fire from the walls. The shore presented a triple line of soldiers, and the bravest of the Christian troops dreaded the

1219.

Ela was grand-daughter of the Patric earl of Salisbury, murdered by Guy de Lusignan. See before, vol. 1. p. 427. note. Longespee was a firm friend of king John, and afterwards of Louis the French monarch: but when John died he forsook Louis, and did homage to Henry the Third. Dugdale's Baronage, vol. 1. p. 176.

the attack. But on the night previous to the morning which was fixed for the decision of the cause, a rebellion broke out among the Muselman soldiers, their posts were deserted, and when daylight appeared the Christians were struck with the general confusion which prevailed among the enemy. The chieftains immediately armed their people, the passage of the Nile was soon effected, and they occupied the enemy's camp, singing the hymn, "we praise thee, O God," in full assurance that Heaven had rewarded their virtues and their prayers. The Templars pressed forwards to the city's walls, but the Muselmans in the mean time had rallied round Camel, rebellion was extinguished in a moment, and no further advantage was gained by the Crusaders. The Saracens made frequent sallies. They attacked a bridge which the Christians had thrown across the Nile; but the duke of Austria, with the Templars and Teutonic knights, repulsed them. The clergy acted as surgeons as well as priests, and though the day was Palm Sunday, the only procession, says an eye-witness, which the Crusaders made, was one of lances, and swords, and shields. After this victory the duke of Austria, and many knights, returned to Europe; but their loss was repaired by the bishop of Mantua and new pilgrims from Italy, and plentiful supplies of arms

CHAP. IV. and provisions. From May to August there was a long series of noble endeavours on both sides. The Pisans, Genoese, and Venetians made several attacks on the walls from the ships; but it was not ordained that those nations should be the safety of Israel.\* The Saracens fought many a well contested battle with the Christians in their camp. All the Crusaders contended with the bravery of men whose souls were strung by religion and valour, and if any soldiers distinguished themselves above the rest, to the Templars may be given the praise of pre-eminent heroism. The issue of most of those conflicts was adverse to the Moslems. Despair seized the people of Damietta. Hunger and disease were within their walls, and in addition to their misfortunes the Nile did not reach its usual height.

The sultan of Syria had heard with dismay of this perilous state of circumstances. The loss of Damietta appeared inevitable, and he dreaded the speedy appearance of the Christians in Jerusalem. But he resolved that they should never make that place a station of defence. He destroyed the walls, and much of the town; but the tower of David, and the temple of the sepulchre, were saved, on account of veneration to the prophets.

\* Bernardus, p. 394.

prophets, a religious exception which made some liberal Christians of the time declare, that the name of heretics was more applicable to the Saracens than that of infidels. The sultan of Syria had anticipated the fall of Damietta, the sultan of Egypt despaired of its defence, and no wisdom could calculate the magnitude of the effects which its capture might produce. Prudence suggested the policy of negotiation, and the Latins were therefore offered the piece of the true cross, the city of Jerusalem, and all the prisoners in Syria and Egypt. The Muselmans were to rebuild the walls of the sacred city. Of the whole kingdom of Palestine they only proposed to retain the castles of Karac and Montreal, as necessary for the safe passage of the Meccan pilgrims and merchants. The evacuation of Egypt was the equivalent expected from the Christians for these important concessions. All the legitimate consequences of the Crusades were at the command of the soldiers of the cross. The king, the French, the earl of Chester, and the Teutonic knights hailed with joy the prospect of the termination of the war. But the legate, the bishops, the Italians, the Templars, and Hospitallers were deaf to counsels of moderation. They contended that no faith could be reposed upon the promises of infidels, unless peace was made at the point of a victorious

CHAP. IV. and provisions. From May to August there was a long series of noble endeavours on both sides. The Pisans, Genoese, and Venetians made several attacks on the walls from the ships; but it was not ordained that those nations should be the safety of Israel.\* The Saracens fought many a well contested battle with the Christians in their camp. All the Crusaders contended with the bravery of men whose souls were strung by religion and valour, and if any soldiers distinguished themselves above the rest, to the Templars may be given the praise of pre-eminent heroism. The issue of most of those conflicts was adverse to the Moslems. Despair seized the people of Damietta. Hunger and disease were within their walls, and in addition to their misfortunes the Nile did not reach its usual height.

The sultan of Syria had heard with dismay of this perilous state of circumstances. The loss of Damietta appeared inevitable, and he dreaded the speedy appearance of the Christians in Jerusalem. But he resolved that they should never make that place a station of defence. He destroyed the walls, and much of the town; but the tower of David, and the temple of the sepulchre, were saved, on account of veneration to the prophets.

\* Bernardus, p. 334.

prophets, a religious exception which made some liberal Christians of the time declare, that the name of heretics was more applicable to the Saracens than that of infidels. The sultan of Syria had anticipated the fall of Damietta, the sultan of Egypt despaired of its defence, and no wisdom could calculate the magnitude of the effects which its capture might produce. Prudence suggested the policy of negotiation, and the Latins were therefore offered the piece of the true cross, the city of Jerusalem, and all the prisoners in Syria and Egypt. The Muselmans were to rebuild the walls of the sacred city. Of the whole kingdom of Palestine they only proposed to retain the castles of Karac and Montreal, as necessary for the safe passage of the Meccan pilgrims and merchants. The evacuation of Egypt was the equivalent expected from the Christians for these important concessions. All the legitimate consequences of the Crusades were at the command of the soldiers of the cross. The king, the French, the earl of Chester, and the Teutonic knights hailed with joy the prospect of the termination of the war. But the legate, the bishops, the Italians, the Templars, and Hospitallers were deaf to counsels of moderation. They contended that no faith could be reposed upon the promises of infidels, unless peace was made at the point of a victorious

CHAP. IV. torious sword. The siege had already lasted seventeen months, and it would be disgraceful to fly from the fair prospect of success. Unhappily for the general interests of the Christian cause, the mild suggestions of policy were disregarded amidst the clamours of thoughtless valour. Hostilities were recommenced. The besiegers interrupted all communication between the Egyptian army and the garrison of Damietta. Resistance was fruitless, but the Muselmans were too brave and too proud to surrender. The legate and the king assaulted the walls, and soon entered the city, with the same ruthless feelings as had maddened the early Crusaders, when they first leaped on the battlements of Jerusalem. But revenge sought its victims in vain. Damietta was one vast charnel house. Of a population, which at the beginning of the siege consisted of more than seventy thousand souls, three thousand only were the relics. The conquerors marched through a pestilential vapour. The streets, the mosques, and the houses were strewed with dead bodies. The rich and the poor, the master and the servant, lay with no reference to distinction. The children at the breast had drawn the last remnants of life from their mothers, and were crying for sustenance. The clergy consigned them to the Christian women, but in most cases the

the cries of the infants had been the last struggles of nature, and they suffered the fate of their parents. From scenes of death the Christians turned to plunder. Damietta was as rich a city as any in Islamism, and the terrible anathemas of the legate could not prevent self-appropriation of spoil. Dominion over the place was given to the king of Jerusalem. The splendid mosque was converted into a Christian church, and dedicated to the Virgin and all the Apostles. But the soldiers were soon compelled to return to the camp, for pestilence was in the city. Life and liberty were granted to the surviving Muselmans on their performing the horrid and melancholy task of cleansing the city from the remains of their relations and friends.\*

So great was the terror which the loss of Damietta spread among the Muselmans, that the fortress of Tannis surrendered. By this acquisition, the way into Palestine was open. But instead of urging their advantages, the army passed the winter in luxury and in discord, and in the spring more than half of the soldiers returned

Events subsequent to the capture of Damietta.

\* Alberic Chron. 503, 505. Godef. Mon. 388-400. Abulfeda, iv. 271, &c. Bernardus, vii. 828-838. Cont. Willelm., 684-688. James de Vitry, lib. 3. Herold, *op. cit.* lib. 3.



CHAP. IV. returned to Europe. The power of the legate was supreme, and the king of Jerusalem retired in disgust to Acre. The duke of Bavaria, and many knights from Germany and Italy, arrived, as soon as the weather would permit the passage; but they disdained to submit to the command of a bishop, and Pelagius was compelled to solicit with humility the return of the king. John de Brienne repaired to Damietta, and a council was held on the subject of hostile operations. The legate argued that Egypt was the most powerful of all the Muselman states; that if that country should be conquered, Syria and Palestine would yield without effort. His compeer admitted that their successes at Damietta had laid the foundation for the conquest of Cairo. But he contended, that if all Egypt could be taken, the Christians were unable to retain it. The great object of the Crusaders was the recovery of the holy land. That object ought to be purchased at as little an expense of blood as possible. After every victory the soldiers were eager to return to Europe, and the garrisoning of Egypt would require so many troops, that none would be left to march into Syria. But the king's policy did not accord with the ambition of the prelate; Pelagius charged with cowardice those who refused to march to Cairo, and the threats of excommunication

cation served instead of arguments to change or CHAP. IV.  
to overrule the opinions of the friends of the  
king. The conquest of Egypt was resolved  
upon, and the army marched by the eastern  
side of the Fatimite branch of the Nile, till  
their progress was arrested by the canal of  
Ashmoun. On the southern side of that canal  
the Muselman forces were posted. Every sul-  
tan of Syria had sent assistance to their brother  
in the faith, and the allied troops under Camel  
could cope with the Latins in the field. The  
sultan, however, would not trust his kingdom  
to the caprice of fortune. He offered peace to  
the Christians on nearly the same terms as those  
which had been proposed previously to the last  
assault on Damietta. The legate refused with  
indignation these noble offers: but instead of  
crossing the canal, and giving the enemy battle,  
he remained for more than a month inactive on  
his post, expecting the unconditional surrender  
of the sultan. During this time the Nile had  
rapidly increased in height. The Muselmans  
opened the sluices, inundated their enemy's  
camp, and Pelagius saw his army gradually  
wasting, and all communication with Damietta  
cut off. The Christians could neither advance  
nor retreat; and, to use the humble simile of a  
Templar, they were inclosed like a fish in a net.  
When the overflowings of the Nile had swept  
away

The legate  
and the  
Croisacs  
take the  
road for  
Cairo.

His refusal  
of favour-  
able terms  
of peace.

Conse-  
quences of  
his vio-  
lence.

CHAP. IV. ladders broke, many of the soldiers were precipitated into the water, and the noise of the Egyptian brazen drums and trumpets announced to the camp the fate of the escaladers. Ingenuity assisted valour, and a priest of Cologne, aided by the Teutonic knights, built an immense wooden castle, on the basis of two vessels lashed to each other. The chiefs of the army declared, that all, which skill or expense could furnish, had been used, and that the world had never witnessed so noble a work. By processions round the cross, by fasting and prayer, heaven was propitiated; in the spirit of fanaticism, or of excellent policy, a saint's day, that of St. Bartholomew, was fixed for the new assault; and in order to banish envy and discontent, and to excite emulation, the gallant band destined for the attack was selected from every nation in the army. At the appointed time the duke of Austria, and three hundred soldiers, took their stations in the galleys, and on the draw-bridge at the top of the tower, and the vessels moved from their anchoring ground towards the castle, amidst the acclamations of their comrades in the camp, and the benedictory vociferations of the priests. The cavaliers made their assault with all the courageous fury which their peculiar circumstances could inspire. The battle lasted for twenty-four hours, and

and the city of Damietta and the Christian CHAP. IV.  
 camp resounded at different times with the  
 shouts of victory and the lamentations of defeat.  
 In spite of every precaution, the Muselmans  
 set fire to the ladders of the Franks, and the  
 ensign of the duke of Austria fell beneath the  
 triumphant banner of the Saracens. The ac-  
 clamations of the people of Damietta enraged  
 the duke and his troops, and the clamorous  
 appeals to heaven of the patriarch and his  
 clergy, kept their courage unallayed. The  
 catapults and balistæ shook the walls of the  
 castle to their foundations, and the garrison  
 were happy in surrendering to the discretion of  
 the besiegers.\*

Before the joy of the Christians had subsided,  
 news arrived of the death of Saphadin. The  
 power of his house had lately been strengthened  
 by the death of the sultan of Mosul, the last  
 great supporter of the name of the Atabeks.  
 But Saphadin did not live to complete the ad-  
 dition of all Mosul to his empire of Damascus  
 and Egypt. The brother of Saladin has been  
 variously represented, according to the different  
 feelings with which he was regarded. But the

\* Bernardus, 825, 828. Godef. 388, and James de Vit.  
 1133, 4, who says, that the tears of the people put out the  
 flame which the Greek fire had made: *extinxerunt ignem  
 lachrymæ*.

CHAP. IV. Crusaders had such a limited knowledge of oriental affairs, that their invectives cannot be opposed to the reputation which he acquired for virtue and ability. By his own historians he is styled a child of fortune, not that they meant to exclude mental talents from his character. His success was apparent, but the means through which it was obtained were unknown, and the ignorant world attributed to chance, events that in truth were the result of either refined and artful policy, or secret treachery and murder. He was an usurper; yet, as was the case, when all the competitors for the throne were sanguinary and remorseless; the higher the abilities, the more signal the success. The brother of Saladin was splendid in his apparel; he preserved all the magnificence and dignity of an oriental court; and left a full and ample treasury.\* His second son Coradinus, the prince of Syria and Palestine, did not proclaim the death of his father till he had secured himself in the possession of the royal coffers. Discord and rebellion were universal throughout Egypt, when the news arrived of the death of Saphadin; and his son Camel, lord of that country, was compelled to fly into Arabia for protection from his mutinous people.†

After

\* De Guignes, livre 13. Abulfeda, iv. 265—271.

† Abulfeda, 271.

After the surrender of the castle of Damietta CHAP. IV.  
 the acquisition of the city appeared so easy an achievement, that the besieging army sunk into inertness and dissoluteness. The Germans fancied that the success to which they had so much contributed was equivalent to the performance of their vow, and many of them returned to Europe. But the siege of Damietta was not delayed for want of men. Italy sent forth her choicest soldiers, headed by Pelagius and Robert de Courcon, as legates of the pope. The counts of Nevers and la Marche, the archbishop of Bourdeaux, the bishops of Meux, Autun, and Paris headed the valiant youth of France. The English troops were led by the earls of Chester and Arundel, William Longespee, earl of Salisbury, and the baron Harcourt, men celebrated for their heroism and nobility.\* For some

Arrival of  
Croises  
from Eng-  
land.

N 3

months

\* Annals of Waverly in Gale, vol. 2. p. 185. M. Paris, 255. The earl of Salisbury mentioned in the text was the son of king Henry the Second by fair Rosamond. His Christian name was William, and his wearing a longer sword than was usual gave him his surname.\* His half brother, king Richard the First, gave him in marriage Ela, eldest daughter and coheirress of William de Eureux, earl of Salisbury and Rosemer; and also raised him to the title of earl.

Ela

\* Thus his epitaph, as reported by Matthew Paris, p. 277, says,  
 Flos Comitum Willielmus oblit, stirps regia, longus  
 Ensis vaginam cepit habere brevem.

**CHAP. IV.** months after the arrival of this reinforcement distress and discord raged amidst the Europeans: The Nile in its overflow injured their camp, and pestilence and famine thinned their ranks. The cardinal Pelagius distracted their attention from foreign enterprise by the claims which he set up to the distinction of commander in chief. Robert de Courcon fell a victim to disease, and the death of this haughty and ambitious prelate materially detracted from the power and influence of his equally imperious coadjutor. In this time of inaction among the Crusaders, Conradinus came into Egypt for the purpose of quelling a rebellion raised by a soldier of fortune, and reinstated his brother Camel. But before those objects could be achieved, the Christians had time to recover from their misery and folly, and prepare for the renewal of the attack upon Damietta. They attempted the passage of the river, but many of their vessels were destroyed by the Greek fire from the walls. The shore presented a triple line of soldiers, and the bravest of the Christian troops dreaded the

1219.

Ela was grand-daughter of the Patric earl of Salisbury, murdered by Guy de Lusignan. See before, vol. 1. p. 427. note. Longespee was a firm friend of king John, and afterwards of Louis the French monarch: but when John died he forsook Louis, and did homage to Henry the Third. Dugdale's Baronage, vol. 1. p. 176.

the attack. But on the night previous to the morning which was fixed for the decision of the cause, a rebellion broke out among the Muselman soldiers, their posts were deserted, and when daylight appeared the Christians were struck with the general confusion which prevailed among the enemy. The chieftains immediately armed their people, the passage of the Nile was soon effected, and they occupied the enemy's camp, singing the hymn, "we praise thee, O God," in full assurance that Heaven had rewarded their virtues and their prayers. The Templars pressed forwards to the city's walls, but the Muselmans in the mean time had rallied round Camel, rebellion was extinguished in a moment, and no further advantage was gained by the Crusaders. The Saracens made frequent sallies. They attacked a bridge which the Christians had thrown across the Nile; but the duke of Austria, with the Templars and Teutonick knights, repulsed them. The clergy acted as surgeons as well as priests, and though the day was Palm Sunday, the only procession, says an eye-witness, which the Crusaders made, was one of lances, and swords, and shields. After this victory the duke of Austria, and many knights, returned to Europe; but their loss was repaired by the bishop of Mantua and new pilgrims from Italy, and plentiful supplies of arms



CHAP. IV. and provisions. From May to August there was a long series of noble endeavours on both sides. The Pisans, Genoese, and Venetians made several attacks on the walls from the ships; but it was not ordained that those nations should be the safety of Israel.\* The Saracens fought many a well contested battle with the Christians in their camp. All the Crusaders contended with the bravery of men whose souls were strung by religion and valour, and if any soldiers distinguished themselves above the rest, to the Templars may be given the praise of pre-eminent heroism. The issue of most of those conflicts was adverse to the Moslems. Despair seized the people of Damietta. Hunger and disease were within their walls, and in addition to their misfortunes the Nile did not reach its usual height.

The sultan of Syria had heard with dismay of this perilous state of circumstances. The loss of Damietta appeared inevitable, and he dreaded the speedy appearance of the Christians in Jerusalem. But he resolved that they should never make that place a station of defence. He destroyed the walls, and much of the town; but the tower of David, and the temple of the sepulchre, were saved, on account of veneration to the prophets.

\* Bernardus, p. 334.

prophets, a religious exception which made some liberal Christians of the time declare, that the name of heretics was more applicable to the Saracens than that of infidels. The sultan of Syria had anticipated the fall of Damietta, the sultan of Egypt despaired of its defence, and no wisdom could calculate the magnitude of the effects which its capture might produce. Prudence suggested the policy of negotiation, and the Latins were therefore offered the piece of the true cross, the city of Jerusalem, and all the prisoners in Syria and Egypt. The Muselmans were to rebuild the walls of the sacred city. Of the whole kingdom of Palestine they only proposed to retain the castles of Karac and Montreal, as necessary for the safe passage of the Meccan pilgrims and merchants. The evacuation of Egypt was the equivalent expected from the Christians for these important concessions. All the legitimate consequences of the Crusades were at the command of the soldiers of the cross. The king, the French, the earl of Chester, and the Teutonic knights hailed with joy the prospect of the termination of the war. But the legate, the bishops, the Italians, the Templars, and Hospitallers were deaf to counsels of moderation. They contended that no faith could be reposed upon the promises of infidels, unless peace was made at the point of a victorious

**CHAP. IV.** Palestine with only twenty gallies. The joy of the Christians at the arrival of the emperor was soon checked by letters which the patriarch received from the Pope, prohibiting the faithful from obeying a rebellious son of the church, The Teutonick knights feared no clerical censures; and at their head, and of some other soldiers, the emperor quitted Acre, went to Jaffa, and repaired the fortifications of that important city. He then made further advances towards Jerusalem. Though the Templars and Hospitallers refused to join the army whilst an excommunicated emperor commanded it; yet a lurking desire of military glory urged them to follow him at a distance. His necessities, and the inclinations of the knights, gave rise to a conference; and, as usual, principle gave way to will, and it was agreed that the obligation of the cavaliers to support the cause of Christianity might be reconciled with their duty to the Pope, if the orders of the council of war were issued in the name of God and Christendom. The necessity of being prepared for every event, rendered this humiliating circumstance necessary to the emperor. Ever since he had been in Palestine, there had been negotiations carrying on between him and Camel. But before they were concluded, the sultan of Damascus died, and Camel, finding himself rid of a powerful enemy,

enemy, became reserved in his communications CHAP. IV.  
with Frederic.

While matters were in this state, news was brought to the emperor of an effectual method which the Pope had taken of preventing him from continuing the war in Palestine with the enemies of Christ. The Pope's troops, of whom John de Brienne (the father-in-law of Frederic!) was one of the chief commanders, burnt the imperial towns in Italy, imprisoned, tortured, and robbed the people. The duke of Spalatro, the emperor's lieutenant, had been unable successfully to resist, though the imperial army had been but little impaired by Frederic's foreign expedition. These circumstances made the emperor anxious to return to Europe; and when fortune withdrew her smiles from Camel, a treaty was immediately signed. For ten years the Christians and Muselmans were to live upon terms of brotherhood. Jerusalem, Jaffa, Bethlehem, Nazareth, and their appendages, were restored to the Christians. The holy sepulchre likewise was given to them; and the people of both religions might offer up their prayers in the place of devotion, which the former class called the temple of Solomon, and the latter named the mosque of Omar. The address of Frederic more effectually promoted the object of the holy wars than the heroic phrenzy of

Advantage-  
ous results  
of the Cru-  
sade.

CHAP. IV. Richard : many of the disasters consequent on the battle of Tiberias were wiped away, and the serious and habitual hopes of Europe, for a permanent settlement in Asia, seemed to be realized. But the barons of the holy land, breathing interminable war, and secretly envying superior genius, avowed indignation that a Christian sovereign should accept the friendship of the infidels. The patriarch and clergy hated an excommunicated prince ; a man too who had given license to the Saracens to adore their God in a Christian temple. With some appearance of reason, however, they contended that the treaty was not binding on the Muselmans while the approbation of the sultan of Damascus was withheld. But, despising the blood-thirstiness of the barons, and the cruel bigotry of the priests, Frederic asserted his royal prerogatives ; and, as he had acquired some of the old possessions of the Bouillon family, he avowed his intention of being crowned in the holy city agreeably to constitutional forms. Some persons, discontented with the conditions of the treaty, wished to betray him into the hands of the sultan of Egypt. The guilt of this treachery lies between the Hospitallers and the Templars. Camel read the letter which conveyed to him the news, exclaimed to his associates, " See the fidelity of these Christian dogs ;" and dis-  
patched

patched a friend to Frederic with the paper which he had received.\* The emperor repaired to Jerusalem ; but no hosannahs welcomed his approach. By the command of the patriarch no religious ceremonies were performed in the churches during his stay. Even the German prelates preferred their spiritual to their temporal allegiance ; and the emperor, accompanied only by his courtiers and the Teutonic knights, went to the church of the sepulchre. He boldly took the crown from the altar, and placed it on his own head, and Herman de Saltza pronounced a laudatory oration. Orders were then given for the restoration of the city's walls,† and the emperor returned to Acre. In that city too there was every demonstration of sorrow at his appearance. Mass was performed in secret ; the churches were deprived of their ornaments ; the bells were not rung, and the dead were interred without any religious ceremony.

\* M. Paris, 102.

† This is affirmed by the imperial historians. The papal annalists state the reverse ; and that the offers of the Templars and Hospitalians to contribute to the expense were despised. The treaty, as reported by Abulfeda, contains a provision, that the walls should not be rebuilt. In a letter which, after his return to Europe, Frederic wrote to all his brother kings, in reply to the complaints of the Pope, he mentions the liberty of the Christians to rebuild the walls. M. Paris, 301.

CHAP. IV. money. But by some well-measured acts of severity, a semblance of respect was at length shewn to the emperor; and he then returned to Europe, leaving the priests and people to thank Heaven for his departure.\*

1229.

\* Few parts of the Crusades are more difficult to understand, and to reduce into a clear and intelligible form, than the expedition of Frederic. He was vilified by the Templars and Hospitallers, and other friends of the Pope; and their narratives of events are more numerous than those of the imperial party. He gained more for the Christians than any prince had acquired since the first establishment of the kingdom; and if the Pope had not hated him worse than his holiness hated the Saracens, and thereby caused his return to Europe, there is every probability that, after the death of the sultan of Damascus, the emperor would have brought matters to an issue completely triumphant. Gregory IX. and his clergy had the effrontery to tell the world that Frederic had left the sepulchre of Christ in the hands of the infidels. But the fact was, that it was given to the Christians. The temple of Solomon indeed, or rather the mosque of Omar, was left in the hands of the Muselmans; a right of visiting it, however, being allowed to the Christians. For Frederic's expedition I have followed the Chronicle of Richard de S. Germano, in the seventh volume of Muratori, *Rer. Scrip. Ital.* Corio, *Istoria di Milano*, p. 215, &c. the second, fifth, sixth, and seventh chapters of the sixteenth book of Giannone *Istoria di Napoli*, and Abulfeda, vol. iv. p. 335-353. My obligations to Matthew Paris and other authors have been noticed.

## CHAP. V.

## THE SEVENTH AND EIGHTH CRUSADES.

*Royal controversies in Palestine.....Council of Spo-  
 letto.....March of Hospitalians from London.....  
 French lords take the cross.....State of Palestine  
 .....Unsuccessful result of the French Crusade.....  
 Crusade of the earl of Cornwall.....The English  
 redeem the Sepulchre.....The Korasmians gain it  
 from the Latins, and devastate Palestine.....Coun-  
 cil of Lyons.....Louis IX. takes the cross.....  
 English Crusaders.....Jealousy and treachery of  
 the military orders.....The French sail to Cyprus  
 .....They arrive off Damietta.....They land and  
 capture Damietta.....Licentiousness of the French  
 .....Arrival of the English Crusaders.....The  
 army takes the road to Cairo.....Inability to cross  
 the Ashmoun Canal.....They are shewn a ford.....  
 Impetuosity of the count d'Artois.....His dispute  
 with the Templars and William Longsword.....  
 Dreadful events in Massoura.....Distresses of the  
 French.....The king is made prisoner.....Is ran-  
 somed.....The French go to Acre.....New hopes  
 by reason of the Moslem dissensions.....Those dis-  
 sensions quelled.....Failure of the Crusade.....  
 Louis returns to France.*

THE title of sovereign over Jerusalem was so venerable in the eyes of the religious part of the world, that princes were not deterred from as-  
 piring

Royal con-  
 troversies-  
 in Pales-  
 tine.



CHAP. V. piring to it by the circumstance, that the whole of Christian Palestine consisted only of a few towns. After the departure of Frederic, the princess Alice,\* at that time the widow of Hugh de Lusignan, went from Cyprus to Syria, and claimed the crown of her ancestors. But the military orders were firm in their loyalty to the imperial house of Suabia, and resisted the partizans of the pretender till the governor sent an army into the east. His generals, however, repaid the fidelity of the cavaliers by taxing and oppressing them: but nature vindicated her rights; the superiority of the Germans was disowned; they were driven from Acre, and sought refuge in Tyre. The emperor severely reprehended the tyranny of his officers; and knowing that his influence materially rested upon the confidence which existed between himself and the military orders, he restored to the latter the estates in Sicily of which he had unjustly deprived them. At his solicitation the Pope, to whom Frederic was now reconciled, dispatched the archbishop of Ravenna to the holy land as the messenger of peace, and the imperial authority was restored.† But the Christians in Asia were never free from the mildew of civil discord, or the

\* See p. 157, ante.

† Sanutus, lib. iii. pars 11. cap. 13.

the blast of foreign war; and they were compelled to warn their brethren in the west, that a new and general crusade must soon be undertaken. The talents of Saladin and his brother were equal to the management of their vast empires; but their successors preserved only the name of authority in their distant provinces; and many powerful emirs would not consider themselves included in Frederic's treaty of peace. The Christians were often invaded and robbed by the Saracens; and on one occasion, ten thousand pilgrims, in their procession from Acre to the holy city, fell victims to Turkish violence.\*

The council of Spoletto decreed that fresh levies should be sent into Asia on the expiration of the truce with Camel.† The Franciscans and Dominicans were the bearers of the resolutions to the princes and people of Christendom. But it was soon apparent that the recovery of the holy land was not the paramount

CHAP. V.

Council of  
Spoletto.  
A. D. 1234.

\* Sanutus, lib 3. pars 11. cap. 13.

† Labbe, vol. xi. p. 481. The Crusade (the seventh), consequent on the council of Spoletto, had two parts:—The expedition of the count of Champagne, and that of Richard, earl of Cornwall. My authorities are Abulfeda, Sanutus, Matthew Paris, and the public letter of Richard, earl of Cornwall.

CHAP. V. mount consideration in the mind of Gregory IX. for the preaching of the crusade once more became the means of filling the papal coffers. By the different engines of persuasion and compulsion, the missionaries gained numberless converts, and then allowed the unwilling, and compelled the wealthy Croises to give the church great largesses in exchange for the vow. The once humble friars grew so rich by these exactions, that their pride and magnificence were detestable in the eyes of the people. These disgraceful scenes were acted in England for two years : but the indignation of society at the avarice of the Pope was so strong, that the preaching ceased. Some of the English nobility were inflamed by the love of warlike praise, and took the cross with no intention of submitting to a pecuniary commutation. The earl of Chester, and also Richard, earl of Cornwall, brother to king Henry III. prepared to measure lances with the Saracens.\* The desire of crusading was influenced by events in Palestine. A truce between the sultan of Aleppo and the Templars expired with the life of the Muselman prince ; and when his successor renewed the war with them, they sustained so severe a defeat, that every commandery in Europe sent them

1234—  
1236.

\* M. Paris, 337, 339, 364, 365.

them succours; and even the Hospitalians resolved to avenge the death of their rivals. Three hundred knights and a considerable body of stipendiaries went from London. Preceded by their prior, they left their residence in Clerkenwell in military procession. On their way to the city's bridge they received and repaid the salutations of the crowds of spectators; and with their caps in their hands, they commended themselves and their cause to the prayers of the people.\*

CHAP.V.

March of  
Hospitalians from  
London.  
A.D. 1237.

The spirit of crusading burnt in France, particularly in the middle and southern provinces. Thibaud,† at once count of Champagne, and, in right of his third wife, king of Navarre, Hugh, duke of Burgundy, Henry, count of Bar, Peter, count of Brittany, and many other barons, assembled at Lyons, in order to concert the means  
of

1236—  
1239.  
French  
lords take  
the cross.

\* M. Paris, 374. The Hospitallers could well afford this succour to their companions in arms. Writing the history of the year 1244, M. Paris says that the Hospitallers had nineteen thousand manors in Christendom, and the Templars nine thousand. Now although it may be difficult to estimate the value of these estates, yet the notice of M. Paris is the first attempt at specification in the old writers, and deserves regard, as it shews the comparative importance of these two orders.

† The poetry of this man is mentioned in note O, Appendix.

CHAP. V. of giving effect to their common desire. But a legate of the Pope interrupted their councils with announcing the commands of his master for the dissolving of the assembly, and the return of the members to their homes. The barons remonstrated against this versatility of opinion in an infallible guide. In obedience to papal commands, they had resolved to take a perilous journey : they had collected stores of provisions and arms ; and the purchase of these necessities had been made by the sale or mortgage of their estates. The nuntio was contumeliously dismissed ; and the impetuous multitude would have exposed their feelings in open violence, if they had not been restrained by the grave and temperate clergy. The union of purpose for a crusade seemed complete, when ambassadors from the emperor implored the French barons to wait till Frederic could strengthen and lead their bands. Enthusiasm was chilled ; and irresolution had some plea for hopelessness in this attempt at procrastination. But most of the nobility pressed forwards to Marseilles, and hoisted sail for the holy land. Indignant at this contempt of his wishes, the emperor prohibited the governors of Apulia and other countries from affording aid to the Crusaders. This measure prevented many parties of cavaliers from pursuing the voyage ; but it did not impede those

those fanatical and romantic warriors, the king of Navarre, the duke of Burgundy, and the counts of Bar and Brittany, from continuing their course to Acre.\* The events which had lately occurred in Palestine made the task of these barons as arduous as any in the fabled enterprises of knighthood. The kingdom itself was to be regained, and the holy sepulchre once more to be redeemed. News of the warlike preparations of Europe had been communicated to the sultan of Egypt; and the first moment when the faith of treaties opposed not a hostile course, he drove the Latins out of Jerusalem, and overthrew the tower of David, which, until that time, had always been regarded as sacred by all classes of religionists. After this capture Camel died: various princes of Syria and Egypt asserted their pretensions to the vacant throne; but the military spirit was too active among the Muselmans, to allow the Christians rationally to hope that they should eventually profit by these dissensions. The count of Champagne advanced from Acre towards Ascalon with the intention of repairing its fortifications. The war began by a successful irruption of the count of Brittany into the Damascene territories. But in

CHAP. V.

State of  
Palestine.

A.D. 1238.

VOL. II.

P

the

\* M. Paris, 461, 462, 465. Sanutus, lib. iii. pars 11, cap. 15.

CHAP. V. the vicinity of Gaza three hundred Frenchmen, who wished to imitate the glory of the cavaliers of Brittany, were defeated by a smaller number of Turks. The count of Montfort was slain, the count of Bar was taken prisoner; and this defeat struck such terror into the mind of the king of Navarre, that he returned to Acre. As hostilities had failed, the French endeavoured to obtain their objects by alliances with the Saracenian princes: but as they were without a head or centre of union, they negotiated like individuals, and formed alliances incompatible with that unity of design which it was necessary for them to maintain. The Templars obtained a promise of the restitution of the holy land, from the emir of Karac, a dependant on the sultan of Damascus, by engaging on their parts to defend him from his Egyptian rival. The Hospitallers, the king of Navarre, the count of Brittany, and others, entered into a treaty of friendship with the sultan of Egypt.\*

Unsuccessful result of the French Crusade.

Nov. 1239. Crusade of the earl of Cornwall.

Whilst the Christians of Asia were busied in the intrigue of negotiation, the English barons assembled at Northampton, and in order to prevent their spiritual lord from turning their arms to the aid of his wars in Italy and Germany, they

\* Sanutus, lib. iii. pars 11. c. 15. M. Paris, 474. Abulfeda, iv. 449.

they repaired to the church of All Saints, and bound themselves by oath to conduct their levies straight to Palestine. The Pope renewed his endeavours to persuade the English to commute their piety for gold, but his ministers, the Franciscans and Dominicans, were only treated with contempt: and in the spring of the year 1240, Richard earl of Cornwall,\* William Longespee or Longsword,† Theodore, the prior of the Hospitallers, and many others of the nobility, embarked at Dover for France. They were accompanied from London to the sea-coast by king Henry and his court, and their departure

P 2

was

\* The Christian name of the earl of Cornwall alarmed the Saracens. The very word, Richard, was dreaded in Syria; so, great was the terror which Cœur de Lion had spread. M. Westminster, p. 303, 304. Syrian mothers used to frighten their children into goodness by telling them that king Richard was coming. The lion-hearted warrior was also dreaded by horses; for if a courser started, the rider would exclaim, "dost thou think that king Richard is in that bush?"

† This William Longespee was the son of the earl of Salisbury, who went to the holy land in 1219. The companion of the earl of Cornwall was never earl of Salisbury. He claimed the earldom, but right was not done him. Dugdale, Baronage, i. 777, and Brookes' Catalogue of Kings, &c. p. 296. fol. 1622. Both William Longespee and Richard earl of Cornwall were professed heresy extinguishers. In 1225 they assisted Louis in his wars against the Albigenes.



CHAP. V. was blessed with the prayers of the bishops. The French monarch received the army with distinction and favour; its march through France resembled a triumph by reason of the congratulations of the people, and the embarkation was completed at Marseilles in defiance of the prohibition of the Pope. The arrival of Richard and the other barons at Acre, took place shortly after the signature of the discordant treaties between the Templars and the emir of Karac, and the Hospitallers with the sultan of Egypt. The English were astonished to find that the king of Navarre and the count of Brittany had fled from the plains of Syria, when they received intelligence of the departure of reinforcements from Europe. The emir of Karac, too, could not fulfil his treaty, or even restore to the Templars the prisoners which had been made in the battle of Gaza. Richard marched to Jaffa, but as the sultan of Egypt (then at war with the sultan of Damascus) sent to offer him terms of peace, he prudently seized the benefits of negotiation. With the consent of the duke of Burgundy, the master of the Hospitallers, and other lords of high degree, he accepted a renunciation of Jerusalem, Beritus, Nazareth, Bethlehem, mount Thabor, and most of the holy land. An exchange of prisoners was to cement the union. The earl of Cornwall retrograded to

The English redeem the sepulchre.

to Acre, and, unlike the king of Navarre, who left Palestine careless whether the Saracens observed or despised their treaty, Richard took such active measures that the sultan of Egypt immediately ratified the conditions. The great object of the Crusaders seemed now to be accomplished. Palestine belonged to the Christians. Richard returned to Europe, and was received in every town as the deliverer of the holy sepulchre. From neglect or inability he had not induced the Templars to consent to his completion of the hopes of the west: and in spleen and revenge the cavaliers renewed those unfraternal altercations with other knights which had hastened the ruin of the kingdom in the time of Saladin.\*

The Hospitallers opened their treasury for the re-edification of the walls of Jerusalem. The patriarch and clergy entered the sacred city,

P 3

and

\* M. Paris, 463, 470, 479. The public letter of Richard contains a narrative of the events of the Crusade, p. 503-505; 511, 534. Sanutus, lib. iii. pars 11. cap. 16. William of Salisbury returned about a year after Richard. M. Paris, 516. It seems from the Arabic accounts that the sultan of Damascus, and not the sultan of Egypt, conceded Palestine to the Franks. Macrisi in Joinville, p. 234. It is, however, clear that the English were formidable as a third party between the two sultans, and that they made much of their political situation.

CHAP. V. and reconsecrated the churches.\* For two years Christianity was the only religion administered in Jerusalem, and the faithful began to exult in the apparent permanent downfall of infidelity; when a new enemy arose more dreadful than even the Muselmans. The great Tartarian princes, Zingis Khan and his successors, had obliterated the vast empire of Korasm; and the expelled and defeated Tartars fled to the south. The storm rolled on towards Egypt, the Korasmians demanded a settlement; the sultan was the only Moslem prince who entered into treaties with those barbarians; and he advised them to fix themselves in Palestine.† He sent one of his

The Korasmians gain it, and devastate Palestine.

\* M. Paris, 543. Macrisi in Joinville, 294.

† This is the occasion of the Korasmian war, as appears from a public letter of the clergy of the east to the clergy of the west, preserved in M. Paris, p. 566. The master of the Hospitallers (p. 548) says that the Korasmians were requested and commanded by the sultan to invade Palestine. The emperor Frederic (p. 546) charges the Templars with having violated the treaty which the earl of Cornwall had made with the sultan of Egypt, and traces to that cause the hostility of the Korasmians. Though every thing which fell from the emperor, respecting the Templars, must be received with suspicion, on account of his indignation against them for their conduct to the German or Teutonic knights, yet there can be little doubt that the red cross knights did commit such hostilities, for they were friends only with the sultan of Damascus and the emir of Karac. The emperor might be right in his facts, but he was certainly wrong in his

his principal emirs, and a large body of troops as their guides and coadjutors, and at the head of twenty thousand horse, Barbaean, the Korasmian general, entered the holy land. The Christians in Jerusalem heard with dismay that the Tartarian tempest had reached their territories. On the principle that it was wise to oppose one barbarian to another, the knights summoned the sultans of Ems and Damascus to overthrow the common enemy of mankind. But the requisition was not complied with, and it was evident from the ruined state of the walls that Jerusalem was no longer tenable. The cavaliers, and many of the inhabitants, abandoned the sacred city. The Korasmians entered it, spared neither lives nor property, and violated both Christian and Muselman sanctuaries. In the wantonness of cruelty they disinterred the departed great, and made a cremation of venerable remains. The insulting fanatics of savageness murdered priests round the altars, exclaiming, while they stabbed the holy men, “let us pour their blood on the place where they poured out wine in commemoration of their crucified God.” As crafty as ferocious they

P 4

planted

his conclusions, for no measures of the military orders could have prevented the Korasmians from ravaging and destroying Syria and Palestine.

CHAP. V. — planted a banner of the cross upon the walls, and, deceived by this joyful appearance, several thousands of the fugitives returned to the city, but only to partake of the miserable doom of their friends.\* The repeated solicitations of the Templars at length brought four thousand soldiers from their Syrian allies. The united Christian and Muselman forces were so far inferior to the Tartars, that policy required a course of measures perfectly defensive. But the fury of the patriarch precipitated the army into the gulph of destruction. The awful conflict raged for two days. The soldiers of Damascus and Ems were soon slain, or scattered. The loss of every part of the army was great, almost beyond example. Seldom had the Latins rued in one battle the death of the two grand masters of St. John and the Temple. Only sixteen Hospitallers, thirty-three Templars, and three Teutonic cavaliers remained alive and free. These soldiers fled to Acre, and that city became the refuge of the Christians. After having rased the fortifications of Ascalon, and the castle of Tiberias, the Korasmians and Egyptians encamped on the plains

\* On this subject see the several letters in Matthew Paris, quoted in the last note; and Macrisi, p. 235. The narratives differ in some points respecting the mode of destruction; but the result is clear.

plains of Acre, devastated the country, and slew or led into captivity all straggling Franks. Jaffa was next attacked, and Sir Walter de Brienne, lord of that city, who had been taken in the late battle, was exposed on a gallows to the view of the inhabitants, and they were assured of his continuance in that degrading situation until the castle should be surrendered. But the count in generous self-oblivion urged his soldiers to the virtue of firmness, and added that no confidence could be placed in the promises of the furious and inexorable sultan. The gallant Walter was led as a captive to Cairo, and the Egyptians, incapable of admiring greatness, basely murdered their heroic and fallen foe. An united force of Korasmians and Mamelukes conquered Damascus, and Europe heard with dismay that the Muselman power was again consolidating. But the members soon were separated, for the sultan of Egypt, faithless as cruel, denied his allies a permanent settlement on the shores of the Nile. The soldiers of fortune flew to the banner of the Damascene prince, and assisted him in his efforts to recover his capital. But the cause of the Mamelukes was felt as the common interest of the Moslem world, and all Syria, as well as all Egypt, was in arms in order to exterminate the northern barbarians. In a general engagement the

Korasmians

1244.

1247.

CHAP. V. Korasmians were defeated and scattered. **Barbacan** was slain, and southern Asia recovered from its panic and distress.\*

Council at  
Lyons,  
1245.

The superstition of a French king, and the successes of the savage Korasmians, gave birth to the eighth Crusade. Pope Innocent IV. convoked a general council at Lyons; the bishop of Boritus described the effects of the Tartarian storm, and left his ecclesiastical brethren to conclude, whether one effort should not be made for a restoration of things to the state in which Richard earl of Cornwall had left them. It was accordingly resolved that a Crusade should be preached throughout Christendom, and that for four years peace and seriousness should reign over Europe. Such of the faithful as did not expose their persons in the holy cause were to give the subsidiary aid of treasure; and the contribution to be made by the cardinals was fixed at a tenth, and that of the other ecclesiastics at a twentieth part of their yearly revenues.†

The

\* Joinville, 209-211. Sanutus, lib. iii. pars 12. cap. 1. De Guignes, livre 14. M. Paris, 599, and the letters already cited.

† The usual privileges were granted to the Crusaders. M. Paris, p. 680-595, gives a full account of the proceedings of this council at Lyons. The subject is interesting to the English reader, on account of the spirited remonstrances  
of

The Pope wrote to Henry III. king of Eng- CHAP. V.  
land, urging him to press on his subjects the  
necessity of punishing the Korasmians.\* But  
the spirit of crusading raged more strongly in  
France than in any other country of the west ;  
and it revived in all its fierceness of piety and  
chivalry in Louis IX. Agreeably to the temper  
of the times, he had vowed, whilst afflicted by  
a severe illness, that in case of recovery he  
would travel to the holy land.† In the delirium  
of his fever, he had beheld an engagement be-  
tween the Christians and the Saracens ; the in-  
fidels were victorious, and the brave king of a  
valiant nation fancied himself called upon to  
avenge

Louis IX.  
takes the  
cross.

of the English barons against the rapacity of the Romish  
church. The tax for the support of the Crusade was warmly  
opposed at the council, because the people remembered the  
way in which the Pope had applied their former contribu-  
tions. M. Paris, 595.

\* Rymer, i. 254, new edit.

† The crusade of St. Louis (the eighth crusade) has for  
its authorities M. Paris, the history of St. Louis, by Join-  
ville, seneschal of Champagne ; and Macrisi, the Oriental  
Chronicle, and other Arabic historians, collected and trans-  
lated by the Parisian editors of Joinville, 1761. Joinville,  
as an historian, is precisely of the same character as Ville-  
hardouin : and fortunately Charles Du Fresne Du Cange  
enriched both works with numerous and valuable notes. I  
shall generally quote Mr. Jones' translation.



CHAP. V. **avenge the defeat.\*** The victories of the Korasmians were a realization of part of his dream; and his preparations had anticipated the decrees of the Lyonesse council. The cross was likewise taken by the three royal brothers, the counts of Artois, Poitiers, and Anjou, by the duke of Burgundy, the countess of Flanders, and her two sons, the count of St. Paul, and many other knights.† By serious arguments and bland persuasions, the royal advisers endeavoured to turn their master from the perilous enterprise. But his warlike heroism and religious devotion were stimulated, rather than checked, at the thoughts of danger, and he burnt with the noble desire of wiping from his escutcheon the stains of the timidity of Louis VII.

\* This vow was made about the year 1244. Nangis and Chronicle of St. Denys, cited in Du Cange's notes. From the moment of his resolving to go to the holy land, St. Louis quitted all pomp of dress: he exchanged his purple for black, a royal for a religious habit. During the crusade he abstained from wearing scarlet, vair, or ermine. The example of the monarch gave efficacy to the laws regarding simplicity of dress, and the lord of Joinville assures us, that, during the whole time he was attending the king on his crusade, he never once saw an embroidered coat of arms. The French barons, however, when resident in Damietta, were less rigid in morality than in dress.

† M. Paris, 600, and Joinville.

VII. and Philip Augustus.\* If it were the policy of the Syrian Muselmans to oppose the torrent of success of the sultan of Egypt and the Korasmians, the French, who saw almost all the holy land laid desolate, and who were on the point of being driven from it, were not less animated to defend a country, the conquest and possession of which had cost them so much blood. The interests of religion, the glory of their arms, the necessity of defending their colony in the east, and the rights of property and old possession, naturally led them to new efforts.†

CHAP. V.

## Sentiments

\* M. Paris tells a story singularly indicative of the king's zeal for a crusade: "One night during the Christmas festival (A. D. 1245), Louis caused magnificent crosses, fabricated by goldsmiths, to be sown on the new dresses which, as usual upon such occasions, had been bestowed upon the courtiers. The next day the cavaliers were surprised at the religious ornaments which had been affixed to their cloaks; piety and loyalty combined to prevent them from renouncing the honours which had been thrust upon them, and the good king obtained the title of the hunter for pilgrims and fisher for men."

† De Guignes, iv. 112. The songs of the minstrels reflected the opinion of the age; and we have evidence from a chanson of Rutebeuf, a French rhymers of the thirteenth century, that the world were not only weary of crusading, but saw the folly of it. The subject is discussed by a Crusader and a Non-crusader. See Appendix, Note P.

## CHAP. V.

English  
Crusaders.

Sentiments of respect for the king of France were not felt in his country alone; the people of England revered his name, and avowedly in imitation of his example, the bishop of Salisbury, William Longespee,\* Walter de Lucy, and many other English nobles and gentlemen, were crossed. William Longespee was, or feigned himself, poor, and went to Rome to solicit the aid of the Pope. "Your holiness sees that I am signed with the cross; my name is great and of note, William Longespee, but my fortune is not equal to the dignity of my family. The king of England, my relation, and liege lord, has bereft me of the title and estate of earl of Salisbury; but he has done this judicially, and not in his displeasure, or by the impulse of his will; therefore I cast no blame on him. But I am compelled to fly to your compassionate heart for aid in this distress. We see that the noble Richard, earl of Cornwall, although not signed with the cross, yet, through the favour of your holiness, has received large sums of money from those who are signed, and; therefore, I who am signed and in want, do entreat the

\* The same William Longespee who had accompanied Richard, earl of Cornwall, to the holy land, in the year 1240.

“the like kindness.” As the Englishman did not require the coffers of the Vatican, the Pope received him with favour, admired his eloquence and chivalric accomplishments, and gave him letters of licence to plunder his crusading countrymen. Longespee returned to England, and extorted more than a thousand marks from the religious, while the less scrupulous or more powerful earl of Cornwall was insatiable in his avarice, and gained from one archdeacon alone, six hundred pounds.\*

Political circumstances† detained St. Louis in France for three years; but the money and troops which he sent to the holy land invigorated the hopes of the Latin Christians. The ranks of the military orders were recruited by hired troops and regular knights from the different stations in Europe. In one endeavour to strengthen themselves, they failed. In former wars, the cavaliers who died on the field, and those who were made prisoners, were considered equally lost to the cause, for the order of which they were members never thought of ransoming their brethren. But at this exigent moment rules

\* M. Paris, 638, 639.

† M. Paris, 578, 645. The Pope and the king made the clergy of France, for three years, contribute a tenth of their revenues for the service of the crusade. M. Paris, 620.

CHAP. V. rules were made to bend to circumstances, and a deputation of the Hospitallers and Templars waited on the sultan of Egypt. But he rejected their offers of gold. He expressed his detestation of a perfidious class of men who would formerly have betrayed their emperor. "Their mutual animosity is stronger than their hatred of their enemies. The Templars and Hospitallers are both traitors and cowards. They violated the treaty which I made with the king of England's brother, whom they called, in contempt, the boy. In the last great battle their standard-bearer was the first man who fled. By the rules of military knights the capuce and girdle are all that should be offered as a ransom, and I will not strengthen their numbers by accepting their money. God has delivered them into my hands, and I will punish them." After this interview, the Egyptian ministers assured the envoys, that the only way of obtaining the release of their friends was the intercession of the emperor. The sultan loved and esteemed him, and the slightest expression of his will would be followed by immediate gratification.\*

Jealousy  
and treachery of  
the military orders.

On

\* These interesting circumstances respecting the friendship between the emperor and the sultan of Egypt, are recorded by M. Paris, p. 610. In a letter of the sultan to the Pope,

On the 12th of June, 1248, Louis, attended by his three brothers, went to the abbey of St. Denys, and received from the Pope's legate the oriflamme,\* the alms' purse, and pilgrim's staff. He sailed from France at the end of August, and arrived in September at Cyprus, the appointed rendezvous for his barons and their vassals.† The king remained eight months in

CHAP. V.

The French  
sail to Cy-  
prus.

VOL. II.

Q

Cyprus,

Pope, on the subject of a negociation (a fruitless one) for peace, he mentions his own friendship and that of his father for the emperor. M. Paris, 621. See before, p. 197.

\* The oriflamme, or aurea flamma, was the banner of the abbot and monastery of St. Denys. It was carried by the counts of Vixen and Pontoise, who were the leaders of the vassals of that church till the reigns of Philip the First, or of his son Louis the Fat, who became counts of Vixen. From that time the French kings were protectors of the church of St. Denys, but, as the saint himself was protector of the kingdom, the king carried into the public wars the standard of him whose aid they invoked. In the time of Charles VII. the white ensign superseded the use of the oriflamme. The standard of St. Denys, like all other church banners, was slit in different parts from the bottom, ornamented with fringes, and fastened at the top of a pike by a cross bar that kept it extended. The lance was gilded, and the colour of the materials of the standard was red: from these circumstances the name of Oriflamme was given to the standard. Menage, Dict. Etymol. and Du Cange, Dissert. 18.

† Among other noblemen who joined Louis, was the senechal of Champagne, and about twenty knights. Before Joinville's ship left Marseilles, the priests and clerks on board chanted hymns, and the mariners set their sails in the

**CHAP. V.** Cyprus, employed in organising his troops, in works of piety, and particularly in healing the breaches in charity between the military orders. The Venetians and other people assisted the French with provisions; on one occasion the supplies of the emperor Frederic preserved the army, and the grateful king implored the Pope to absolve a man who had been benevolent to the soldiers of the church. The ambassadors of a Tartarian prince appeared before Louis, offering their master's aid to root the Saracens and Pagans out of the holy land. The king sent a magnificent present to his ally, in order to bribe him to become a Christian. Two black monks, who understood the Arabic language, were charged

the name of God. When they were out of sight of land, the seneschal thought that a man must be a great fool, who should put himself into maritime dangers, who has wronged any one, or has any mortal sins on his conscience; "for when he goes to sleep in the evening, he knows not if in the morning he may not find himself under the sea." For two nights and a day they endeavoured to pass a huge mountain off Barbary. A discreet churchman relieved their distress, by the assurance, that in case of any unpleasant circumstance in his parish, all was set to rights by making a procession three times on a Saturday. This fact was mentioned on a Saturday, and accordingly a procession was made round the masts of the ship; such men as were ill were supported. Faith had its reward, for the mountain was soon lost sight of. Joinville, p. 116, 118.

charged with the missionary office, and their eloquence and embroidered representation of some of the mysteries of Christianity were to effect the conversion of the Scythian savage and his court.\* In the spring of the year 1249, the soldiers of Louis were mustered, and his ships prepared for sea: fifty thousand men formed his military force, and eighteen hundred was the number of his transports, palandars, and store ships. They set sail for Egypt; a storm separated the fleet; and the royal division, in which were nearly three thousand knights and their men at arms, arrived off Damietta.

Arrive off  
Damietta.

The shores were lined by the sultan's troops, who astonished the French by the clangour of trumpets and brazen drums. The heralds of the king of France instantly went to the sultan, Nodgemeddin (a son of Camel), near Ashmoum, and spared no language of exaggeration in describing the power of their master. The only way to avoid the tempest was to receive priests who would teach the Christian religion to the people of Egypt :† otherwise he would pursue

q 2

them

\* Joinville, 120.

† It was very seldom that the Christians thought of converting the Muselmans. When the sword failed, then they resorted to arguments. The occasion will excuse me from departing from chronological order, and saying, that in the year 1285, Pope Honorius IV. in his design to convert the Saracens



CHAP. V. them every where, and God should decide on whom the country should be given. The sultan replied that he also knew the use of arms, and, like the French, inherited valour. The cause of the Muselmans was that of justice; and the Koran declared, that they who made war unjustly should perish. The armies of the Christians might be more numerous than the Mameluke bands; but the word of God also said, "How often have the most numerous armies been destroyed by a handful of soldiers."\*

Some of the knights wished to dissuade the king from landing, till the appearance of their brethren in arms: but the remembrance of the late storm

Saracens to Christianity, wished to establish schools at Paris for the tuition of people in the Arabic and other oriental languages, agreeably to the intentions of his predecessors. In every subsequent project for a Crusade, it was always proposed to instruct the Saracens *sword in hand*. The council of Vienne in 1312 recommended the conversion of the infidels, and the re-establishment of schools, as the way to recover the holy land. It was accordingly ordered that there should be professors of the Hebrew, Chaldaic, and Arabic tongues in Rome, Paris, Oxford, Bologna, and Salamanca; and that the learned should translate into Latin the best Arabic books. It was not till the time of Francis I. that this decree was acted upon. He founded the royal college, and sent even into the east for books. See Du Boulay, Hist. de l'Université de Paris, tom. iii, page 472.

\* Macrisi, 239, &c.

storm made him dread further maritime dangers. CHAP. V.  
 Accordingly, on the second day after their arrival, Louis commanded the disembarkation : They land, and capture Damietta.  
 he himself leaped into the water ; his shield was suspended from his neck, his helmet was on his head, and his lance on his wrist. His soldiers followed him to the shore ; and the Saracens, panic-struck at their boldness and determination, made but a slight shew of defence, and fled into the interior of the country. Although Da- June 1249.  
 mietta was better prepared for a siege than in those days when it had sustained an attack of eighteen months' duration, yet the garrison sought safety in the fleetness of their horses. They were received at Cairo with the indignation which their cowardice merited ; and the sultan (who had repaired thither from Ashmoum) strangled fifty of the chiefs. The people of Damietta loaded themselves with their most valuable effects, set fire to the part of the city in which their merchandise and plunder were collected, and then took flight for Cairo.\* Louis fixed his residence in the city ; a Christian government was established ; and the clergy, agreeably to old custom, purified the mosques. According to ancient usage, one-third part of the spoil should have been allotted

q 3

to

\* Joinville, 126, &c. Macrisi, 239, &c.

CHAP. V. to the general in chief, and the remaining portions had been usually divided among the pilgrims: but, at the suggestion of the patriarch of Jerusalem, Louis ordered that the corn and provisions should form a magazine for the common benefit of the army: and he retained to himself the rest of the moveable booty.\*

Licentious-  
ness of the  
French.

Neither the religious character of the war, nor the importance of preserving military discipline, had any effect on the conduct of the holy warriors. The barons emulated each other in the splendour of their banquets, and the commonalty abandoned themselves to the lowest vices. So general was the immorality, that the king could not stop the foul and noxious torrent.†

The

\* This residue was not worth more than six thousand livres. Louis drew great obloquy to himself by dividing the plunder in a manner which the good old customs of the Crusades did not warrant. Joinville, 120-128.

† Les barons, chevaliers, et autres, qui deussent avoir bien gardé leur bien, et l'avoir espergné pour s'en secourir en lieu et en temps, se prindrent à faire grans banquets les ungs aux autres en habondance de viandes delicieuses. Et le commun peuple se print à forcer et violer femmes et filles. Dont de ce advint grant mal. Car il failut que le roy en donnant congé à tout plain de ses gens et officiers. Car ainsi que le bon roy me dist, il trouve jusques à ung gect de pierre prés et à l'entour de son paveillon plusieurs bordeaux, que ses gens tenoient. Et d'autres maulx y avoit plus, que en ost qu'il eust jamés veu. Joinville, Hist. du roy Saint Loys, p. 32. edit. Paris, 1668.

The Saracens effected that change which considerations of virtue could not accomplish : for their gradually accumulating force in the neighbourhood of Damietta made the Christians return to watchfulness and order. The hope of the reward of a piece of gold for an enemy's head, inspirited the Muselmans to many enterprises of difficulty and danger ; but Louis prevented at length their incursions into his camp, for he surrounded it with deep ditches, and his cross-bow men galled the approaching parties of Muselman cavalry. The French looked with impatience for the count of Poitiers and the *arriere ban* of France, the remainder of the force which had sailed from Cyprus, and had been driven to Acre in the tempest.\* At the recommendation of the seneschal of Champagne, the three processions of the worthy dean of Maura were ordered ;† and before the third Saturday the count of Poitiers reached Egypt ; and fortunately for him, says Joinville, he did not arrive earlier, for, during the space of the two preceding Saturdays, there had been such continued

CHAP. V.  
—  
Oct. 1249.

q 4

storms

\* This is Joinville's account : he could scarcely have been mistaken in a matter of this nature : but Vincent de Beauvois and Nangis say that the count of Poitiers left France in the middle of August, and sailed direct to Damietta.

† See note, p. 226, ante.

## CHAP. V.

Arrival of  
the English  
Crusaders.

The army  
takes the  
road to  
Cairo.

storms at sea before Damietta, that twelve score vessels, great and small, were wrecked and sunk, and their crews drowned.\* The French also were joined by two hundred English knights, led by William Longespee, whose valour rose on every call to war against the Musselmans;† Some of the barons in the council at Damietta thought that it would be wise to attempt the city and port of Alexandria; but the count of Artois and the most enterprising spirits proposed, that they should advance to Grand Cairo itself. The king adopted the opinions of his brother; and at the close of November, the army commenced its march to the capital of Egypt. Until their approach to the vicinity of Massoura, they overcame the open and insidious enmity of the Saracens. Soon after his departure from Damietta, the king accepted the proffered aid of five hundred horsemen of the sultan, and commanded his army to respect their guides. Vainly thinking that this order was inflexible to circumstances, the Saracens attacked the Templars, who formed the van of the

\* Joinville, 130, &c.

† M. Paris, 664, 678. While Longespee was in the holy land, Henry III. at the instigation of the Pope, had the Crusade preached in England, and wrote to the Irish bishops, desiring them to preach it in their respective dioceses. The result does not appear. Rymer, i. 274.

the army. But the valiant knights rallied round their grand master, and invoking God to aid them in this perilous conjuncture, they rushed upon and destroyed their treacherous foes. Sacedeen,\* the Egyptian emir, and his army were encamped on the opposite side of the Ashmoun canal, which the French in vain endeavoured to cross. Under the cover of two chas-chateils they commenced a causeway over the canal; but the Saracens ruined in a day the work of a month; and even crossed the Nile by one of the passages which were familiar to them, and gave battle to the enemy. The counts of Anjou and Poitiers repulsed, but could not rout them; for their military machines enabled them to remain on the defensive.† The ships on the sea coast were

Inability to cross the Ashmoun canal.

\* Nodgemeddin died shortly before the Christians left Damietta. Sacedeen was only the commander of the Egyptian forces, whom the widow of the late sultan and her friends had appointed. Every thing was done in the name of Nodgemeddin, because his son, Toorun Shah, was not arrived. Sacedeen's military qualities had gained him the honour of knighthood from the emperor Frederic.

† The torrents of Greek fire alarmed the Christians, and destroyed their cats. A terrified spectator described this fire as in appearance like a large tun; and its tail was of the length of a long spear: the noise which it made resembled thunder; and it seemed a great dragon of fire flying through the air. Joinville speaks of the Greek fire as if it had been hitherto unknown to the Franks. On the contrary, the Turks had used it even in the first Crusade.

CHAP. V. were stripped of all their spare timbers ; and, at an immense cost, two new chas-chateils were erected. But on the very day they were set up, the Saracens burnt them with the Greek fire.\*

**They are shewn a ford.** The Christians had now no hope of passing the canal by means of a causeway ; but their despair was relieved by a Bedoween, who offered, for the recompence of five hundred besants, to shew them a ford. **Impetuosity of the count d'Artois.** The impetuous count of Artois offered to effect the passage, and, with the aid of the two military orders, to secure the march of the army. He was entrusted with the important charge ; and, at the head of fourteen hundred knights, and William Longespee and his troops, he followed the steps of the guide. They threw themselves into the water ; and, after having overcome some slight resistance of the Turks, mounted the opposite bank. The count pursued the foes even as far as their camp. Fortune accompanied his steps, and the infidels fled. Some concealed themselves for a while in Massoura, and many sought remote distances. If the count of Artois had listened to the counsels of the leaders of the military friars and red-cross knights, he would not have advanced from the river until the main body of the army arrived. By sad experience

\* Joinville, 134-138.

experience they knew that bravery and cowardice were perpetually vacillating in the breasts of the Turks, and that fury generally succeeded panic. The sight of Massoura, deserted by many of its inhabitants, could not be viewed with calmness; and ardent heroism regarded prudence as the mask of pusillanimity.

Feb. 1250.

To the representations of the grand master of the Templars, that the flight of the Turks proceeded only from an accidental alarm, and not a permanent impression of terror, the count replied, that such an opinion could only spring from treachery. "It is not without reason," he continued, "that we have been repeatedly told that the Templars and Hospitallers, to shew their own importance, and to exhaust the coffers of Europe, prevent a conclusion from being put to the war. For fear of being subject to the western kings, they have either poisoned many lords and princes, or delivered them into the hands of the enemy. Who is there that does not know with what difficulty the emperor Frederic escaped their snares and ambushes?" In a noble manner of mixed dignity and indignation, the Christian knights replied, "Do you think, great prince, that we have abandoned our fortunes and homes, that we have taken the religious habit in a strange land, only to betray the cause

His dispute  
with the  
Templars  
and Wil-  
liam Long-  
sword.

" of



CHAP. V. "of God, and to lose our own salvation?"

"Display your banner," exclaimed the master of the Templars to his standard-bearer, "arms and death must decide our fate and honour. We were invincible while we were united; but a spirit of division will destroy us." William Longsword interposed with the language of conciliation, urging the claims to attention which the experienced grand master possessed: but opposition still further inflamed the rage of the count; and, in the delirium of passion, he transgressed the bounds of chivalrous courtesy. "Behold the cowardice," he exclaimed, "of those men who wear tails.\*" "How happy it would be for us if the army were quit of them." Longsword would not shew that he felt the insult, and mildly, yet firmly, observed, "Count Robert, I will go so far in danger to-day, that you shall not even dare to touch the tail of my horse." The soldiers rushed into Massoura; and heroic envy mocked at discipline and co-operation. But the enemy, seeing their squadrons scattered, recovered courage; and the green standard of the prophet was raised in sign of ferocious hostility. With all the appalling din of Tartarian war, the Mamelukes burst upon the French.

The

Dreadful  
events in  
Massoura.

\* See note Q.

The count of Artois rallied his forces in the town. The Egyptian chief invested Massoura; and, with ability equal to his spirit, placed a body of troops in such a station as to intercept the communication between the count and the king. The soldiers in Massoura engaged the French. The inhabitants partook of the perils of the day, and poured upon their enemy, with deadly effect, burning coals, boiling water, and stones. The count survived not to witness all the dreadful issues of his rashness. William Longespee and a numerous band of gallant men also perished.\* The grand master of St. John fell into the enemy's hands; and the master of the Templars was happy in escaping with the loss of an eye. On the side of the enemy Sacedeen was slain; but his station was quickly filled by a chief of equal bravery and conduct. The king and his army crossed the ford, and prevented the total rout of the Christians. His battle-axe and German sword† dealt death wherever they fell.

\* Joinville places the number that the French lost at three hundred knights: the Oriental Chronicle says one thousand four hundred. According to M. Paris, p. 686, of the military orders, only three Templars, four Hospitalians, and three Teutonic knights survived.

† The German swords were usually long, and are mentioned in opposition to the short swords of the French. Du Cange on Joinville, §28.

CHAP. V. fell. The valiant master of the Templars was slain in this renewed engagement. Egyptian and Christian annalists have claimed the honour and rewards of victory for their respective sides ; but in truth the result of the battle appears to have been indecisive.\* The Saracens, however, cut off all communications between St. Louis and Damietta. Famine and disease appeared in the Christian camp, and the French described the latter of those evils as having sprung from a pestilential air emitted from the dead bodies of their friends and foes, and from eating eel pouts which had fed on corpses in the river.† Negotiations for peace were opened between the contending powers, and the exchange of the

Distresses  
of the  
French.

\* Joinville, 155. Macrisi, 247.

† From this poisonous diet, "and from the bad air of a country where it scarcely ever rains, the whole army was infected by a shocking disorder which dried up the flesh on one's legs to the bone, and our skins became tanned as black as the ground, or like an old boot that has long lain behind a coffer. In addition to this miserable disorder, those afflicted by it had another sore complaint in the mouth from eating eel pouts that rotted the gums. Very few escaped death that were attacked, and the surest symptoms of its being fatal was a bleeding at the nose."—The barbers were obliged to cut away large pieces of flesh from the gums to enable the patient to eat. It was pitiful to hear the cries and groans of those on whom the operation was performed: they seemed like to the cries of women in labour, and I cannot express the great concern all felt who heard them." Joinville, 159, 162.

the lordship of Jerusalem for that of Damietta CHAP. V.  
 formed the basis of the treaty. The king  
 offered either of his brothers as a hostage  
 for the delivery of Damietta to the Egyptians;  
 but the sultan objected, and all hopes of peace  
 were abandoned, because the Christians would  
 not consent to the delivery of their king as the  
 hostage. The miserable condition of the French  
 army not only forbid all thoughts of victory,  
 but imperatively called for a retreat to Damietta.  
 The retreat was ordered; but those who at-  
 tempted it by the river were taken by the  
 enemy, and the fate of such as proceeded by  
 land was equally disastrous. While they were  
 occupied in constructing a bridge over the canal,  
 the Muselmans entered the camp, and murdered  
 the sick. The valiant Louis, though oppressed  
 with the general calamity of disease, sustained  
 boldly, with Sir Godfrey de Sergines, the shock  
 of the enemy, and threw himself into the midst  
 of them, resolved to perish in defending his  
 troops. The brave Sergines, who never left  
 him, succeeded at last in drawing him from the  
 foe, and conducted him to a village, where his  
 lassitude and wounds sunk him into insensibility  
 and helplessness. In that state the Muselmans  
 made him prisoner. Charles count of Anjou,  
 Alphonsus of Poitiers, and indeed all the nobility  
 fell into the enemy's hands. The sultan clothed  
 the

The king  
 made pri-  
 soner.

CHAP. V. the king and the nobles with robes of honour, and treated them with kindness and generosity.\* But many of the unfortunate men who were ill, and therefore useless, were killed by their new masters, in defiance of the command of Saladin and the general usage of oriental nations, not to put to death any one to whom they had given bread and salt. Other prisoners saved their lives by renouncing their religion: the Saraccnic commander indulged the fanaticism of his people by allowing the converts to be received, though he well remembered the sage remark of Saladin, that a Christian was never known to make a good Moslem, nor a good Saracen a Christian.† So great were the calamities of the French in this attempted retreat, that twenty thousand were made captives, and seven thousand were slain or drowned.

As a ransom for the noble prisoners the sultan offered

\* Joinville, 162, &c. De Guignes, iv. 117, 119. After saying that he was taken prisoner, the seneschal of Champagne describes his feelings on the occasion. "I soon began to tremble, so that my teeth chattered as well from the fright I had as from the disorder." Joinville, 166.

† Joinville, 170. "Pure Paganism and native infidelity, like white cloth, will take the tincture of Christianity; whereas the Turks are soiled and stained with the irreligious religion of Muhammedanism, which first must with great pains be scourged out of them." Fuller's Holy War, book 4, ch. 3.

offered to accept of some of the baronial castles in Palestine, or those which belonged to the Templars and Hospitalians. But the king and his peers replied that the liege lord, the emperor of Germany, would never consent that a Pagan or Tartar should hold any fief of him ; and that no cession of the property of the knights could be made, for the governors of their castles swore on their investiture that they would never surrender their charge for the deliverance of any man. The king was even threatened with torture, but as the Muselmans saw in him no symptoms of fear on which they could work, they proposed to make a pecuniary ransom. Louis offered to pay ten thousand golden besants, which were equal to five hundred thousand livres, for the deliverance of his army, and that as the royal dignity could not be estimated by a vulgar scale, he would for his own freedom surrender the city of Damietta.\* The sultan was liberal in the fulness of his joy at such a

VOL. II.

R

completion

\* The king at first said, if the sultan would be contented with a reasonable ransom, he would write to the queen to pay it for himself and his army. The Saracens enquired the reason of his wish for this preliminary. He answered that it was but reasonable he should consult with the queen, for she was his wife and companion. Joinville, 173. The treaty, however, was concluded without her knowledge. She quitted Damietta for Acre soon after the captivity of the king.

CHAP. V. completion of his victories, and remitted a fifth  
 is ransom- part of the pecuniary ransom.\* Peace was to  
 ed. continue for ten years between the Muselmans  
 and the Christians, and the Franks were to be  
 restored to those privileges in the kingdom of  
 Jerusalem, which they enjoyed before the land-  
 ing of Louis at Damietta. The repose which  
 succeeded the treaty was interrupted by the  
 murder of the sultan : but after a few acts of  
 hostility the successful emirs, and their Mann-  
 lukes, renewed with a few changes the condi-  
 tions of amity.† One moiety of the ransom was  
 to be discharged before the king left the river,  
 and the other on his arrival at Acre. The sick  
 at Damietta, with the stores and baggage, were  
 to be retained by the sultan till the last portion  
 of the ransom should be paid. Damietta was  
 accordingly

June, 1250.

\* Du Cange, 20th Dissert. on Joinville. Le Blanc (cited in *L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, l. 584) makes the ransom of St. Louis equivalent to seven millions of livres modern French money.

† The lord of Joinville, and some others, expected instant death from a party of Saracens that entered their galleys. " With regard to myself (he says), I fell on my knees at the feet of one of them; and, making the sign of the cross, said, ' Thus did St. Agnes.' Sir Guy d'Ibelin, constable of Cyprus, knelt beside me, and confessed himself to me, and I gave him such absolution as God was pleased to grant me the power of bestowing; but of all the things he said to me, when I rose, I could not remember one of them." Joinville, 176.

accordingly surrendered. But the Mamlukes were more savage and unprincipled than any preceding enemies of the Latin name. They burnt all the military engines, murdered the sick, and some of the most ferocious thirsted for the blood of the Christian potentates. They concealed their malignity under the mask of piety, and declared that as they had committed a sin, by destroying their sultan, whom by their law they should have guarded as the apple of their eye, so their religion would be injured if they suffered a Christian king to live. But other chiefs disdained any compromise with vice, and refused to participate in an act which never could be blotted from the records of time. The counsels of justice prevailed, and the Christians were relieved from their fears that the treaty would not be acted upon. The earls of Flanders and Brittany, the count of Soissons, and others embarked for France. The royal treasure at Damietta could not furnish the stipulated portion of the ransom. The new grand master of the Templars opposed the institutes of his order to the king's request for a loan of the funds of the society, and contended that he could not divert them from their regular and appointed purposes. But state necessity trampled over mere statutable forms, and the chest of the Templars was seized by the royal officers.



CHAP. V. The king's person was redeemed, and the French went to Acre.\*

The French  
go to Acre.

Before Louis could determine to what part of the holy regions before him he would direct his march, political news from France compelled him to inform his council, that he was divided between his duty to Europe, and his ardent wish to perfect the glorious work which he had begun. The cause of Palestine was the paramount principle in the breasts of the French lords : some of them urged the propriety of his return to the west, for the purpose of recruiting the sinews of war ; others presumed to think that his private treasures were not in the exhausted condition of the state finances, and that stipendiaries could be hired in Greece. " My lords," said the king, " I feel equally thankful to those " who have advised our return to France, as to " those who have recommended our stay in the " holy land. But, I believe, that should we remain here, the dangers of my kingdom will " not, for that reason, increase ; for my lady " mother,

\* The expedition of St. Louis into Egypt resembles in many respects the war in Egypt thirty years before. In both cases the Christian armies were encamped near the entrance of the Ashmoum canal: they could not advance, and the surrender of Damietta was the price of safety. The errors of the cardinal Pelagius seem not to have been recollected by St. Louis.

“mother; the queen, has a sufficiency of men CHAP. V.  
 “at arms to defend it. I have thought much  
 “on what the knights of the country say, that  
 “if I depart, the kingdom of Jerusalem will be  
 “lost, since no one will remain here after me.  
 “Now, my lords, having told my resolution,  
 “let such speak out boldly as wish to continue  
 “with me; my treasures shall support them.  
 “God be with those that may not choose to  
 “stay.” Many of the council were astonished  
 at this resolution of the king, and were divided  
 in their patriotism and their allegiance.\*

The sultan of Damascus, a relation of the  
 murdered Egyptian lord, solicited the aid of  
 Louis to revenge the murder, and stimulated  
 his virtue by the promise, that, in the event of  
 victory, he would deliver to the Christians the  
 city of Jerusalem.† The king replied, that he  
 would send to the Mamlukes at Damietta, to  
 know whether they would repair their viola-  
 tions of the treaty, and that, in case of their  
 refusal, he would assist the sultan of Damascus.  
 On intelligence of this negotiation, the people  
 of Damietta restored to the king all the knights

New hopes  
 by reason  
 of the Mos-  
 lem dissen-  
 tions.

R 3

and

\* Joinville, 188, 191. On every affection of the mind,  
 the warriors in Villehardouin and Joinville shed tears. They  
 were as great weepers as Homer's heroes.

† Joinville, 193.

CHAP. V. and common soldiers whom they had detained in prison. Louis wisely profited by circumstances, and declared that he would not enter upon a truce with the Egyptians, until they had absolved him from the payment of the remaining moiety of the ransom, and restored to him the heads of those Christians on the walls of Cairo, who had fallen in the battle near Mas-soura, and such Christian children as they had forced to become Muselmans.\* The emirs and Mamlukes complied with these terms, and, on condition of the alliance of the French king, they engaged to deliver up to him Jerusalem itself. Louis remained a year at Cesarea, and rebuilt its houses and repaired its fortifications.†

Jaffa.

\* Joinville, 198, 199, 216.

† The military force of Louis did not much exceed four thousand men. The king's two brothers returned to Europe; and, in order to retain a respectable army, Louis was obliged to be liberal of his treasure. Thirty-five knights banneret of Champagne were killed in various battles of Egypt. The king retained the remainder of Joinville's force, during six months, for two thousand liyres. Afterwards, Joinville declared, that, "he would not take any more of his money, but would offer other terms; which were, that Louis would promise never to fly into a passion for any thing which might be said to him by the seneschal, who, in return, would engage to keep his temper whenever any of his requests were refused." Joinville, 192, 205. The general rates of pay in the French army, were, for a knight banneret, twenty sous tournois a-day; that of knights

Jaffa was the next object of his care, and, in CHAP. V.  
 the course of time, he inclosed it with walls,  
 and made its strength equal to its importance.  
 The numerous forces of the sultan of Damascus  
 prevented the Mamlukes from joining the king;  
 but his allies returned to him the heads of the  
 slain, and also the children that he had de-  
 manded. The war between the Egyptians and  
 Syrians raged with dreadful violence, and with  
 various success, till they buried their mutual  
 animosities in the common detestation of the  
 French. By the mediation of the caliph, the  
 Musselmans made peace; Egypt and Jerusalem  
 were to belong to the Mamlukes; and the  
 countries beyond the Jordan to the sultan of  
 Syria.\* But the united infidels did not pursue  
 their schemes of destruction with that vigour  
 and ability which had distinguished the fierce  
 and dreadful movements of Nouredin and  
 Saladin. They might have swept the feeble  
 and exhausted Christians from the shores of  
 Palestine; but they merely ravaged the coun-  
 try round Acre, and then proceeded to Sajeete,

Those dis-  
 sensions  
 quelled.

R 4

in

knights bachelors and esquires banneret, ten sous each;  
 that of simple esquires, five sous; of gentlemen on foot, two  
 sous; of serjeants on foot, twelve deniers; and of cross-bow  
 men, fifteen deniers. Du Cange, Diss. ix.

\* De Guignes, livre xxi. Joinville, 212.

CHAP. V. in whose strong castle were Louis and most of the army. The blood and property of the citizens satisfied the Moslems, who departed without trying the valour of the French in garrison.

Failure of  
the cru-  
sade.

Perpetual disappointment gradually desiccated the spring of hope, and the king turned his mind to France. His friends marked his change of purpose,\* and news from Europe of the death of his royal mother, the regent of his kingdom, made him openly proclaim his resolution to return. The patriarch and barons of Palestine offered him their humble thanks and praise for the great good and honour he had conferred on the holy land; and, shortly after Easter, he embarked for the west. Louis IX.

Louis re-  
turns to  
France.  
April 1254.

gathered

\* Joinville relates a story somewhat amusing, expressive of his own good humoured cunning. Previously to the arrival of the news mentioned in the text, he went on a pilgrimage to our lady of Tortosa, who performed all manner of miracles, except when she was busy in assisting the French king. Louis had desired the seneschal to purchase some camlets, which he wished to give the Cordeliers in France. Joinville fancied that this wish proceeded from an inclination to return, but he kept his conjectures in his own bosom, and, when the purchase had been made, and some knights asked him what he meant to do with so many camlets, the old soldier satisfied enquiry, by professing that he should turn merchant, and should endeavour to gain a profit by the resale of the camlets.

gathered no new laurels in his transmarine expedition. All that was great and chivalric in France had been spread out in martial array, and had met with little else than discomfiture and defeat.\*

CHAP. V.

---

\* In the course of Louis's stay at Jaffa, the sultan of Damascus sent him permission to visit Jerusalem. The king ardently desired to behold the sacred places, and was slow in allowing considerations of policy to conquer selfish feelings. The reason which dissuaded him from the journey, was, that if he should perform a pilgrimage to Jerusalem without delivering it from the enemies of God, every subsequent crusading monarch would think a similar proceeding sufficient, and would not consider himself obliged to perform more than what the king of France had done. St. Louis was also reminded, that Richard Cœur de Lion refused to behold Jerusalem as a pilgrim.

## CHAP. VI.

THE LAST CRUSADE, AND LOSS OF THE HOLY  
LAND.

*State of Palestine after the eighth Crusade.....War  
between the Templars and Hospitallers.....Pro-  
gress of the Mamlukes of Egypt in the conquest of  
Palestine.....History of Antioch.....Antioch taken  
by the Egyptians.....Louis IX. prepares for his  
second Crusade.....Crusading spirit in England  
.....Departure of Louis from France for the holy  
land.....He disembarks near Tunis.....His death  
.....Prince Edward leaves England.....He passes  
the winter in Sicily.....Arrives at Acre.....Cap-  
tures Nazareth.....His cruelty.....Distresses of  
the English.....Edward wounded by an assassin...  
He makes peace with the Mamlukes, and returns to  
England.....Vain effort of Gregory IX. for a new  
Crusade.....Council of Lyons.....Further progress  
of the Mamlukes.....Last siege of Acre, and total  
loss of Palestine.*

1255, &c.  
State of  
Palestine.

ALL the blood which had been shed, and all the treasure which France had lavished for the crusade of St. Louis, did not long preserve the Christians in Palestine from the hostilities of the Musselmans, and, as no new succours arrived from

from Europe, the barons and knights were compelled, in some cases, to keep within the shelter of their fortresses, and at other times to make disadvantageous treaties with their foe.\* Although it was evident that nothing but unanimity in the holy warriors could preserve the remnants of the kingdom of Godfrey of Bouillon from annihilation, yet the Christians wasted their strength in party collisions, instead of watching the politics of the Saracenian courts, and gathering those branches of power which their enemies,† in their ambitious feuds, continually broke from the tree of Islamism. The haughty

\* M. Paris, 785.

† The divisions among the Latins in Palestine were a fruitful source of public calamity. They are noticed by all the writers contemporaneous with, and immediately subsequent to, the Crusades, as productive of the ruin of the kingdom. The general opinion of Europe on the history of Palestine, is expressed by Petrarch :—

Poi venia solo il buon duce Goffrido,  
Che fè l' impresa santa, e i passi giusti.  
Questo, di ch' io mi sdegno e 'ndarno grido,  
Fece in Gierusalem con le sue mani  
Il mal guardato e già negletto nido.  
Ite, superbi e miseri Cristiani,  
Consumando l' un l' altro, e non vi caglia,  
Che 'l Sepolcro di Cristo è in man di cani.

Del Trionfo della Fama, cap. ii.

The twenty-third sonnet and the second canzonet of Petrarch are fine pieces of poetry, and interesting proofs of the author's crusading zeal.



CHAP. VI. haughty republicans of Italy would never enter into any common bond of union, and the Venetians, the Pisans, and the Genoese had frequent hostile encounters, respecting the possession of churches to which each nation asserted her claims.\* The two great military orders only forgot their mutual jealousies, when in the field they were opposed to the Musselmans; but, in every interval of peace, the knights, incapable of any exertions or thoughts but those which war inspired, gratified their arrogance and restlessness in disputes touching military prowess and precedence. As reason did not give birth to those altercations, she did not control the decision. The jealousy and rancour of the Hospitalians and red-cross knights was frequently aggravated by irregular skirmishes, and, at length, the kindred squadrons met in a general engagement. Victory sat on the helms of the cavaliers of St. John: few prisoners were taken, and scarcely a Templar escaped alive.† But new companions from Europe gradually filled the places of the deceased brethren. New occasions

War between the  
Templars  
and Hospi-  
tallers.

1259..

\* Chron. F. Pipini in Muratori, Scrip. Rer. Ital. ix. 712. James de Vitry marks with severity the money-getting and jealous passions of the Italian republicans. P. 1089 in Bönarsius.

† M. Paris, 646.

occasions demanded all their valour and skill, CHAP. VI. and civil discord was lost amidst the more honourable war with the real enemies of the state. A blood-stained revolution in Egypt had placed the Mamluke chief Bibars, or Bendoe-dar,\* on the throne of that country; he was well disposed to lead his savage Mamlukes against the Christians: and his ferocity did not want the excitement which the military orders gave it, of refusing, contrary to treaty, to deliver to him some Muhammedan prisoners.† His soldiers, as savage as the Korasmians, demolished the churches of Nazareth and the fortress and church on Mount Thabor. They made their way to the gates of Acre with fire and sword, and such of the Christians as were immediately slain were not so much objects of compassion as the prisoners, on whom the Turks inflicted every description of torture, in order to force a change of religion. Though Acre itself was saved for a few years, yet Cesarea did not escape the wide-spreading calamities.‡ Through these dreadful scenes the military orders fought with

Progress of  
the Mam-  
lukes.  
1263.

\* The full name of this gentleman was Al Malek al Dha-ker Rokneddin Abulfeth Bibars al Alai al Bundokdari al Salehi.

† De Guignes, livre xxi.

‡ Samutus, lib. iii. c. vii.

CHAP. VI. with their usual heroism, and in the sieges of  
1265—6. the strong fortresses of Azotus and Saphoury, the spirit of devotion which they manifested to their cause had never been equalled. The small force of ninety Hospitallers held possession of the former of these places. The number gradually diminished on each renewed assault, and when the Turks mounted the breach they trampled on the bodies of the last of the knights. After ravaging the neighbourhood of Acre, Tyre, and Tripoli, the Egyptians laid siege to the fortress of Saphoury. The fall of that place was inevitable, and the prior of the Templars therefore agreed to capitulate, and, on the surrender being made, the knights and garrison, altogether amounting to six hundred men, were to be conducted to the next Christian town. The sultan was invested with lordship over the fortress, but he violated the conditions of the surrender, and left the knights only a few hours to determine on the alternative of death or conversion to Islamism. The prior and two Franciscan monks were earnest in fixing the faith of the religious cavaliers, and, at the appointed time for the declaration of their choice, they unanimously avowed their determination to die rather than incur the dishonour of apostacy. The decree for the slaughter of the Templars  
was

was pronounced and executed; and the three CHAP. VI.  
preachers of martyrdom were dead alive.\*

Before we continue our view of the calamities of Palestine, a retrospect must be taken of a principality whose fate was closely connected with that of the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem. Bohemond IV. continued to be the reputed lord of Antioch, from the year 1206† till the time of his death in 1233. But for many years during this interval he did not exercise any royal authority, for he was a tyrant, and was both hated by the people and excommunicated by the clergy. His nephew Rupin, the right heir, was aided by the papal legate, who was present at the great siege of Damietta, in the year 1218, and made several attempts to recover his thrones of Antioch and Tripoli; but he died some years before Bohemond, in a prison at Tarsus, into which he had been cast by Constantius, nominal regent of Antioch, and guardian of Isabella, daughter and successor of Livon, king of Armenia. From Bohemond IV. and his first wife Plaisance, daughter of the lord of Gabala, Bohemond V. descended. To him succeeded Bohemond VI. It does not appear that the family of the Bohemonds were entire masters of the principality and county from the year 1233 till their absorption

History of  
Antioch.  
A. D.  
1206—  
1268.

\* De Guignes, livre xxi.

† See page 155, ante.

CHAP. VI. tion in the Egyptian power. It is certain that Bohemond V. was reigning over Antioch and Tripoli in 1244, when he became tributary to the Korasmians: and that in 1253 Bohemond VI. was made a knight by St. Louis, and was considered lawful prince of Antioch, though he was a minor, and under his mother's tutelage. But it is equally certain that at times, from 1233 to 1288, Frederic\* and Conrad, a son and grandson of the emperor Frederic II. had possession of all or part of the states of Antioch and Tripoli.†

We may now resume the thread of the general history.

\* Prince Frederic was the illegitimate son of the emperor Frederic II. Whether the mother of this prince was an Armenian or Antiochean princess, is very doubtful: If the former, she might have been the daughter of Haiton, king of Armenia; but if the latter, it is almost impossible to conjecture her family history. Prince Frederic was frequently called Prince of Antioch, a title he would have claimed in either case, for the lordship over Antioch was boasted of by the Bohemonds, and also by the Armenian chiefs. Gian- none, *Istoria di Napoli*, lib. 17. ch. 6. Henningses, *Theatrum Genealogicum*, tom. iv. pars 1. p. 47, pars 3. p. 462. Haiton. *Hist. Orient.* Appendix.

† A very thick cloud hangs over the history of Antioch; and few writers have taken the trouble of endeavouring to pierce it. See M. Damiani's Essay on the Vicissitudes of Antioch during the time of the Crusades in the fifteenth volume of the *Archæologia*.

history. Jaffa and the castle of Beaufort were the Mamluke conquests which succeeded in point of time to those of Azotus and Saphoury,\*

CHAP. VI.

The tempest at length burst upon the state of Antioch; and the city of that principality yielded without even the formality of a siege.† The reproach of treachery is alternately cast upon the patriarch and the inhabitants; and heavy is the disgrace of causing an event which occasioned the destruction of forty thousand, and the captivity of one hundred thousand Christians. Bibars ravaged the country round Tyre; but being equally religious as cruel, he gave the Franks a respite by pilgrimizing to the holy places in Arabia. He soon, however, resumed his fell purpose of exterminating the Christians; Laodicea and many other places submitted to him; and the knights of St. John gained immortal honour by their brave, though fruitless, defence of the fortress of Karac, between Arca and Tortosa.‡ The prince of Tripoli preserved his title by the sacrifice of half of his territory. Acre was saved in consequence of the reported succour of the king of Cyprus. Bibars returned

A. D. 1268.  
Antioch  
taken by  
the Egyptians.

s

to

\* Sanutus, lib. 3. pars 12. c. 6, 8. Plagon, p. 737.

† Sanutus, lib. 3. pars 12. c. 9. De Guignes, vol. iv. p. 143.

‡ Sanutus, lib. 3. pars 14. cap. 2.

CHAP. VI. To Cairo, hastily fitted out a fleet for the conquest of the island, which was without the presence of its monarch. But his ships were lost in a tempest; Cairo was overwhelmed with sorrow, and none of his efforts could re-establish affairs.\*

1268.  
Louis IX.  
prepares  
for his second  
Crusade.

Before the news of the capture of Antioch reached Europe, the people of the west had contemplated a new crusade. St. Louis thought that his first expedition to the holy land brought more shame on France than good on the Christian cause; and he feared that his own personal fame had withered. The Pope encouraged his inclinations for a new attempt; and, in a general assembly of prelates, nobility, and people at Paris, the king exhorted his hearers to revenge the wrongs which Christ had so long suffered. England was at that time in a state of repose, and her martial youth were impatient of idleness. The king held a parliament at Northampton; the legate of the Pope acquainted the assembly of the necessity of preserving what yet remained to the Christians of the holy land, and prince Edward, with the earls of Warwick and

1268.

\* De Guignes, livre 31.

† William of Nangis, in the fifth volume of Du Cange, p. 384, &c. After the king's return from Palestine he was more simple in his dress than ever; and he gave up the luxuries of gilt spurs and stirrups. Joinville, 233.

and Pembroke, received the holy ensign from CHAP. VI.  
 his hands.\* The assumption of the cross by  
 the heir of the English throne spread great joy  
 throughout France. He was invited to Paris;  
 the co-operation of the English and French was  
 determined upon; and Louis lent his youthful  
 ally thirty thousand marks on the security of  
 the customs of Bourdeaux.† The prelates and  
 clergy of England agreed to contribute a tenth  
 of their revenues for three years; and, by a par-  
 liamentary ordinance, a twentieth part was taken  
 from the corn and moveables which the laity  
 possessed at Michaelmas. A crusade had for  
 many years been popular in England. During  
 the first expedition of St. Louis, and soon after  
 the departure of William Longsword, Henry III.  
 engaged to fight under the sacred banners. But  
 he was slow in preparing to go to the holy land;  
 and the public murmured the suspicion that he  
 had only assumed the cross as a pretence for  
 collecting money. Avowing that duty to a hea-  
 venly master was paramount to allegiance to a  
 king of earth, they who had taken the badge of  
 fellowship met at Bermondsey, near London, in  
 order to unite their counsels and resolves. It

1269.

Crusading  
 spirit in  
 England.

s 2

was

\* Waverley in Gale, vol. ii. p. 225.

† Wikes, 290. Cont. of M. Paris, 857. See the treaty  
 between Louis and Edward, in Rymer, i. 481.



CHAP. VI. was found that five hundred knights had been  
crossed; and the number of inferior people  
could not be counted. The holy warriors re-  
solved to commence their voyage at Midsum-  
mer; but the king had anticipated all their pro-  
ceedings; and he declared that if they dared to  
march without him, the thunders of the Vatican  
should be hurled against them. Some people  
submitted to, and others clamoured at this me-  
asure of papal interference; and the religious  
ardour of the most enthusiastic was cooled by  
the king's delays, and the news of the disastrous  
events in Egypt. The Pope and king were sent  
to the reproaches of the French nation, that an  
difference to Christianity could be the only mo-  
tive for obstructing the pious wishes of the  
English people.\* The king's poverty was over

the  
\* M. Paris, 670, 671. " About this time (1250) many  
tens of thousands of the English were resolved for the holy war,  
and would needs have been gone, had not the king strictly  
guarded his ports, and kept his kingdom from running  
away out of doors. The king promised he would go with  
them; and hereupon got a mass of money from them for  
this journey. Some say that he never intended it; and  
that this only was a trick to stroke the skittish cow to get  
down her milk. His stubborn subjects said that they  
would tarry for his company till Midsummer, and no  
longer. Thus they weighed out their obedience with  
their own scales; and the king stood to their allowance.  
But hearing of the ill success of the French, both prince  
" and

the alleged cause of his remissness; and two years after his dissolution of the association of English knights, he endeavoured to extort money from the clergy, on the pretence of a journey to Syria. But they resisted his demands; reproached him with his avarice and violation of oaths; and warned him of the fate of St. Louis, who was at that time in the hands of the Saracens.\* But the military spirit of the people rose above the calculating duplicity of the king; and though he disregarded, yet they were deeply affected by the appeals and exhortations which the clergy, barons, and military orders made to him to perform his engagement with God.†

Anticipating the laurel of victory, or the crown of martyrdom, St. Louis spread his sails for the holy land.† Sixty thousand soldiers

A. D. 1270.  
Departure  
of Louis IX.

and people altered their resolution, who had come too late to help the French in their distress, and too soon to bring themselves into the same misery." Fuller, *History of the Holy War*, book iv. ch. 17.

\* M. Paris, 717, 720, &c.

† Rymer, i. 308, 321. In 1252, however, Henry wrote to the three great military orders that he would go to the holy land at the end of four years, i. 282.

† Like the two preceding Crusades, the ninth and last great transmarine expedition was partly composed of Englishmen and partly of Frenchmen. My authorities are Sarnus, William de Nangis, Matthew of Westminster, Wikes,

CHAP. VI. were animated by their monarch's feelings, of religious and military ardour: and we may remark among the leaders the lords of Flanders, Champagne, and Brittany, whose ancestors had so often distinguished themselves for martial spirit and ability in fighting the battles of the cross. The fleet was driven into Sardinia, and at that place a great change was made in the plan of operations. The king of Tunis had formerly sent ambassadors to Louis, and expressed a wish to embrace the only true religion. His Christian ally thought that the presence of a large army would prevent the Moors from offering any violence to the inclinations of the king. Northern Africa had formerly paid a pecuniary tribute to the sovereign of the two Sicilies; and Charles of Anjou, the reigning monarch, concealing his selfishness under the garb of piety and justice, strongly urged his brother to restore the rights of Christendom. The soldiers too, now more greedy of plunder and revenge than zealous in bigotry, entreated to be led to Tunis, a city that popular rumour had described as abounding in wealth, and which, as the faithful friend of Egypt, had long been hated by Europe. The subjugation of the Muschmans

the chronicle of Mailros, Hemingford, the continuation of Matthew Paris, and Abulfeda.

Muslims in Africa was declared to be a necessary preliminary to successes in Palestine; the French soon reached the first object of their hopes; and the camp and town of Carthage were the earliest rewards of victory. But every sanguine expectation was damped when a pestilential disease spread its ravages through the Christian ranks. The great stay of the Crusades fell. During his illness Louis ceased not to praise God, and supplicate for the people whom he had brought with him. He became speechless; he then gesticulated what he could not utter; he perpetually made signs of the cross, stretched himself on the floor, which was covered with ashes; and in the final struggle of nature he turned his eyes to Heaven, and exclaimed, *God will enter thy house, I will worship in thy sanctuary.*<sup>†</sup>

CHAP. VI.

He lands near Tunis.

Death of Louis IX, August 1270.

Before this calamitous event prince Edward, Edmund Crouchback, earl of Lancaster, four sons, four barons, and the English division, had

Prince Edward leaves England.

\* Ce n'est pas un des moindres exemples des jeux de la fortune, que les ruines de Carthage aient vu mourir un roi chrétien qui venait combattre des Musulmans dans un pays où Didon avait apporté les Dieux des Syriens. Voltaire, Essai sur les Mœurs des Nations, ch. 58.

† Nangis, p. 386-389, 393. Epistle of the bishop of Thunes, an eye-witness, Martenne, vi. 1218. Sanutus, lib. 3. pars 12. cap. 10.

CHAP. VI. not only arrived in Africa, but had left it for Sicily, in despair that their French companions would ever march to Palestine.\* The defection of his allies would have justified prince Edward in returning to England : but he embraced the prospect of undivided glory ; and he swore that although all his soldiers should desert him, he would go to Acre attended only by his groom. The winter season was passed by him in military exercises, and in the various occupations of chivalry, and in the following spring he turned his prow up the Mediterranean, and arrived at Acre. The whole of the forces of Edward did not exceed one thousand men. But the prowess of the Plantagenets was dreaded by the Musselmans ; and they feared that another *Croisade* de Lion was come to scourge them. The sultan of Egypt departed from the vicinity of Acre, which he had devastated with fire and sword. All the Latins in Palestine crowded round the banner of the English prince ; and he took the field at the head of seven thousand men. The city of Nazareth was redeemed ; and he surprised and defeated a large Turkish force. Edward was brave and provident, and owed his success as much to his skill as to his courage.

Passes the winter in Sicily.

April 1271.

Arrives at Acre.

Captures Nazareth.

But

\* Annals of Waverley, in Gale, vol. ii. p. 225. Continuation of M. Paris, 859. Hemingford, iii. 589.

But he was not less cruel than any preceding  
 hero of the holy wars; and he gave a dreadful  
 aspect of that savage implacability which  
 Scotland afterwards so often rued. The bar-  
 barities which stained the entry of the Christians  
 into Jerusalem two centuries before were re-  
 peated in a smaller theatre of cruelty in Na-  
 zareth.\*

CHAP. VI.

His cruel-  
ties.

But the march of victory was closed, for the  
 English soldiers were parched by the rays of a  
 Syrian sun, and their leader was extended on  
 the bed of sickness. The governor of Jaffa  
 was the apparent friend of Edward, but the sul-  
 tan's threat of degradation, if further commerce  
 were held with an infidel, changed courtesy into  
 malignity, and his brutal zeal for the display of  
 his loyalty must have satisfied even the suspi-  
 cious bosom of a tyrant. He hired the dagger  
 of one of those assassins who had escaped the  
 proscription which the Tartars, mercifully for  
 the world, had made of the followers of the old  
 man of the mountain. The wretch, as the  
 bearer of letters, was admitted into the cham-  
 ber of his intended victim. The purpose of his  
 errand being accomplished, he drew a poinard  
 from the concealment of his belt, and aimed a  
 blow at Edward's breast. After receiving two

or

\* Hemingford, lii. 590. Chronicle of Mailros, i. 241.

CHAP. IV

of three wounds, the vigorous prince threw the villain on the floor, and stabbed him to the heart.\* The dagger had been steeped in poison, and for some hours Edward's fate was involved in danger. The fairy hand of fiction has ascribed his convalescence to one of that sex, whose generous affections are never restrained by the chilling calculations of selfishness. But the stern pen of history has recorded that his restoration to health was the simple result of surgical skill, co-operating with the salient springs of a vigorous frame.† The English soldiers

After alluding to Prince Edward's exploits in the holy

land, Ben Jonson says,

For which his temper'd zeal, see Providence  
Flying in here, and arms him with defence

Against th' assassinate made upon his wife

By a foul wretch, from whom he wrests the knife

And gives him a just hire; which yet remains

A warning to great chiefs, to keep their trains

About them still, and not, to privacy

Admit a hand, that may use treachery.

Prince Henry's Barriers. Works, vol. 222.

† Chronicon F. Pipini in Muratori, *Her. Scrip.* vol. 7. p. 705, 714. Matthew of Westminster, p. 400. ed. Franc. 1601. P. Langtoft's Chron. p. 227. Wikes, p. 97. Hemingford, p. 591. Contin. of Matthew Paris, 859. The

story of Eleanora's sucking the venom from her husband's

wound would always have been considered a fable, if that

respectable writer, Camden, (vol. 2. p. 103. Gough's edit.)

had

burned to revenge on the Turkish people the dastardly act of the assassin. But Edward checked them, and forgot his own injuries when he

had not mentioned it as an historical fact. Camden took it from a Spanish historian, who wrote two hundred years after the event. Hemingford expressly says, that the grand master of the Templars immediately sent his royal friend some precious drugs to stop the progress of the venom. A mortification was however apprehended, and an English physician undertook to cut out the bad part. The prince ordered Edward and John de Vesey to lead Eleanor out of the room; and those knights, not very gentle to the lady's feelings, told her it was better that she should shed a few tears, than that England should for ever mourn. Hemingford, p. 201. "It is storied," says Fuller, "how Eleanor, his lady, sucked all the poison out of his wounds without doing any harm to herself. So sovereign a remedy is a woman's tongue, anointed with the virtue of loving affection. Pity it is that so pretty a story should not be true. (with all the miracles in love's legends), and sure he shall get himself no credit, who undertaketh to confute a passage so sounding to the honour of the sex. Yet can it not stand with what others have written." Fuller's Holy War, book 4. ch. 29. The story most likely took its rise from the circumstance that in the middle ages surgical knowledge was an elegant female accomplishment. The fair practisers of leechcraft were of course in high repute, "and it is probable that their attentive and compassionate solicitude may have frequently proved more efficacious than the nostrums of the faculty, even when assisted by the magical power of amulets, or the more orthodoxy energy of holy water."



CHAP. VI. he reflected, that were he to sanction murder, the humble unarmed pilgrims could never obtain the protection of the Saracens. After the English prince had been fourteen months in Acre, the sultan of Egypt offered peace, for wars with the Moslem powers engrossed his military strength. Edward gladly seized this occasion of leaving the holy land; for his force was too small for the achievement of great actions; and his father had implored his return to England. The hostile commanders signed accordingly a treaty for a ten years' suspension of arms: the lords of Syria disarrayed their warlike front, and the English soldiers quitted Palestine for their native country.

He makes peace with the Mamlukes.

July, 1272.

Vain effort of Gregory IX. for new Crusades.

At the time when Palestine began to breathe from the horrors of war, hope once more raised her head in consequence of the election to the chair of St. Peter falling upon Theobald, archdeacon of Liege. The choice of the cardinals was made known to him while he was in Palestine. He had witnessed with sorrow and indignation the dreadful extremities to which the Christians were reduced, and in the tumult of the passions his reason did not allow him to measure objects by their practicability. He impatiently transported himself to Italy, and so as

\* See the letter in Rymer, vol. 1. p. 437, new edition.

dent was his zeal that his endeavours for a Crusade even preceded his introduction to the Pontificate. The trumpet of war again was heard among the nations. The blast was however only faintly echoed. The republics of Pisa, Genoa and Venice, and the city of Marseilles, agreed to furnish a few galleys, and twenty-five thousand marks of silver were obtained from Philip the Hardy on mortgage of the Templars' estates in France. The masters of the military friars and red cross knights went to Rome, and convinced their papal friend that these succours would be too inconsiderable to enable the Christians to drive the infidels out of Palestine. Again was the Christian world assembled, and the council of Lyons decreed the obligation of a new crusade; that the clergy should pay a tenth of their revenues for six years, and that boxes should be placed in churches for the voluntary oblations of the laity. Rodolph of Habsburgh was wise in uniting himself with the Pope, and gaining papal support in his new dignity of emperor of Germany. Philip the French king, Michael Palæologus, and Charles, at once count of Anjou and king of the two Sicilies, also embraced the cause. Philip inherited the piety of his father; and Michael, who, thirteen years before had taken Constantinople from the Franks, was eager to embrace any occasion of obtaining

May, 1274.  
Council of  
Lyons.

CHAP. VI. was found that five hundred knights had been crossed, and the number of inferior people could not be counted. The holy warriors resolved to commence their voyage at Midsummer; but the king had anticipated all their proceedings; and he declared that if they dared to march without him, the thunders of the Vatican should be hurled against them. Some people submitted to, and others clamoured at this intemperate of papal interference; and the religious ardour of the most enthusiastic was cooled by the king's delays, and the news of the disastrous events in Egypt. The Pope and king were deaf to the reproaches of the French nation, that indifference to Christianity could be the only motive for obstructing the pious wishes of the English people.\* The king's poverty was over

the  
\* M. Paris, 670, 671. "About this time (1250) many thousands of the English were resolved for the holy war, and would needs have been gone, had not the king strictly guarded his ports, and kept his kingdom from running away out of doors. The king promised he would go with them; and hereupon got a mass of money from them for this journey. Some say that he never intended it; and that this only was a trick to stroke the skittish cow to get down her milk. His stubborn subjects said that they would tarry for his company till Midsummer, and no longer. Thus they weighed out their obedience with their own scales; and the king stood to their allowance. But hearing of the ill success of the French, both prince  
" and

the alleged cause of his remissness; and two years after his dissolution of the association of English knights, he endeavoured to extort money from the clergy, on the pretence of a journey to Syria. But they resisted his demands; reproached him with his avarice and violation of oaths; and warned him of the fate of St. Louis, who was at that time in the hands of the Saracens.\* But the military spirit of the people rose above the calculating duplicity of the king; and though he disregarded, yet they were deeply affected by the appeals and exhortations which the clergy, barons, and military orders made to him to perform his engagement with God.†

Anticipating the laurel of victory, or the crown of martyrdom, St. Louis spread his sails for the holy land.‡ Sixty thousand soldiers

A. D. 1270.  
Departure  
of Louis IX.

and people altered their resolution, who had come too late to help the French in their distress, and too soon to bring themselves into the same misery." Fuller, History of the Holy War, book iv. ch. 17.

\* M. Paris, 717, 720, &c.

† Rymer, i. 308, 321. In 1252, however, Henry wrote to the three great military orders that he would go to the holy land at the end of four years, i. 282.

‡ Like the two preceding Crusades, the ninth and last great transmarine expedition was partly composed of Englishmen and partly of Frenchmen. My authorities are Sarnus, William de Nangis, Matthew of Westminster, Wikes,

CHAP. VI. The knights that it procured, them a safe and honourable retreat to the neighbouring town of Tortosa, and the sultan, dreading even the possibility of future opposition, razed the fortress.

1287.

1289.  
Progress of  
the Mam-  
lukes.

With rapid and certain steps the power of the Latins approached its fatal termination. The city of Tripoli, that last remaining satellite of the kingdom of Jerusalem, was taken; its houses were burnt, its works dismantled, and its people murdered or retained in slavery. Acre once more became the principal possession of the Christians. The sultan concluded a treaty of peace with Henry II. of Cyprus, who had driven away the lieutenants and soldiers of Charles, and had been acknowledged king of Jerusalem.\* Nothing but total ruin could quench the heroic spirit of those cavaliers, who thought that to fall in the ensanguined field was the height of glory and virtue. Undismayed by the victories of the sultan, the grand master of the military friars took the occasion of the cessation of hostilities, and crossed the Mediterranean, in order to infuse his martial spirit into the people of the west. Pope Nicholas IV. heard with coldness the dismal tale. He declined

\* Sanutus, lib. iii. pars 12. cap. xx. De Guignes, livre xxi. In the year 1287, two years before the loss of Tripoli, Bohemond VII. count of that place died.

offered to open the treasury of St. Peter for the advancement of the Christian cause; and he gave his noble friend only fifteen hundred men, the outpourings of Italy. Circular letters were sent to the different European potentates, but the light which once shone upon the holy cause had waned; cavaliers no longer thronged round the cross; and the grand master was compelled to return to Palestine, accompanied only by his Italian banditti. When they arrived at Acre, the city was in the greatest state of turbulence. Within its walls were crowded the wretched remains of those kingdoms and principalities which had been won by the blood of the west. Every distinct people occupied a particular division, and, in the assertion of individual privileges, general interests were forgotten.\*

THE  
Old Fuller has given a faithful picture of the state of Acre. "In it were some of all countries; so that he who had lost his nation, might find it here. Most of them had appeal courts to decide their causes in, and the plenty of judges caused the scarcity of justice, malefactors appealing to a trial in the courts of their own country. It was sufficient innocence for any offender in the Venetian court that he was a Venetian. Personal acts were entitled national; and made the cause of the country. Outrages were every where practised, no where punished; as if to spare divine revenge the pains of overtaking them, they would go forth and meet it. At the same time, they were in fitters about prosecuting their titles to this city, no fewer

CHAP. VI.

The Mamlukes of Egypt regarded, with an eye of fanatical hatred and rapacious ambition, the shelter of the Christian powers. The principles of Islamism would have justified the sultan in making war; but the criminal conduct of the pope gave him secular reasons for commencing hostilities. Acre was crowded with people beyond its means of support, and some of the wretched inhabitants robbed and tortured the Mussulman merchants who occasionally visited the city with provisions, under the protection of the acknowledged friendship which existed between the Egyptians and the Christians.\* No redress was made for this violation of justice. The sultan died before his preparations of vengeance were completed, but his son Khatib was not less anxious than his father to exterminate the infidel miscreants. Nearly two hundred thousand Mamluke Tartars of Egypt marched into Palestine,

\* fewer than the Venetians, Genese, Pisans, Florentines, the kings of Cyprus and Sicily, the agents for the kings of France and England, the prince of Antioch, the patriarch of Jerusalem, the masters of the Templars and Hospitallers, and (whom I should have named first) the legate of his Holiness, all at once, with much violence, contending about the right of right nothing; the title to the kingdom of Jerusalem, and command of the city, the bees, making the greatest humming and buzzing in the hive when now ready to leave it." Holy War, book iv. ch. xxii.

\* G. Villani.

time, and encamped before Acre, exactly on the same ground upon which a century before assembled Europe had stood. To avoid the dreadful consequences of war, a large part of the population embarked in the numerous vessels which at that time rode at anchor in the harbour, and the defence of the place was left to the care of about twelve thousand soldiers, chiefly the knights and sergeants of the military orders. The garrison was speedily reinforced by a few hundred men, headed by Henry II. of Cyprus, who boasted the ideal title of king of Jerusalem. But there was no magic in the name of royalty, and in this exigent state of affairs, the troops looked for the direction of Peter de Beaujeau, grand master of the Templars. He accepted the charge, and his first action of rejecting the bribes of the sultan inspired the animating conviction, that Acre would never fall in consequence of the treachery of the commander. But the Mamlukes were equal in valour, and superior in discipline, to their foes, and their number was appallingly formidable. Unable to defend, with equal effect, the circuit of walls, the Christians beheld their towers yielding to the mines and battering rams. The "cursed tower" fell; the king, whose station was at that part of the fortifications, requested the Teutonic knights to re-

CHAP. VI.

Last siege  
of Acre.



have his attenuated band, and he promised to return to his post on the following morning. But the pusillanimous monarch fled to the port and seizing a few ships, sailed to Cyprus. With the morn, the Mamlukes renewed the attack. Most of the German cavaliers died upon the breach; the others slowly left the walls, and the firmness of their little phalanx checked the foe. The Hospitalians chased back the Mamlukes, and even forced them headlong into the ditch. But the sultan was prodigal of blood. His battalions marched to the breach, and in a few hours the entry into the city was repeatedly lost and won by the Christians and infidels.

While Acre was bleeding with these vicissitudes, the master of the Hospitalians and his knights secretly left the city, made a short circuit, and rushed into the enemy's camp. The sultan, a skilful soldier, was not surprised, and the knights were repulsed. The chief of the military friars received the melancholy news, that the grand master\* of the Templars had been killed by a poisoned arrow; that most of his

\* The grand master of the Templars receives high praise from G. Villani. The hero every night repaired the breaches in the "cursed tower;" but he was at length killed by the enemy, and, in consequence of his death, confusion again arose, and the city was lost. G. Villani, lib. vii. c. 144.

His valiant soldiers had been slain, and that the city had fallen. Under the cover of a few cross-bow men, the knights of St. John, seven only were the remnant, embarked, and left for ever the scene of their virtue and their valour. Their brethren in arms, the Templars, were equally brave, and their fate was equally disastrous. Their resistance was so firm, that the sultan was compelled to promise them a free and honourable departure. But the insults of some low Saracenic people irritated the cavaliers; the sword again was drawn, and such of the Templars as survived the conflict, fled into the interior country. The unarmed population of Acre hurried to the coast; but the elements co-operated with the devastating spirit of the Turks, and the tempestuous waves refused shelter to the fugitives. While gnashing with despair, the people beheld their town in flames. The ruthless hand of death fell upon them, and the sea-shore of Palestine again drank torrents of Christian blood.

Tyre, Beritus, and other towns, were awed into submission. The Turks swept all Palestine, and murdered or imprisoned all the Christians who could not fly to Cyprus. The memory of the Templars is embalmed, for the last struggle for the holy land was made by the red-cross knights. Such as escaped from Acre

Total loss  
of the holy  
land.

CHAP. VI. went to Sis, in Armenia. A Muselman general drove them to the island of Tortosa, whence they escaped to Cyprus, and the cry of religious war no longer rung through Palestine.\*

\* Sanutus, lib. iii. pars xii. ch. xxii. xxiii. The history of the siege of Acre, by a contemporary, in Martenne, Vet. Scrip. Amp. Coll. vol. i. p. 782. De Guignes, Hist. des Huns, &c. livre xxi. Lusignano, Istoria dell' Isola di Cipro, p. 55, &c. Palestine was not more celebrated for virtue at the close of the Crusades, than at any period during their continuance. Speaking of the loss of Acre, G. Villani says, "Et questo pericolo non fu senza grande et giusto giudicio di Dio, che quella città era piena di più peccatori huomini, e fouine d' ogni disoluto peccato, che terra, che fosse tra' Christiani." G. Villani, lib. vii. c. 144; p. 387; vol. i.

THE CRUSADING SPIRIT. FATE OF THE MILITARY ORDERS.

CHAP. VII.

EXTINCTION OF THE CRUSADING SPIRIT. FATE OF THE MILITARY ORDERS.

*State of Europe at the close of the Crusades..... Reasons of the ceasing of Crusades..... Last appearances of the crusading spirit..... King Henry IV. of England..... Harry Monmouth..... Fate of the military orders..... The Teutonic knights..... The knights of St. Lazarus..... Knights of St. John..... Imprisonment of the Templars in France..... Proceedings against the Templars at Paris..... Process against the Templars in England..... In Germany... In Italy..... Council at Vienne..... The order suppressed..... Confiscation of its estates..... Execution of the grand master..... Innocence of the Templars..... Causes of the suppression of the order.*

THE loss of the holy land did not fill Europe with those feelings of grief and indignation, which the fall of Jerusalem, an hundred years before, had occasioned. The flame of fanaticism had slowly burnt out. During the thirteenth century, the territorial possessions of the Christians in Palestine gradually diminished; the expeditions and reinforcements were in consequence less vigorous, for, both politically and

State of Europe at the close of the crusades.

CHAP. VII. personally, the people of the west declined in  
 their interest in respect of the affairs of the east.  
 1292. Pope Nicholas IV. endeavoured to revive holy  
 undertakings; but the kings of Europe were  
 deaf or disobedient. After his arrival in Eng-  
 land, prince Edward had wished to return to  
 Palestine,\* and continue his military career, but  
 he had just entered into the agitated sea of Scot-  
 tish politics when Acre fell into the hands of the  
 Egyptians. The delivery of the holy land was,  
 however, a phantom always dear to his imagi-  
 nation, as opening an ample subject for re-  
 ligious and knightly enterprise. In the decline  
 of life he vowed a second expedition, but, find-  
 ing his dissolution approach, he devoted the  
 prodigious sum of thirty thousand pounds for the  
 equipment and support of a proud corps of  
 knights that were to carry his heart to Pales-  
 tine.† Philip IV. of France could never be  
 awakened by any summons to religion and  
 honour: and since the extinction of the Capet-  
 tian family, the succession to the German  
 throne had been so irregular, that the emperors  
 were perpetually involved in civil dissensions.  
 The politics of the commercial states of Italy  
 did not accord with religious wars. Pisa had  
 fallen

\* Rymer, i. 744, 749, new edition.

† See note R.

fallen before Genoa. The conquering town chap. vii.  
 thought not of Syria; for it had enjoyed, since  
 the Greeks had regained Constantinople, the  
 supremacy of the commerce of the Black Sea.  
 Amalfi was allied to the Grecian emperor,  
 Venice sought the friendship of the Mussulmans.  
 The Mamlukes gave their Christian brothers a  
 church, an exchange, and a magazine in Alex-  
 andria; and the Venetians carried on the lucra-  
 tive but disgraceful trade of furnishing the  
 Egyptian market with male and female slaves  
 from Georgia and Circassia.\*

From

\* Dante reprobates his contemporaries for joining the  
 Saracens, and also for carrying on trade with the enemies of  
 the Christian name. If Boniface VIII. be the Pope alluded  
 to in the following extract, the censure seems misplaced; he  
 had endeavoured to create a new Crusade.

ed. 19. *Le principe de' nuovi Farisei,*

Avendo guerra presso a Laterano,

E non con Saracin, nè con Giudei,

Che ciascun suo nemico era Cristiano,

102 E nessuno era stato a vincere Acri,

202 Ne mercatante in terra di Soldano.

1028 Dell' Inferno, canto 27.

411 The chief of the new Pharisees meantime,

Waging his warfare near the Lateran,

Not with the Saracens, or Jews, (his foes

1028 All Christians were, nor against Acre one

Had fought, nor traffick'd in the Soldan's land.)

Cary's Translation.

Villani

CHAP. XIII.

Reasons of  
the ceasing  
of Crusades.

From the commencement, till past the middle of the fourteenth century, the Pope repeatedly sounded the charge; but the vast numbers of cases disregarded the summons of its rightful instructor; and it was evident that, although the papal rulers could fan, they could not create the sacred flame. Yet the world did not repeat

the same error.

Villier supports the idea that the mercantile Christians of Egypt aided the Saracens. The instances of treachery alluded to by Dante, I am not able to support, by any historical testimony.

There was some pretence for the preaching of a Crusade by Pope Boniface VIII. in the year 1300. Cazan, the mogulistan of Persia, resolved to exterminate the Mamlukes of Egypt. He allied himself with the kings of Georgia, Armenia, and Cyprus. In 1299 the fortune of war smiled on the allies; but still the success not being so great as what he had expected, Cazan sent to the Pope, soliciting the more powerful alliance of the princes of the west, and agreeing that when Palestine was recovered, it should be partitioned by the Christians. Philip the Fair and Boniface were in high dispute respecting the limits of ecclesiastical and royal jurisdiction; and therefore the project, though warmly patronized by the Pope, proved abortive. In the interim, the tide of victory flowed in favour of the Egyptians. Cazan died about the year 1303, just when he had summoned on his side the Christian princes of Cyprus and Armenia, who was about to attack the Mamlukes. I cannot find any mention in Haithon or Abulfeda of the common story, that during the reign of Cazan the Hospitallers and other knights landed on the shores of Palestine, and marched to and occupied Jerusalem for a short time.

of the mischiefs it had occasioned, or think that was anything but homicide and robbery. It was not that people were less military or less superstitious than before, that they could not be stimulated to new efforts, for arms were as much the delight and occupation of Europe in the fourteenth century, as they had been in the twelfth; and two ages had thickened rather than removed the cloud of corruption which enveloped the pure form of religion. But the idea of the impossibility of ultimate success had long been gradually and silently stealing over Europe; and the world was weary of consuming its blood and treasure in the pursuit of barren honour. The great Crusade in Egypt, in the year 1218, was almost the last occasion when barons and knights, as individuals, led their vassals to the holy war. Great efforts indeed were often made by sovereigns; but there were few of these popular expeditions to Palestine, which distinguished the first century and a half of the Crusades. At the time when the loss of the holy land became known in Europe, the people had not recovered from the astonishment and terror with which the victories of Zinghis Khan and his successors had filled the west. Part of Russia, the whole of Poland, Silesia, Moravia, Hungary, and all the countries to the eastward of the Adriatic Sea, fell a prey to barbaric desolation,



CHAP. VII. Several of the Popes attempted in vain to soften the ferocity of these new foes; but the papal legates were dismissed with the tremendous command for Rome herself to submit her neck to the Mogul yoke. The western world knew indeed that most of the Tartars were pagans; and although some sanguine spirits conceived the hope of their powerful union with the Christians against the Muselmans, yet the circumstance of their appearance in Europe as conquerors, created a general dread of foreign nations; and as the Sarmatian states, as well as some Christian ones, floated into the abyss, the people dreaded the new enemies whom they should have to encounter in their transmarine expeditions. The impracticability of preserving a Latin dominion in that city in Palestine, which was as dear to the Muselmans as to the Christians, would have had more influence over the latter, if they had been less devoutly fond of pilgrimages,\* and if veneration for religious places had

\* Indeed, after the first Crusade pilgrimages encreased. They were undertaken for purposes of penitence and devotion. The church of St. James in Galicia; and the tombs of the apostles in Rome, were favourite objects as well as Jerusalem. At the close of the thirteenth century, the festival of the jubilee was instituted, and hundreds of thousands of persons repaired to Rome for the purpose of receiving a general indemnity for past offences. Pilgrimages, as acts  
of

had been softened into respectful regard. The CHAPTER  
 fact was also opposed by some of the best feelings of the heart. The connexions of kindred and country bound Syria to Europe; and the knights of the west acknowledged the claims which their relations in the holy land urged upon them for succour. By marriage and descent, too, the rights to property in the Asiatic ~~land~~ kingdom were often enjoyed by Europeans; and in many respects Palestine resembled a colony of Europe. The continuance of Crusades was therefore a natural circumstance. Hope of success would soon have died away, the healing influence of time would have removed the moral epidemic, if repeated and unsuccessful efforts had been made for the redemption of the holy land. But a fanatical ambition was fostered by partial success; and when Jerusalem flourished as a Christian city, the pride of possession became the new and master-spring of action; and honour called for the preservation of sanguinary conquests.

It  
 of external religion, have ever been defended by writers of the Roman Catholic communion. Therefore Milton, in his *Limbo of Vanity*, says, with contempt and indignation,

Here pilgrims roam, that stray'd so far to seek  
 In Golgotha him dead, who lives in Heaven."

*Paradise Lost*, iii. 476.

**CHAP. VII.** It was the policy of the church of Rome to encourage the spirit of crusading, because they who skilfully administer to public prejudice, become in time masters of the people. In unenlightened days, ecclesiastical influence ended in spiritual tyranny. Until the time of Innocent III. the Popes pursued this clear road to power; but, as we have already seen, that aspiring prelate taxed the clergy immediately, and the people indirectly, on pretence of defending Palestine; and from that moment papal influence began to decline. The money enriched the coffers of St. Peter; the world was indignant at this misapplication of its contributions: and as devices were made at the calls of the wishes and wants of the pontiffs, and not always at the times when the cord of sympathy was strung, the people, both clergy and laity, grew weary of the occasion and the pretence of taxation. On another part of the subject, too, the avarice of the Popes broke the spirit of crusading. Among the encouragements to the first sacred war was the decree of the council of Clermont, that a journey to the holy land should be as efficacious to the spiritual health of a pilgrim as all the penances which the church could enjoin: and we have the evidence of so late a writer as Villehardouin,\* the great historian of the fifth Crusade,

\* See page 99, ante.

Gravel, that the promise of this indulgence sold, even in his days, considerable influence. Both the rapacious clergy thought that that which was granted could be sold, and that money as well as travelling might be taken in interchange for remission of canonical penances. The prelates began this scandalous traffic, but it was soon snatched from their hands by the Popes; and the successors of St. Peter made the indulgences of higher value than the humble bishops could pretend to do, by including the attribution of punishments in a future world in the pardons which they sold. While the Popes levied taxes on postence of succouring the holy land, it was their policy to encourage the fashion of crusading: but their avarice was also tempted by the profitable sale of indulgences, a traffic which was at once the cause and the effect of the decline of the holy wars \*. Indul-

\* The Christians in the holy land frequently complained against the Popes for granting indulgences for wars with the Germans and French. They said that the only cross which the Romans regarded was the one on the French coin. *Le Pape prodigue des indulgences à ceux qui s'arment contre les Allemands. Ses légats montrent parmi nous leur extrême convoitise; nos croix cèdent aux croix empreintes sur les toirnois, et l'on échange la sainte croisade contre la guerre de Lombardie; j'aurai donc le courage de dire de nos légats qu'ils vendent Dieu, et qu'ils*

CHAP. VII. gences could be obtained on easier terms than by making long and perilous journeys to Palestine.

Another great cause of ruin to the Crusades had its birth at Rome. Through the whole of the thirteenth century the Popes frequently armed the people of the west, both against heretics and against the political enemies of the papal see: and, in each of these cases, the privileges of Crusaders were granted to orthodox warriors. Clement IV. went one step further; for, in the course of the disputes between Charles of Anjou and Manfred for the throne of the two Sicilies, the Pope actually diverted from their religious purpose, to his own secular objects, thousands of pilgrims who had been crossed. It is needless to dilate upon the actual injury to Palestine, and the scandal and ridicule which were cast on holy wars, when the soldiers of the cross became the regular army of the court of Rome.)

(Freedom from debt and taxes, and other general privileges of Christian warriors, had but little influence in keeping alive the sacred flame.)

The

“qu'ils vendent les indulgences pour de coupables richesses.” Le Chevalier du Temple, cited in Raynouard, *Choix des Poésies Originales des Troubadours*, vol. ii. p. 75. Introd.

The exemption from taxes was seldom regarded by the civil authorities, and was never permitted to be extended to levies on the land. For crimes, and also for questions relating to landed property, people might be impleaded in secular courts.\*

CHAP. VII.

Though Europe in general felt that in the fall of Acre all was lost, yet despair did not immediately complete its triumph, for chivalry and policy sometimes endeavoured to revive the religious spark. (If Pope John XXII. had not been too open in the display of his avarice, and too prodigal in the commutation of vows for money, the knights of Germany would once more have fought under the glorious ensign of the cross.†) A threatened invasion from England (A. D. 1328) deterred Philip de Valois from leaving his country‡ for Palestine, and a

Last appearances of the crusading spirit.

VOL. II.

U

large

\* The property of a Crusader was vested in the church during his absence. The claims of his creditors were suspended. As this was a subject of inconvenience, people found it necessary, or were compelled, to resign all crusading privileges. This renunciation appears in charters dated in 1272, but it was probably of earlier use.

† Baluzii, Vitæ Pont. Avig. I. 15, 594. II. 552.

‡ Some successes of the Turks upon the Christians in Armenia filled all Europe with alarm. Philip king of France and the king of Arragon were at Rome; the Pope preached before them, and exhorted them to put on the cross against the Saracens. His eloquence prevailed, and various other

CHAP. VII. large body of Crusaders was 'dispersed' when (A. D. 1364) John the Good of France died, on whom the Pope intended to have conferred the title of commander of the new Crusaders.\*

Henry IV.  
of England.

The politic Henry IV.† of England wished to "busy giddy minds with foreign quarrels," in order to divert his people from looking too nearly into his state, and to retain their newly sworn allegiance. Both his maritime and military preparations were considerable; but the hand of nature stopped him, before he could attempt to commence his new religious career.

His other potentates, then at Rome for the celebration of Easter, were moved also by the call to devotion and valour. The preparations of the French king were more extensive than those of any of his predecessors in the holy wars. The maritime towns in the south of France equipped a navy, and three years' provisions were collected for forty thousand soldiers. Philip negotiated with Hungary, Venice, and Genoa for the safe conduct of the pilgrims, whose number, it is said, was three hundred thousand. English politics, however, rendered the design abortive. Froissart, vol. i. ch. 26 and 27.

\* Baluzius, *passim*.

† Besides Henry IV. when young, had endeavoured to implant Christianity in Lithuania *vi et armis*. After his accession to the English throne, he gained the friendship of the clergy by aiding them in putting down the followers of Wickliff. He prudently united himself to the papal see, and naturally thought of Crusades.

‡ Holingshed (vol. ii. part i. p. 529, &c.) does not seem to

His son Henry V. pursuing his father's principles, though not his details of policy, took advantage of the civil discords of France, and the peers of England "wasted the memory of former days" in the vain attempt of endeavouring to subjugate a rival nation. If length of life, and national peace, had been allotted to Henry Montmouth, it is more than probable that he would have "commenced new broils in stronds afar remote." In his last moments he declared it to be a Christian duty to build the walls of Jerusalem, and avowed the long concealed purpose of his breast to have led an army to Palestine, if he had lived in times of political tranquillity.\*

CHAP. VII.

Henry V.

§ 2

Such

to credit Fabian's story that Henry, finding himself in the Jerusalem chamber, exclaimed, "Praise be given to God, for now I know I shall die here in this chamber, according to the prophecy of me declared that I should depart this life in Jerusalem." A story of this description had been flying about the world, and was occasionally applied to public characters. Pope Silvester II. had been warned that he should not die till he had celebrated mass at Jerusalem. The Pope mistook this for the city so called, unwittingly celebrated mass at Rome, in a church named Jerusalem, and being deceived by the equivocation of the name, met a sudden and wretched end. Harris' *Philological Inquiries*, part iii. ch. 8.

\* Monstrelet, vol. v. p. 371, 8vo. Johnes' edit. Henry V.

acted



## CHAP. VII.

Fate of the  
military  
orders.

Teutonic  
knights.

Such were the last appearances of that martial phrenzy which so long agitated Europe: and here the history of the holy wars would naturally close, if curiosity did not suggest an enquiry into some of those military and religious orders which arose from the spirit of pilgrimages and crusades, and whose existence forms one of the most prominent characteristics of the middle ages. The knights of the Teutonic order were fixed in their conquest of Prussia, some years before the loss of the holy land. Their love of war was not extinguished: they carried both the sword and the Gospel into Pomerania; and the eastern part of that country was definitively ceded to the order by a treaty of peace in the year 1343. The town of Dantzic, the capital of the new conquest, was considerably aggrandised under the dominion of the knights, and became one of the principal places of commerce on the Baltic. Pressed forward again by religion and ambition, they made war on the infidel Lithuanians,\* but it was not till the beginning

acted like his father respecting the clergy. As he had no objection to broil or roast the Lollards, he could not have been averse from murdering the Saracens.

\* It was less difficult to travel into the north of Germany than to cross the seas to Palestine; the idolaters too were not so invincible as the Turks. When the military men of Europe wanted employment, they joined their arms to those of

ning of the fifteenth century, and after rivers of blood had flowed, that the Pagans lost their independence, and relinquished their national superstition. But the oppressive government of the knights; their intestine divisions; and their heavy imposts, the unhappy result of wars continually reviving, encouraged the nobility of Prussia and Pomerania to confederate, and to seek the protection of the kings of Poland. The torch of war was rekindled, the knights were defeated, and by the peace of Thorn in 1466 all Pomerania, and indeed all the country which is generally called Polish Prussia, was ceded to Poland. The order was allowed to

CHAP. VII.

U 3

preserve

of the Teutonic knights. Chaucer describes his knight as having gained renown in Pruce (Prussia), in Lettawe (Lithuania), and in Ruce (Russia). Prologue to the Canterbury Tales, v. 52-55.

- " Full worthy was he in his lordes werre
- " And therto had he ridden, no man ferre,
- " As well in Christendom as in hethenesse,
- " And ever honoured for his worthinesse.
- " At Alisandre he was whan it was wonne,
- " Ful often time he hadde the bord begonne\*
- " Aboven alle nations in Pruce.
- " In Lettowe hadde he reysed† and in Ruce,
- " No Christen man so oft of his degree."

\* He had been placed at the head of the table on account of his great merit.

† Made a military expedition.

CHAP. VII. preserve the west of Prussia by the tenure of feudal service to the kings of Poland. The idea of subjection was odious to high-minded cavaliers, and at the commencement of the sixteenth century the grand master, Albert of Brandenburg, asserted in the field the independence of his order. The equality of the two powers was manifested by a suspension of arms upon liberal conditions, but religion changed the face of politics, the sworn foe of infidelity listened to and adopted the doctrines of Luther, tore himself from his order, and agreed to live in perpetual friendship with the king of Poland, by a treaty concluded with him at Cracovia, the 8th of April, 1525. The bold avowals of liberty and independence were subdued by the offer of an hereditary crown, and Albert of Brandenburg accepted Teutonic Prussia from his uncle Sigismund I. king of Poland, on those conditions of fealty which he had before pretended his honour could never submit to. The Teutonic knights thus lost Prussia; their name appears on few occasions in the history of Europe, and the order became only a "cheap defence of nations."\*

On

\* *L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, vol. iii. p. 538, &c. Koch, *Tableau des Révolutions de l'Europe*, vol. i. p. 203, 286, 410-413. vol. ii. p. 139, &c. "Les Polonois" (M. Koch judiciously observes) "en se débarrassant de l'ordre Teutonique"

On the ruin of the Christian cause in Palestine the hospital of St. Lazarus, was destroyed. Various Christian princes had enriched the order: but as St. Louis and his successors were its greatest and most efficient friends, the seat of its power was in France. In the course of time the disease of leprosy\* became less common, CHAP. VII.  
Knights of  
St. Lazarus.

u 4

“ tonique qui leur avoit fait ombrage, et en lui substituant  
 “ la maison de Brandebourg, ne croyoient pas se donner  
 “ un voisin encore plus dangereux, qui conspireroit un jour  
 “ la ruine et l’anéantissement de la Pologne.” Vol. ii.  
 p. 141.

\* It is generally said that leprosy was introduced into Europe by the Crusaders on their return from the holy land. This is incorrect: the disease was known much earlier, for in the year 757, at a council held at Compiègne, leprosy was allowed as a sufficient cause to dissolve a marriage. Of the fact that leprosy existed in the west long before the æra of the holy wars there are several proofs in Muratori, *Antiquitates Italiae, Med. Ævi. Diss.* 16. vol. i. p. 906–908. Of course the Crusades increased the number of cases of leprosy. Ophthalmy was another disease more common in Europe during the Crusades than before them, because the intercourse was greater between Europe and Asia during the holy wars, than in any commercial æra. The great number of Crusaders who returned blind from Egypt, made St. Louis found an hospital at Paris for them. To the calamities already mentioned as occasioned or augmented by the warfare between the East and West, the small-pox must be added, as, according to the best opinions, that disorder was introduced into Europe by the Saracens.

CHAP. VII. and the cavaliers of St. Lazarus relaxed the severity of their institutions. Pope Innocent VIII., in the year 1490, endeavoured to suppress the order. In Italy, perhaps, he succeeded, but not in any other country ; and the order subsisted in different degrees of power till the pontificates of Leo X. and Pius IV. who restored to it all its privileges. In the days of Gregory XV. the Italian part of the order was joined to the new order of St. Maurice, and the duke of Savoy was appointed its head. The bull was resisted by the knights of France, and till the reign of Henry IV. they were independent, and elected their own grand masters. But that monarch created a new institution called the order of the Holy Virgin of Mount Carmel, and for the purpose of investing it with dignity he destroyed the unity of the knights of St. Lazarus. All their wealth and their titles were added to the new society, and their ancient ordinances were revoked.\*

As war with the infidels was the great duty and passion of the military orders, and as their glory was closely involved with the fate of Palestine, their martial energies were not quickly damped

\* Touissaint, *Mém. de l'ordre Notre Dame de Mont Carmel*, &c. and Helyot, *Hist. des Ordres*, vol. i. chap. 32 and 54.

damped by the apparent success of their foes.\* CHAP.VII.  
 After the loss of Acre, the knights of St. John Knights of  
 and the Temple, from every preceptory and St. John.  
 commandery in Europe, flocked to Cyprus, im-  
 patient for glory and revenge. Bulls for a new 1292.  
 crusade were issued from Rome by pope Nicho-  
 las IV., but Europe would not respond to the  
 wishes of the papal court. The military friars  
 soon quitted their settlements in Cyprus, for  
 the king denied them those privileges which  
 they enjoyed in other countries. The grand  
 master of the Hospitallers gained the friendship  
 and the purse of pope Clement V. and drew a  
 flattering picture of Christian prosperity, if the  
 cavaliers of St. John could set up their banners  
 in some island in the Mediterranean. Rhodes  
 was fixed upon. Fifteen years subsequently to  
 the loss of Acre, a new crusade was published,  
 and the volunteers were invited to repair to  
 Brundisium. The king of Sicily and the repub-  
 lic of Genoa furnished transports. The grand  
 master headed the army, but it was not until  
 after they had sailed, that the Crusaders knew  
 the object of the armament. Rhodes was at  
 that

\* “ What though the field be lost ?

“ All is not lost ; the unconquerable will

“ And study of revenge, immortal hate,

“ And courage never to submit or yield.”

CHAP. VII. that time in the power, partly of the Greeks and partly of the Saracens. The soldiers landed; many battles were fought, and the army of the invaders was at last reduced to the military friars. Their undaunted chief borrowed money from the Italian bankers, hired new soldiers, recommenced his attacks, and the whole island submitted to his authority. The subsequent history of the knights of St. John is interwoven with the general history of Europe, and is not within the scope of the present work.\*

Aug. 1310.

While

\* It may, however, be interesting to notice the fate of the order in England. The knights were of high consequence, for in the time of Edward IV. the prior was the first lay baron, and had a seat in parliament. By statute 32 Henry VIII. ch. xxiv. the order, both in England and Ireland, was dissolved, on the alleged reason, that the knights adhered to a foreign jurisdiction. A yearly pension of one thousand pounds was settled on Sir William Weston, the prior. Seventeen knights had annuities, varying from two hundred to thirty pounds each, and some of the goods and chattels of the priories. Ten novices had also ten pounds a-year each. The amount of the pensions was two thousand eight hundred and seventy pounds, nearly the annual value of the estates. The pensions were said to be handsome, on account of the high birth and honourable breeding of the knights. The reader must be surprised at the small number of the knights in England; and as the Hospitalians had been enriched by the property of the red-cross knights, their estates were not surprisingly large. The prior died on the very day (7th May, 1540) of the dissolution of the order. "His hospital,"

says,

While the military friars were planning the acquisition of an equivalent to their loss in Palestine, most of the red-cross knights gradually left Cyprus, returned to their different commanderies, and lived in security and indolence. But circumstances soon made the Templars repent that they had not, like the Hospitallers, attempted a renewal of hostilities with the infidels. Philip the Fair, king of France, acquainted Pope Clement the fifth, that the order of the Knights Templars had been accused of heresy and various other crimes against religion and morals. Some members\* had charged their fraternity with

CHAP. VII.  
The Templars.

says Fuller, "and earthly tabernacle were buried together, "and gold, though a great cordial, could not cure a broken "heart." The monastery at Bucklands was dissolved, and the prioress received from the king a gratuity of twenty-five pounds and the grant of a life annuity of fifty pounds. Fuller, Church History, p. 344, 345. Willis's History of the Mitred Abbies, vol. ii. p. 129, 134. Weaver, Fun. Mon. p. 431. Queen Mary restored the order, and made Sir Thomas Tresham lord prior, in return for some important services which he had rendered to her. Queen Elizabeth, however, completely and finally suppressed the society. Stow's London, edit. 1720, book iv. p. 62, 63. Bridges' History of Northamptonshire, vol. ii. p. 69.

\* Accounts vary respecting the names and number of the knights who made the accusation. It is agreed, however, on all hands, that the men who were so zealous in the cause of virtue were themselves deeply criminal. Baluzius, Vitæ Pontif. Avig. tom. i. p. 99. Villani, Storie, lib. iii. cap. 92. p. 429.



CHAP. VII. preserve the west of Prussia by the tenure of feudal service to the kings of Poland. The idea of subjection was odious to high-minded cavaliers, and at the commencement of the sixteenth century the grand master, Albert of Brandenburg, asserted in the field the independence of his order. The equality of the two powers was manifested by a suspension of arms upon liberal conditions, but religion changed the face of politics, the sworn foe of infidelity listened to and adopted the doctrines of Luther, tore himself from his order, and agreed to live in perpetual friendship with the king of Poland, by a treaty concluded with him at Cracovia, the 8th of April, 1525. The bold avowals of liberty and independence were subdued by the offer of an hereditary crown, and Albert of Brandenburg accepted Teutonic Prussia from his uncle Sigismund I. king of Poland, on those conditions of fealty which he had before pretended his honour could never submit to. The Teutonic knights thus lost Prussia; their name appears on few occasions in the history of Europe, and the order became only a "cheap defence of nations."\*

On

\* *L'Art de vérifier les Dates*, vol. iii. p. 538, &c. Koch, *Tableau des Révolutions de l'Europe*, vol. i. p. 203, 286, 410-413. vol. ii. p. 139, &c. "Les Polonois" (M. Koch judiciously observes) "en se débarrassant de l'ordre Teutonique"

On the ruin of the Christian cause in Palestine the hospital of St. Lazarus was destroyed. Various Christian princes had enriched the order: but as St. Louis and his successors were its greatest and most efficient friends, the seat of its power was in France. In the course of time the disease of leprosy\* became less common, and

CHAP. VII.

Knights of  
St. Laza-  
rus.

U 4

“ tonique qui leur avoit fait ombrage, et en lui substituant  
 “ la maison de Brandebourg, ne croyoient pas se donner  
 “ un voisin encore plus dangereux, qui conspireroit un jour  
 “ la ruine et l’anéantissement de la Pologne.” Vol. ii.  
 p. 141.

\* It is generally said that leprosy was introduced into Europe by the Crusaders on their return from the holy land. This is incorrect: the disease was known much earlier, for in the year 757, at a council held at Compiègne, leprosy was allowed as a sufficient cause to dissolve a marriage. Of the fact that leprosy existed in the west long before the æra of the holy wars there are several proofs in Muratori, *Antiquitates Italicæ*, Med. Ævi. Diss. 16. vol. i. p. 906–908. Of course the Crusades encreased the number of cases of leprosy. Ophthalmy was another disease more common in Europe during the Crusades than before them, because the intercourse was greater between Europe and Asia during the holy wars, than in any commercial æra. The great number of Crusaders who returned blind from Egypt, made St. Louis found an hospital at Paris for them. To the calamities already mentioned as occasioned or augmented by the warfare between the East and West, the small-pox must be added, as, according to the best opinions, that disorder was introduced into Europe by the Saracens.

CHAP. VII. and the cavaliers of St. Lazarus relaxed the severity of their institutions. Pope Innocent VIII., in the year 1490, endeavoured to suppress the order. In Italy, perhaps, he succeeded, but not in any other country ; and the order subsisted in different degrees of power till the pontificates of Leo X. and Pius IV. who restored to it all its privileges. In the days of Gregory XV. the Italian part of the order was joined to the new order of St. Maurice, and the duke of Savoy was appointed its head. The bull was resisted by the knights of France, and till the reign of Henry IV. they were independent, and elected their own grand masters. But that monarch created a new institution called the order of the Holy Virgin of Mount Carmel, and for the purpose of investing it with dignity he destroyed the unity of the knights of St. Lazarus. All their wealth and their titles were added to the new society, and their ancient ordinances were revoked.\*

As war with the infidels was the great duty and passion of the military orders, and as their glory was closely involved with the fate of Palestine, their martial energies were not quickly damped

\* Toussaint, *Mém. de l'ordre Notre Dame de Mont Carmel*, &c. and Helyot, *Hist. des Ordres*, vol. i. chap. 32 and 54.

damped by the apparent success of their foes.\* CHAP.VII.  
 After the loss of Acre, the knights of St. John Knights of  
 and the Temple, from every preceptory and St. John.  
 commandery in Europe, flocked to Cyprus, im-  
 patient for glory and revenge. Bulls for a new 1292.  
 crusade were issued from Rome by pope Nicho-  
 las IV., but Europe would not respond to the  
 wishes of the papal court. The military friars  
 soon quitted their settlements in Cyprus, for  
 the king denied them those privileges which  
 they enjoyed in other countries. The grand  
 master of the Hospitallers gained the friendship  
 and the purse of pope Clement V. and drew a  
 flattering picture of Christian prosperity, if the  
 cavaliers of St. John could set up their banners  
 in some island in the Mediterranean. Rhodes  
 was fixed upon. Fifteen years subsequently to  
 the loss of Acre, a new crusade was published,  
 and the volunteers were invited to repair to  
 Brundisium. The king of Sicily and the repub-  
 lic of Genoa furnished transports. The grand  
 master headed the army, but it was not until  
 after they had sailed, that the Crusaders knew  
 the object of the armament. Rhodes was at  
 that

\* “ What though the field be lost ?

“ All is not lost ; the unconquerable will

“ And study of revenge, immortal hate,

“ And courage never to submit or yield.”

CHAP. VII. and the cavaliers of St. Lazarus relaxed the severity of their institutions. Pope Innocent VIII., in the year 1490, endeavoured to suppress the order. In Italy, perhaps, he succeeded, but not in any other country ; and the order subsisted in different degrees of power till the pontificates of Leo X. and Pius IV. who restored to it all its privileges. In the days of Gregory XV. the Italian part of the order was joined to the new order of St. Maurice, and the duke of Savoy was appointed its head. The bull was resisted by the knights of France, and till the reign of Henry IV. they were independent, and elected their own grand masters. But that monarch created a new institution called the order of the Holy Virgin of Mount Carmel, and for the purpose of investing it with dignity he destroyed the unity of the knights of St. Lazarus. All their wealth and their titles were added to the new society, and their ancient ordinances were revoked.\*

As war with the infidels was the great duty and passion of the military orders, and as their glory was closely involved with the fate of Palestine, their martial energies were not quickly damped

\* Touissaint, *Mém. de l'ordre Notre Dame de Mont Carmel*, &c. and Helyot, *Hist. des Ordres*, vol. i. chap. 32 and 54.

damped by the apparent success of their foes.\* CHAP.VII.  
 After the loss of Acre, the knights of St. John Knights of  
 and the Temple, from every preceptory and St. John.  
 commandery in Europe, flocked to Cyprus, im-  
 patient for glory and revenge. Bulls for a new 1292.  
 crusade were issued from Rome by pope Nicho-  
 las IV., but Europe would not respond to the  
 wishes of the papal court. The military friars  
 soon quitted their settlements in Cyprus, for  
 the king denied them those privileges which  
 they enjoyed in other countries. The grand  
 master of the Hospitallers gained the friendship  
 and the purse of pope Clement V. and drew a  
 flattering picture of Christian prosperity, if the  
 cavaliers of St. John could set up their banners  
 in some island in the Mediterranean. Rhodes  
 was fixed upon. Fifteen years subsequently to  
 the loss of Acre, a new crusade was published,  
 and the volunteers were invited to repair to  
 Brundisium. The king of Sicily and the repub-  
 lic of Genoa furnished transports. The grand  
 master headed the army, but it was not until  
 after they had sailed, that the Crusaders knew  
 the object of the armament. Rhodes was at  
 that

\* " What though the field be lost ?

" All is not lost ; the unconquerable will

" And study of revenge, immortal hate,

" And courage never to submit or yield."

CHAP. VII. that time in the power, partly of the Greeks and partly of the Saracens. The soldiers landed; many battles were fought, and the army of the invaders was at last reduced to the military friars. Their undaunted chief borrowed money from the Italian bankers, hired new soldiers, recommenced his attacks, and the whole island submitted to his authority. The subsequent history of the knights of St. John is interwoven with the general history of Europe, and is not within the scope of the present work.\*

Aug. 1310.

While

\* It may, however, be interesting to notice the fate of the order in England. The knights were of high consequence, for in the time of Edward IV. the prior was the first lay baron, and had a seat in parliament. By statute 32 Henry VIII. ch. xxiv. the order, both in England and Ireland, was dissolved, on the alleged reason, that the knights adhered to a foreign jurisdiction. A yearly pension of one thousand pounds was settled on Sir William Weston, the prior. Seventeen knights had annuities, varying from two hundred to thirty pounds each, and some of the goods and chattels of the priories. Ten novices had also ten pounds a-year each. The amount of the pensions was two thousand eight hundred and seventy pounds, nearly the annual value of the estates. The pensions were said to be handsome, on account of the high birth and honourable breeding of the knights. The reader must be surprised at the small number of the knights in England; and as the Hospitalians had been enriched by the property of the red-cross knights, their estates were not surprisingly large. The prior died on the very day (7th May, 1540) of the dissolution of the order. "His hospital,"

says,

While the military friars were planning the acquisition of an equivalent to their loss in Palestine, most of the red-cross knights gradually left Cyprus, returned to their different commanderies, and lived in security and indolence. But circumstances soon made the Templars repent that they had not, like the Hospitallers, attempted a renewal of hostilities with the infidels. Philip the Fair, king of France, acquainted Pope Clement the fifth, that the order of the Knights Templars had been accused of heresy and various other crimes against religion and morals. Some members\* had charged their fraternity with

says Fuller, "and earthly tabernacle were buried together, "and gold, though a great cordial, could not cure a broken heart." The monastery at Bucklands was dissolved, and the prioress received from the king a gratuity of twenty-five pounds and the grant of a life annuity of fifty pounds. Fuller, Church History, p. 344, 345. Willis's History of the Mitred Abbies, vol. ii. p. 129, 134. Weaver, Fun. Mon. p. 431. Queen Mary restored the order, and made Sir Thomas Tresham lord prior, in return for some important services which he had rendered to her. Queen Elizabeth, however, completely and finally suppressed the society. Stow's London, edit. 1720, book iv. p. 62, 63. Bridges' History of Northamptonshire, vol. ii. p. 69.

\* Accounts vary respecting the names and number of the knights who made the accusation. It is agreed, however, on all hands, that the men who were so zealous in the cause of virtue were themselves deeply criminal. Baluzius, Vitæ Pontif. Avig. tom. i. p. 99. Villani, Storie, lib. iii. cap. 92. p. 429.



CHAP. VII with the different abominations of treachery, murder, idolatry, and Islamism. The Pope, in reply, correctly said, that these charges were incredible and unheard of.\* But, at length, overawed by the power, or seduced by the artifices of Philip, his Holiness assented to the necessity of an enquiry, and added, that if for their crimes the Templars should be punished, their estates must be applied to the religious purpose of succouring the holy land, and should not be converted to any secular object. Sanctioned then by the church, in his apparent wish

\* "Ad credendum quæ tunc dicebantur, cum quasi *Incredibilia et Impossibilia* viderentur, nostrum animum vix potuimus applicare, quia tamen plura incredibilia et *INAUDITA*, &c." Lettre de CLEMENT V. à PHILIPPE-le-Bel, de 9 kal. de Sept. an. 2 de son Pontificat. This extract I have made from a work by M. Raynouard, which I have found of much use in this part of my subject. The title of the work is, "Monumens Historiques relatifs à la Condamnation des Chevaliers du Temple et l'Abolition de leur Ordre. Paris, 1813." Of M. Raynouard's Tragedy of (the condemnation of) the Templars, I can say nothing in praise. The plot is meagre and uninteresting. Long speeches of middling poetry will not compensate for the want of delineation of character. Without incident and situation, there can be no dramatic effect, and, consequently, no display of the passions. The tragedy was acted with applause some years ago at Paris. For an analysis and a critical notice of it, see the Edinburgh Review, vol. ix. article 14.

for the execution of justice, Philip the Fair took the bold step of imprisoning all the Knights Templars whom his officers could discover in France, and of sequestering their property. The Pope was indignant that any authority, save that of Rome, should interfere with a military order, which was out of royal, or ordinary episcopal, jurisdiction ; but some signs of submission on the part of Philip restored harmony between the spiritual and temporal powers. The church was the nominal guardian of the sequestered estates ; but most of the actual administrators were subjects of the king. Clement then circulated a bull throughout Christendom, by which instrument of papal authority, nuntios and the resident clergy were commanded to enquire into the conduct of the knights. His Holiness says, that, pressed by public clamour, and by the declarations of the king, the barons, the clergy, and laity of France, he\* had examined seventy-two members of the order, and had found them all guilty, though in various degrees, of irreligion and immorality. The Pope also threatened with excommunication every person that harboured, or gave counsel

CHAP.VII.

Oct. 1307.  
Imprison-  
ment of the  
Templars  
in France.

\* The examinations were not made by the Pope himself, but by his cardinals and other officers.

## CHAP. VII.

Proceed-  
ings against  
the Tem-  
plars at  
Paris.

sel or money to, the knights.\* The Pope's commissioners at Paris summoned before them such of the members of the order as were in the city, and promised life, liberty, and fortune to those who would avow the crimes imputed to their society. The inquisitors even presented forged letters of the grand master, by which they were required to make the avowal. Such of the knights as yielded to blandishments and threats were pardoned, but the torture was applied to those who denied the charges, and thirty-six knights in Paris heroically braved the horrors of the rack, and maintained the innocence of the order, till death closed their sufferings and their virtue. Some survived the torture, and they were cast into prison and exposed to the most extreme miseries of hunger and thirst. Others confessed in the midst of corporeal agony,† and afterwards

\* “Nos enim omnes et singulos, cujuscunque præminentie sint, dignitatis, ordinis, conditionis, aut status, etiam si pontificali præfulgeant dignitate, qui supra dictis Templariis, vel eorum alicui, scienter, publice, vel occulte, præstabant, auxilium, consilium, vel favorem, &c. Excommunicationis sententia innodamus. Datum Tolosæ 3 Kal. Januarii Pontif. nostri anno quarto.”

† The cool and deliberate tormentors not only took an account of the words which fell from the knights when tormented, but even noted down their tears and their sighs. “Che il notario scrive non solamente tutte le riposte del reo,

afterwards recanted their confessions. The same scenes were acted in different parts of France. These proceedings were only preliminary to the decision which the commissioners were to make upon the general subject of the innocence or guilt of the French part of the order. The assembly met at Paris. James de Molai, the grand master of the society, was dragged from the prison into which the French king had thrown him, and was repeatedly importuned to confess the sins of himself and his brethren. He requested the consultory assistance of advocates; for he said that he was an illiterate knight, and more skilled in war than in forensic subtlety. But the court sternly denied his request, because in charges of heresy the accused persons were always acquitted or condemned without the aid of counsel. De Molai then defended his order from the general accusations of irreligion. He declared, that thrice a week they gave alms, and that no people had shed more blood than they had shed for the defence of Christianity. The commissioners replied, that, without faith, all their good works and

“ *suo, ma anco tutti i ragionamenti e moti che farà e tutte le parole che egli proferirà né tormenti, anzi tutti i sospiri tutti le grida, tutti i lamenti e la lagrime che manderà.* ” *Il sacro Arsenal*, cited in Raynouard, p. 33, note.

## CHAP. VII.

and valour were useless.\* The grand master rejoined that he had faith, and accordingly repeated the Roman catholic creed with firmness and energy. The court declared that he had confessed various crimes, and they read to him a paper, purporting to be the details of his examination, as taken before the cardinals and legate of the Pope, at Chinon.† But Molai most vehemently denied the accuracy of the document.‡ Some of his brother knights were examined. They all bore testimony to the virtues of the order, and appealed to the dying cries of their

- \* " He hated all good works and virtuous deeds,
- " And him no less than any like did use :
- " And, who with gracious bread the hungry feeds,
- " His alms, *for want of faith*, he doth accuse."

" Deluded people," as a prelate of the Church of England has said, " that do not consider, that the greatest heresy, in the world, is a wicked life; and that God will sooner forgive a man an hundred defects of his understanding, than one fault of his will."

† It is singular that the Pope did not personally examine the grand master, and the other great officers of the order, who were all at Chinon, a place not far distant from Poitiers, the residence of the Pope. Clement gave out that some were ill, and could not travel. He might surely have examined the others.

‡ There is no doubt, however, from the declarations of the grand master on the scaffold at Paris, that some confessions of guilt had been extorted from him.

their tortured friends, as witnesses to the truth, CHAP. VII.  
 Nine hundred knights presented themselves to the commissioners, and declared their intention and ability to defend the society. This avowal compelled the commissioners to make distinct and formal charges against the order. The Knights Templars then were accused of renouncing, at the time of their matriculation, God, Jesus Christ, the Virgin, and all the saints. It was said, that the brethren used often to spit and trample on the cross, in proof of their contempt of Christ, who was crucified for his own crimes and not for the sins of the world. Out of their disdain of God and his Son, they adored a cat,\* and certain wooden and golden idols.

VOL. II.

X

idols.

\* This feline worship is a curious circumstance. The accusers of the Templars were as refined in their cruelty as the enemies of the Cathari; who, wishing to prove criminality by etymology, said that those heretics took their name, "*a catto, quia osculantur posteriora catti; in cujus specie, ut aiunt appareret iis Lucifer.*" Alanus de Insulis, p. 146. Paris, 1612. To charge the Templars as a matter of offence with adoring a cat is singular, considering that in the middle ages animals formed as prominent a part in the worship of the time as they had done in the old religion of Egypt. Every body has heard of the feast of the ass. The cat also was a very important personage in religious festivals. At Aix in Provence, on the festival of Corpus Christi, the finest tom cat of the country, wrapt in swaddling clothes like a child, was exhibited in a magnificent shrine to public admiration. Every

CHAP. VII. idols.\* The master could absolve brethren from sins. All those matters were agreeable to the statutes of the order; they were in old and general usage; and there was no other mode of reception than the performance of certain acts, many of which were opposite to nature, as well as contrary to law. To these charges the Templars returned a general and firm denial; and, in consciousness of innocence, called for an acquittal, except the accusations could be substantiated. In violation of the benign forbearance of legal inquisition, the knights had been seized like sheep intended for the slaughter; their property taken from them; and, without any respect for their rank or station in the world, they had been cast into loathsome dungeons.

As

Every knee was bent, every hand strewed flowers or poured incense, and Grimalkin was treated in all respects as the god of the day. But on the festival of St. John, poor ~~man's~~ fate was reversed. A number of the tabby tribe were put into a wicker basket, and thrown alive into the midst of an immense fire, kindled in the public square, by the bishop and his clergy. Hymns and anthems were sung, and processions were made by the priests and people in honour of the sacrifice.

\* None of these idols were ever found. How sensible is the remark of Bayle: "S'ils (les Templiers) étaient ~~assez~~ *impies* pour renoncer à la religion Chrétienne qui était celle de leur naissance, comment auraient-ils pu se confier à une idole?" Bayle, *Nouvelles de la Rép. des Lettres, Oeuvres Diverses*, vol. i. p. 646. See further, note S.

And if the existence of truth and the capacity of preserving it were necessarily united, they had been tortured, and the strength of each man's nerves discovered. On the assurance that the king would destroy the order, whether the result of the examinations were favourable or hostile to its continuance, many knights had yielded to pain and hopelessness, stayed the hand of the executioner, confessed every crime, and, upon their confessing of which, royal pardon and protection were proffered. The prisoners had been deprived of the habits of the order; spiritual succours were denied to such brethren as were ill, and no funeral solemnities graced the burial of the dead. All these facts were so public and notorious, that it was impossible to controvert or palliate them. The order of the Knights Templars was eminent for its virtue and its discipline: and when the chances of war had thrown any of them into the hands of the Musselman foe, and the deplorable choice was offered of apostacy or death, where could an instance be found of want of religious heroism? and would they have been martyrs for Christianity, had they not believed in Christ?—The commissioners continued their violation of the substantial forms of justice; they relied for the truth of the charges upon the deposition of those who had been tortured, or bribed into confession:



CHAP. VII. that time in the power, partly of the Greeks and partly of the Saracens. The soldiers landed; many battles were fought, and the army of the invaders was at last reduced to the military friars. Their undaunted chief borrowed money from the Italian bankers, hired new soldiers, recommenced his attacks, and the whole island submitted to his authority. The subsequent history of the knights of St. John is interwoven with the general history of Europe, and is not within the scope of the present work.\*

Aug. 1310.

While

\* It may, however, be interesting to notice the fate of the order in England. The knights were of high consequence, for in the time of Edward IV. the prior was the first lay baron, and had a seat in parliament. By statute 32 Henry VIII. ch. xxiv. the order, both in England and Ireland, was dissolved, on the alleged reason, that the knights adhered to a foreign jurisdiction. A yearly pension of one thousand pounds was settled on Sir William Weston, the prior. Seventeen knights had annuities, varying from two hundred to thirty pounds each, and some of the goods and chattels of the priories. Ten novices had also ten pounds a-year each. The amount of the pensions was two thousand eight hundred and seventy pounds, nearly the annual value of the estates. The pensions were said to be handsome, on account of the high birth and honourable breeding of the knights. The reader must be surprised at the small number of the knights in England; and as the Hospitalians had been enriched by the property of the red-cross knights, their estates were not surprisingly large. The prior died on the very day (7th May, 1540) of the dissolution of the order. "His hospital,"

says,

While the military friars were planning the acquisition of an equivalent to their loss in Palestine, most of the red-cross knights gradually left Cyprus, returned to their different commanderies, and lived in security and indolence. But circumstances soon made the Templars repent that they had not, like the Hospitallers, attempted a renewal of hostilities with the infidels. Philip the Fair, king of France, acquainted Pope Clement the fifth, that the order of the Knights Templars had been accused of heresy and various other crimes against religion and morals. Some members\* had charged their fraternity with

CHAP. VII.

The Templars.

says Fuller, "and earthly tabernacle were buried together, "and gold, though a great cordial, could not cure a broken heart." The monastery at Bucklands was dissolved, and the prioress received from the king a gratuity of twenty-five pounds and the grant of a life annuity of fifty pounds. Fuller, Church History, p. 344, 345. Willis's History of the Mitred Abbies, vol. ii. p. 129, 134. Weaver, Fun. Mon. p. 431. Queen Mary restored the order, and made Sir Thomas Tresham lord prior, in return for some important services which he had rendered to her. Queen Elizabeth, however, completely and finally suppressed the society. Stow's London, edit. 1720, book iv. p. 62, 63. Bridges' History of Northamptonshire, vol. ii. p. 69.

\* Accounts vary respecting the names and number of the knights who made the accusation. It is agreed, however, on all hands, that the men who were so zealous in the cause of virtue were themselves deeply criminal. Baluzius, Vitæ Pontif. Avig. tom. i. p. 99. Villani, Storie, lib. iii. cap. 92. p. 429.

CHAP. VII with the different abominations of treachery, murder, idolatry, and Islamism. The Pope, in reply, correctly said, that these charges were incredible and unheard of.\* But, at length, overawed by the power, or seduced by the artifices of Philip, his Holiness assented to the necessity of an enquiry, and added, that if for their crimes the Templars should be punished, their estates must be applied to the religious purpose of succouring the holy land, and should not be converted to any secular object. Sanctioned then by the church, in his apparent wish

\* "Ad credendum quæ tunc dicebantur, cum quasi *Incredibilia et Impossibilia* viderentur, nostrum animum vix potuimus applicare, quia tamen plura incredibilia et INAUDITA, &c." Lettre de CLEMENT V. à PHILIPPE-le-Bel, de 9 kal. de Sept. an. 2 de son Pontificat. This extract I have made from a work by M. Raynouard, which I have found of much use in this part of my subject. The title of the work is, "Monumens Historiques relatifs à la Condamnation des Chevaliers du Temple et l'Abolition de leur Ordre. Paris, 1813." Of M. Raynouard's Tragedy of (the condemnation of) the Templars, I can say nothing in praise. The plot is meagre and uninteresting. Long speeches of middling poetry will not compensate for the want of delineation of character. Without incident and situation, there can be no dramatic effect, and, consequently, no display of the passions. The tragedy was acted with applause some years ago at Paris. For an analysis and a critical notice of it, see the Edinburgh Review, vol. ix. article 14.

for the execution of justice, Philip the Fair took the bold step of imprisoning all the Knights Templars whom his officers could discover in France, and of sequestering their property. The Pope was indignant that any authority, save that of Rome, should interfere with a military order, which was out of royal, or ordinary episcopal, jurisdiction; but some signs of submission on the part of Philip restored harmony between the spiritual and temporal powers. The church was the nominal guardian of the sequestered estates; but most of the actual administrators were subjects of the king. Clement then circulated a bull throughout Christendom, by which instrument of papal authority, nuntios and the resident clergy were commanded to enquire into the conduct of the knights. His Holiness says, that, pressed by public clamour, and by the declarations of the king, the barons, the clergy, and laity of France, he\* had examined seventy-two members of the order, and had found them all guilty, though in various degrees, of irreligion and immorality. The Pope also threatened with excommunication every person that harboured, or gave counsel

CHAP. VII.

Oct. 1307.  
Imprisonment of the  
Templars  
in France.

\* The examinations were not made by the Pope himself, but by his cardinals and other officers.

CHAP. VI. tion of a member.\* Seventeen lay and ecclesiastical individuals were then summoned to court, and their opinions were asked whether the Templars were religious people, and whether these secret meetings were held from a good or from a bad motive. - The first witness thought that there must be evil in the affair, because the meetings were secret. Others candidly confessed ignorance, and bore strong testimony to the general good conduct of the knights. The remaining five witnesses avowed their ignorance of the principles and practice of the Templars.† Twenty-four new articles of charge, and an appendix of five more, were then framed against the knights. They were accused of burying in private, of having double methods of admission, of absolving excommunicated persons, and of relaxing canonical penances. All these things

\* The private associations of the primitive Christians had been the subject of much offence to the Pagans. As professors of a religion distinguished for charity, it ill became the accusers of the Templars to join criminality with secrecy.

† Some time after this examination, and when the threat of ecclesiastical punishment made the knights recant their avowal of innocence, a great deal of hearsay evidence contradicted the statement in the text. Many people deposed, they had heard that the Templars adored images, denied the doctrines of the divinity of Christ, the atonement, &c.

were solemnly denied by the Templars; and it was thought that a complete acquittal must be pronounced. It was only on the subject of absolution that any impropriety in their conduct could justly be suspected. It was admitted that the master could absolve men who offended against the ceremonies of religion; but he did not pretend to pardon crimes. At the general chapter the grand preceptor declared, that those persons who had not confessed their sins, or had withdrawn any money from the Templars, could not partake of Heaven: but other offences, which could not be confessed for modesty's sake, or for fear of the law, he absolved according to the degree of his authority. There could not, however, have been much evil in this ceremony, for the knights acknowledged that this absolution was not perfect, because the church form was never used,—“ I absolve thee in the name of God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost.”\* Stephen de Stapelbrugge, a Templar, who long had avoided the officers of justice, was brought before the commissioners; and confessed in the fullest manner the truth of the charges contained in the papal bulls. Idols, however, were not worshipped in England. Another cavalier, Thomas de Thoroldeby, who had

\* A witness or two said this form was used.

**CHAP. VII.** had escaped from prison, was afterwards taken. He avowed the innocence of his order in the strongest terms, and declared that the reason of his having fled before was, that a certain abbot had held over him dreadful threats if he would not confess all manner of crimes. Two other Templars acknowledged the justice of the charges. Stephen de Stapelbrugge read in public a recantation of heresy; the clergy absolved him, and he was released from the penalties of excommunication. The consequences of clerical censures seem again to have terrified Thomas de Thoroldeby. He made an open avowal that he had spat upon the cross, and committed other offences. He then received absolution.

Four knights made a general confession of crimes, when they were told by the bishops of London, Winchester, and Chichester, that the Pope had authorized them to give a full pardon to those who acknowledged their iniquities, but that if they persisted in heresy, they should be considered and punished as heretics.\* Their  
teen

\* Wilkins, Concilia, vol. ii. p. 390. The dread of the punishments attached to the crime of heresy, made all the knights recant their first professions of innocence. For some time the commissioners appear to have acted with impartiality; but they afterwards went with the current of papal and royal

then newly admitted knights swore that they ~~were~~ <sup>CRATA</sup> were not acquainted with the secrets of the order, but that they were prepared to renounce all the erroneous opinions with which it was possible the minds of men could be stained. This general renunciation was made before, and the men were absolved by, the archbishop of

royal wishes. The first examination of the knights was not agreeable to the wishes of the Pope, and he, therefore, gently censured the king of England for having forbidden the use of torture. "Thus, the knights," he continued, "have refused to declare the truth. Oh! my dear son; consider attentively and prudently, if such be consistent with your honour, and the safety of your kingdom." This advice of the Pope for the use of torture, is mentioned by M. Raynouerd, on the authority of a manuscript in the Vatican. *Hist. de la Condamnation des Templiers*, p. 132, note. There is no reason to think, however, that the torture was used. There is not one expression in the report of the London commissioners which authorizes the supposition. That the threat of the punishment consequent on heresy was hung over them, and produced the effect, fully appears. The archbishop of York enquired of his clergy whether torture might be used, and mentions the fact (so grateful to Englishmen), that torture was unknown in this country. "An sint supponendi questionibus et tormentis, licet hoc in regno Angliæ nusquam visum fuerit vel auditum?" Hemingford, vol. i. p. 256. edit. Hearne. The archbishop adds, that there was no machine for torture in England; and he asks whether he shall send to foreign countries for one, in order that the prelates should not be chargeable with negligence.



**CHAP. VII.** of Canterbury and many of the dignified clergy. Thirty-two other knights and friars, who had on various occasions denied the truth of the charges, now offered general confessions, and abjured all heresies. Five men in the tower, too ill or too aged for removal, gladly made a full acknowledgment of vice and erroneous opinions, and were pardoned. This seems to have been the case with all the London knights. William de la Moore, the grand prior, was the only man whom no fear of imprisonment or dread of ecclesiastical punishment could induce to deny his first avowal of the innocence of the order. He was requested to make a general confession; but he replied, that he was not guilty of heresy, and would never abjure crimes which he had not committed.

In Ireland about thirty Templars, in Scotland only two, were confined and examined. In Lincoln the number somewhat exceeded twenty. There were twenty-three in York. The general charges of apostacy and idolatry were not proved in any case. The proceedings in the diocese of York are interesting. The archbishop assisted by the papal legates enquired into the matters directed by the bull. Some of the Templars confessed that the master and other officers had the power of absolution: others restricted that power to subjects relative to discipline.

discipline. That the admission of a brother always took place in secret was a fact which was freely avowed. The archbishop wrote for the opinions of the learned theologians of his province whether those things were heretical and erroneous: and whether the torture might be applied to those who did not confess.\* The result of this application for judicial and canonical advice does not appear. The Pope, however, pressed his grace to come to a decision. The archbishop went to London, and on his return he told his clergy that two of the Templars had confessed before the archbishop of Canterbury all the charges heaped upon the order, and that the king of France had burnt seventy-two knights who had made similar avowals. The clergy of York were perplexed by their wish to obey the Pope, and the conviction that the Templars were not guilty, or at least that their offences had been grossly exaggerated. However, all the knights made a general confession of the offence of heresy, and avowed they could not cleanse themselves from the crimes mentioned in the bull. The clergy pardoned them, and received them again into the bosom of the church. They were then sent into confinement in various monasteries until

\* See p. 315, ante, note.

CHAP. VII. the decision of a general council should be declared.\*

In Germany.

The fate of the Templars in other parts of the world remains to be told. In Germany the innocence of the order was proved before the archbishops of Mayence and Treves, at councils held in their respective dioceses. In Italy the Pope had a little more success. Several Templars at Florence confessed every species of abomination. One witness, however, solemnly protested that many Templars had made those

In Italy.

\* The best and most full account of the condemnation of the Templars in England is contained in the second volume of *Wilkins's Concilia*, p. 329-401. See likewise *Huntingford*, already quoted. *Rymer*, vol. ii. p. 90, 93, 94, 100. *Stubbs*, apud x. Script. col. 1740. *Knyghton*, col. 2494, 2531. *Walsingham* (whom *Stow* merely translates) says that the Templars in London, saving one or two of them, denied the charges: notwithstanding all did confess that they could not purge themselves, and therefore were condemned to perpetual penance in several monasteries, where they behaved very well. *Walsingham*, p. 99. *Stow*, p. 215. The reasons of their inability to make this canonical purgation have been explained in the text. *Holingshed* says, "the Templars confessed the form, but not the fact of the crimes, laid to their charge, except two or three rituals that were among them: but because they could not clear themselves they were adjudged unto perpetual penance within certain monasteries." *Holingshed*, vol. ii. p. 320. edit. 1587.

swore out of fear of the torture. He added, CHAPTER  
 " if the errors imputed to us had in reality ex-  
 isted, I should have quitted the order, and  
 made my denunciation to the prelates and  
 inquisitors; I would have preferred to have  
 worked for my bread rather than remain with  
 such people; in short, I would have chosen  
 death, because the safety of my soul is the  
 first object of my regard." One of those who  
 bore testimony at Viterbo was so badly skilled  
 in his story, that he deposed, the prior had com-  
 pelled him to adore an idol, and had said to him,  
 " Pray to this idol for health:" as if the prior  
 would have confessed the imposition, and have  
 told his proselyte to adore an object confessedly  
 not capable of receiving adoration.\* Much  
 blood was shed in Lombardy, Tuscany, Sicily,  
 Naples, and Provence,† whenever the knights  
 would not be guilty of self-condemnation. In  
 those parts of Spain where the conduct of the  
 Templars was inquired into, the result was an  
 acquittal. Their military front was powerful,  
 and the ministers of papal vengeance did not  
 dare to apply the torture.

Four years after the first seizure of the Tem-  
 plars

\* " How then shall they call on him in whom they have  
 not believed?" Romans, x. 14.

† Nostrodamus, Chron. de Provence, p. 325, &c.

CHAP. VII.

October,  
1311.  
Council at  
Vienne.

place in France a council was held at Vienne in Dauphiny, for the purpose of making some general decision on the case of the order. The Pope headed three hundred bishops, and an untold number of inferior clergy. All men who desired to defend the order were promised security and freedom. Nine cavaliers presented themselves before the assembly in the character of representatives of one thousand five hundred of their brethren who were living at Lyons, and in the secret fastnesses of Savoy and Switzerland. Clement immediately violated his promise of protection, and threw the nine knights into prison. He then called upon the council for its opinion, whether in consequence of the confessions of the Templars the society ought not to be dissolved? With the disgraceful exception of one Italian prelate, and three French archbishops, the whole body of churchmen declared that so illustrious an order as that of the red-cross knights ought not to be suppressed, until the grand master and the nine knights had been heard in its defence. The Pope disregarded the opinion of the majority; and tried in vain for six months to make a change. The king of France arrived at Vienne, and sanctioned by his presence, the Pope declared that he should exercise the plenitude of papal authority. He accordingly dissolved the order provisionally, and

The order  
suppressed.

and not absolutely, and reserved to himself the disposition of the persons and estates of the Templars. This mode of dissolution was totally unprecedented. The Pope avows in his bull that all the informations against the Templars did not fully support the charges that had been made against the order, but that they only warranted a strong suspicion of guilt, and he could not therefore pronounce a definitive sentence. When the subject of the distribution of the Knights Templars' estates was debated in the council, the Pope declared that they ought to be bestowed upon the Hospitallers, because the original purpose of the order was the subjugation of infidels, a purpose which the knights of Rhodes were earnestly pursuing. The friends of the French king declaimed against the danger to morals and religion of enriching the companions in arms of the Templars, and strongly endeavoured to prove the superior benefits to the Christian cause, which would result from the establishment of a new order. But the Pope promised to amend the principles, and to reform the abuses of the military friars, and Philip was compelled to withdraw his opposition.

The decree of confiscation was executed throughout Christendom. The Templars were robbed, but the Hospitallers did not enjoy the

Confiscation of its estates.

CHAP. VII. whole of the plunder. Philip the Fair, and his successor Louis Hutin, retained nearly three hundred thousand livres for what they chose to term the expenses of the prosecution. The landed estates were slowly and unwillingly resigned, for the monarchs enjoyed the rents till the commissioners of the knights of Rhodes established their rights.\* In Germany the Teutonic knights assisted the Hospitallers in plundering those who had formerly been their brethren in arms in Palestine. In Italy, and most of Spain, the decree of the Vienne council was faithfully executed. In Valentia, however, the knights of Calatrava were enriched, and in Arragon the order of the knights of our lady of Montesa was created in the place of the Templars, and supported by their wealth. The knights were destined to fight the Muselmans of Spain. The most wise and virtuous monarch of his time was Denis king of Portugal. He preserved the order of the red-cross knights, and made only the sacrifice to the decrees of the church by changing their title from the soldiers of the Temple to that of the soldiers of Christ.

Pope

\* It was not until the year 1317, and until the reign of Philip le Long, that the Hospitallers completely discharged the French king from all their demands upon him as guardian of the estates of the Templars. Dupuy, p. 184.

Pope John XXII. was obliged to concede to this measure. In England the Templars were restored to liberty before the holding of the council at Vienne: but their estates were retained by the king's commissioners, and the rents were paid into the royal treasury. Edward II. confirmed the papal grant of the estates of the Templars to the Hospitallers; and recommended the new possessors to make the same pecuniary allowance to the knights as he had made them.\* The regal ratification of the decree of the church was not, however, in all respects considered obligatory. Both before and after the passing of the royal word Edward gave to different laymen much of the forfeited property. Numbers of the nobility too as heirs of the original donors seized many of the Templars' estates. Indeed, so great was the injustice done to the Hospitallers, that Pope John XXII. censured both the clergy and laity, for their disobedience to the decree of the council at Vienne. Moved by the voice of the holy pontiff, the parliament confirmed the decrees, but oppression still exerted some influence, and the Hospitallers were even obliged to purchase of the king, or from laymen,

1322.

r 2

the

\* Two shillings to the master, and four pence to each cavalier, were paid every day during the time when their estates were in royal custody.



CHAP. VII. the objects of his munificence, many of the estates of the Templars.\*

Execution  
of the  
grand  
master.

The last circumstance which attended the fate of the Templars was the condemnation of the grand master, James de Molai. About a year after the termination of the council at Vienne, two cardinals as legates of the Pope, the archbishop of Sens, and some other French prelates, met at Paris, and sat in judgment upon the grand master, and upon Guy, brother of the prince of Dauphiny, and the two grand priors of France and Aquitain. There was no new trial, and no new examination. But on a public scaffold where a pile of wood was lighted by the ordinary executioner, the commissioners called upon

\* The earls of Lancaster and Pembroke, and the younger Spenser, successively had grants of the Temple in London: but in consequence of the events of death, rebellion and attaint, it reverted to the crown. In the reign of Edward III. the Hospitallers got full possession of the Temple, and demised it unto some common law professors that came from Thavies Inn, Holborn. The rebels in 1381 very much injured the church and buildings of the Temple. The lawyers divided themselves into two bodies,—those of the Inner Temple, and those of the Middle Temple, and held the mansion as tenants to the Hospitallers till the dissolution of that order of knights, 32 Henry VIII., and afterwards as tenants to the crown. James I. granted them the building, in fee. Dugdale, Orig. Jurid. cap. 57. edit. 1671. Stow's London, book 3. p. 271.

upon the knights to confirm the acknowledgment of the immoralities and heresies which they had made to the Pope. The priors of France and Aquitaine renewed their confession. But the virtuous James de Molai cried aloud that he had been guilty of the greatest crime in charging the Templars with vice. "I uttered," he continued; "all that the inquisitors wished, only for the purpose of escaping the torments of the rack. But I abhor the weakness which I then shewed. Great as are the torments which are prepared for me, I will endure them rather than purchase a few years of life by persisting in falsehood." Similar language was uttered by Guy; his declaration closed the proceedings, and the four knights were reconveyed to prison. On the same day James de Molai was burnt alive before a slow fire, on the very spot in Paris which has been adorned in modern times with a statue of Henry IV. With his dying lips he bore testimony to the virtue of the order; and his mental sufferings on account of his former want of firmness appeared to be greater than his mere corporeal pain. The brother of the prince of Dauphiny met with the same unhappy but honourable end as that of his friend James de Molai. The two priors seem to have died in prison.

Y 3

The

\* Paulus Emilius, p. 174, edit. 1539.

## CHAP. VII.

Innocence  
of the Tem-  
plars.

The charges against the Templars, of apostasy and idolatry, were so completely unsubstantiated, that the order must hold the same rank in the estimation of posterity as if those charges had never been made. The general character for virtue\* of the red-cross knights can be proved from the declarations of their enemies. The opinions of Pope Clement V. and Edward II. king of England, have been already quoted. The praise which Philip the Fair bestowed upon the order is equally decisive. In the year 1304, three years only before the proscription, the French king, in an act which accorded numerous privileges in favour of the Templars, explains in the following terms the reasons of his munificence: "The works of piety and charity, the magnificent liberality which the holy order of the Temple has exercised in all times and in all places, and their noble courage, which ought again to be exhibited to the dangerous defence of the holy land,

\* Marianna writes very safely on the subject of the Templars. He says "it is most probable they were not all innocent, nor were all of them guilty." The jesuit ought to have known that the crimes of a few or a great many individuals were not the alleged matters of offence. It was the whole body of knights, the practice of the chapters as sanctioned by the statutes of the order, which had passed the common measure of vice.

"land, have determined us to spread our royal bounty over the order and its knights in our kingdom, and to give special marks of favour to an establishment for which we have a sincere predilection,"\*

The causes of the suppression of the order of the Templars, the reasons which occasioned the

CHAP. VII.

Causes of the suppression of the order.

Y 4

arm

\* Trésor des Chartres, as cited in Raymond, p. 14, note. In praise of the Templars I must add, that Guiot, one of the Troubadours, who wrote in the thirteenth century, speaks in honourable terms of the Templars, although he is bitter and severe in his mention of all other religious orders.

Molt sont prodomme li Templier,

Là se rendent li chevalier

Qui ont le siecle assavoré

Et ont et véu et tot tasté.

Bible, Guiot, vers. 1706, cited in Roquefort, Glossaire de la Langue Romane, art. Temples.

From the same Manuscript, as cited in the Notices des MSS. du Roi, vol. 5. p. 289, &c. some curious particulars may be gained respecting the red-cross knights and the Hospitalians. "The Templars (it is the minstrel that speaks) are honoured in Syria; dreaded by the Turks; and their order would suit me well enough, but that they are obliged to fight.—They are too brave. I had rather be a living coward than have the most illustrious death possible. These preux chevaliers of the Temple are very exact in all that concerns the service of the church."—"I have lived (he continues) with the Hospitalians at Jerusalem, and have found them haughty and fierce. Besides, since by name and foundation they ought to be hospitable, why are they not so in reality?"

CHAP. VII. arm of power to be raised against them, form an interesting subject of inquiry. The defenders of the Romish church, in sweet oblivion of the character of their own establishment, have accused the Templars of ambition: a passion which resulted from their wealth. But the course and object of this common feeling of human nature were not made matters of charge; neither are men to be condemned for supposed consequences of principles, or for passions which have not appeared in conduct.\* The knights of St. John were more wealthy; and, on the principles we have mentioned, more ambitious than the Templars: but the military friars stood unimpeached, while the rains of indignation were poured on the red cross-knights. The union of these two bodies had been a frequent subject of papal consideration; and the impracticability of the measure, not its impropriety, finally prevented its completion.† The severity of the discipline of the Templars was always objected to

\* Some writers have charged the Templars with pride, and have referred to a pointed sentence of Richard Cœur de Lion. See Bromton, apud x. Scrip. col. 1279. Knighton, however, makes the humble monarch charge both the Templars and the Hospitallers with the sin by which the angels fell. Col. 2412.

† One of the last attempts at this union was made at Salzburg in the year 1292.

to by the Hospitalians; and the sagacious members of both orders foretold that there would be perpetual dissensions if the rival and jealous knights attempted to live in social intercourse. The Templars were not accused by outraged public decency, by the complaints of an injured and insulted world: but by the monster of his age,\* Philip the Fair of France. No love of virtue could have influenced the king, for his own life was one continued scene of profligacy. No disinterested esteem of justice prompted him to the investigation of their conduct, or he would not have tortured the knights into self-condemnation. He had not even a fair case of prosecution. We are driven, then, to suppose that some private motive must have urged him to the destruction

\* On every account, Dante was justified in terming him, "Il mal di Francia." *Del Purgatorio*, vii. 109. After having reprehended Philip for his savage usage of Boniface VIII. the poet lashes him for his iniquitous condemnation of the Templars.

Veggio 'l nuovo Pilato, sì crudele,  
Che ciò nol sazia, ma senza decreto  
Porta nel tempio le cupide vele.

*Del Purgatorio*, canto 20, 91.

Lo! the new Pilate, of whose cruelty  
Such violence cannot fill the measure up,  
With no decree to sanction, pushes on  
Into the temple his yet eager sails.

Cary's translation.

CHAP. VII. **struction of an order celebrated for its Heroical**  
**virtue, and which had been among the brightest**  
**ornaments of chivalry, and one of the firmest**  
**bulwarks of the Christian kingdom of Jerusa-**  
**lem. In these days of policy, we can readily**  
**imagine that the existence of a body of soldiers**  
**who were totally independent of the sovereign**  
**of the country in which they resided, must have**  
**been highly dangerous to the state. Apprehen-**  
**sions of that nature were not, however, enter-**  
**tained by Philip. But there is abundant evi-**  
**dence to justify the assertion, that the real crime**  
**of the Templars was their wealth.\* A little**  
**while before the proscription, Philip the Fair**  
**had robbed the Jews ; but, in the year 1307,**  
**the finances of the kingdom were again in such**  
**an**

\* "The chief cause of their ruin was their extraordinary  
 "wealth. They were feared of many, envied of more, loved  
 "of none. As Naboth's vineyard was the chiefest ground  
 "for his blasphemy ; and as, in England, Sir John Corn-  
 "wall, lord Fanhope, said merrily, that not he, but his  
 "stately house at Ampthill in Bedfordshire, was guilty of  
 "high treason ; so certainly their wealth was the principal  
 "evidence against them, and cause of their overthrow. It  
 "is quarrel and cause enough to bring a sheep that is fat to  
 "the shambles. We may believe king Philip would never  
 "have taken away their lives, if he might have taken their  
 "lands without putting them to death : but the mischief  
 "was, he could not get the honey unless he burnt the  
 "bees." Fuller, *History of the Holy War*, book v. ch. iii.

an exhausted state, that after having solemnly CHAP. VII  
 promised the States-General to restore the coin-  
 age to its condition under Louis IX, Philip saw  
 himself obliged to violate the royal word, or  
 again to recruit his empty treasury by some new  
 and extraordinary expedient. As a scheme of  
 finance, then, he plotted the destruction of the  
 Templars, and, in the collection of French  
 public charters, we find a document in which  
 the king proposed the question, whether the  
 goods of the Templars ought to be confiscated  
 in favour of the prince of the country in whose  
 kingdom they are situated. Many of the best  
 historians of the fourteenth century ascribe the  
 condemnation of the Templars to the cupidity  
 of the French king. Such assertions are ex-  
 pressly made by St. Antoninus,\* archbishop of  
 Florence, and by Villani.† Boccacio is a wit-  
 ness for the assertion, that the Parisians attri-  
 buted the severity of Philip to his avarice.‡

William

\* St. Antoninus, archbishop of Florence, p. 3, tit. 21, c. i.  
 f. 3, p. 92, ap. Raynal, ann. 1307, p. 18, cited in Sismondi;  
 Hist. des Rép. Ital. vol. iv. ch. xxvi.

† Il quale (il Re di Francia) mosso da avaritia si fece pro-  
 mettere dal Papa secretamente di disfare la detta ordine de'  
 Tempieri, opponendo contro a loro molti articoli di resia;  
 ma piu si dice che fu per trarre di loro molta moneta, &c.  
 Villani, Storie, lib. viii. c. 92. p. 429.

‡ Boccacio, *de casibus Virorum illustrium*, p. 260, 262,  
 fol. Aug. Vind. 1544.



CHAP.VII. William Ventura, the historian of Asti, says, that this prosecution was excited by the envy and pecuniary selfishness of Philip, and that he hated the Templars, because they had taken the part of Boniface, in the quarrel between that pontiff and the king.\* Thus, then, his avarice was spurred on by his malignity. It is true, that by the decrees of the council of Vienne, the estates of the Templars were appropriated to the Hospitalians. As far as Philip the Fair was personally concerned, these decrees were of no consequence. While he was on the throne, he enjoyed the forfeited estates, and but few of the moveables of the knights were ever applied according to the commands of the Pope. Philip would gladly have condemned the Templars without the interference of Clement: but papal sanction was absolutely necessary, because the knights were not amenable to any court save that of the Pope. If Philip had, on his own authority, pronounced the abolition of the order, the people would have revered the Templars as victims of royal tyranny, and the nobility would have seized the property which once belonged to their own families. It was necessary, therefore, for the purpose of seducing the vulgar, to calumniate the

\* Chron. Astense, c. xxvii. t. xi. p. 192, cited in Sismondi, ubi supra.

the knights, and to hold them to public view as CHAP.VII.  
heretical and impious men. Clement was as  
selfish as Philip, for many of the estates of the  
Templars were withheld from the Hospitallers  
till the new claimants paid large tribute to the  
coffers of St. Peter.\*

\* Chron. Pip. Muratori, Rer. Scrip. Ital. vol. ix. p. 750,  
and Walsingham.

## CHAP. VIII.

REMARKS ON THE GENERAL CONSEQUENCES OF  
THE CRUSADES.

( THE origin and history of the fanatical and military enterprises, called the Crusades, have been traced. No religious wars have ever been so long, so sanguinary, and so destructive. Countless hosts of holy warriors fell the victims of their own vindictive enthusiasm and military ardour.) Fierceness and intolerance were the strongest features in the character of the dark ages, and it is, perhaps, not so much in the conduct, as in the object, of the crusades, that any thing distinct and peculiar can be marked. ( It was not for the conversion of people, or the propagation of opinions, but for the redemption of the sepulchre of Christ, and the destruction of the enemies of God, that the crimson standard was unfurled.) The western world did not cast itself into Asia from any view of expediency, or in consequence of any abstract theoretical principle of a right of hostility ; men did not arm themselves from any conviction that the co-existence of Christendom and Islamism was incompatible

compatible with the doctrines of the Koran, or that the countries of the west would be precipitated into the gulf of destruction, if Asia Minor were not torn from the Seljuk Turks, and restored to the emperor of Constantinople. But the flame of war spread from one end of Europe to the other, for the deliverance of the holy land from a state which was called pollution; and the floodgates of fanaticism were unlocked for the savage and iniquitous purpose of extermination. Count Robert of Flanders, one of the heroes of the first crusade, might indeed have wished to aid his imperial friend, Alexius, and pope Urban II. was swelled with the soul-inspiring idea of a glorious triumph of the Christian cause over infidelity. But popular madness would not listen to the calls of generous policy and lofty ambition. The wish for the redemption of the holy land was the feeling which influenced both Godfrey of Bouillon and St. Louis, the first and the last great champions of the cross; it was that wild desire which moved Europe for two centuries, and without it the crusades would never have been undertaken. Political ambition, ties of country and kindred, clerical authority, habit, and custom, encouraged the general principle, and while some fanatics courted the crown of martyrdom, others aspired to the guerdon of renown. But the usual feelings

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

ings of warriors did not create the crusades ; they supported them indeed, yet when the flame of enthusiasm was extinguished, military ardour and papal power could not rekindle it.

The question of the justice of the holy wars is one of easy solution. The Crusaders were not called upon by Heaven to carry on hostilities against the Muselmans. Palestine did not, of right, belong to the Christians in consequence of any gift of God : and it was evident, from the fact of the destruction of the temple, that there was no longer any peculiar sanctity in the ground of Jerusalem. There is no command in the Scriptures for Christians to build the walls of the holy city, and no promise of an earthly Canaan as the reward of virtue. " It is  
" mere equivocation to call Palestine the Lord's  
" heritage, and the land promised to his peo-  
" ple. These expressions belong to the Old  
" Testament, in the proper and literal sense,  
" and can be applied to the New only in a  
" figurative sense. The heritage which Christ  
" purchased with his blood is his church, col-  
" lected from all nations, and the land which  
" he promised is the heavenly country."\*

If Europe had armed itself for the purpose of succouring

\* Fleury, cited in Jortin's Remarks on Ecclesiastical History, vol. iii. p. 337.

succouring the Grecian emperor, the rendering of such assistance would have been a moral action, for the Saracenian march of hostility would not have stopped with the subjugation of Constantinople, and it is incumbent upon us to prevent a danger, as well as to repel one. If the Christians had been animated by the conviction that war with all the world was the vital principle of the Muhammedan religion, then also a right of hostility would have been raised.\* But

VOL. II.

Z

before

\* This is Johnson's argument. "The lawfulness and justice of the holy wars have been much disputed, but, perhaps, there is a principle on which the question may be easily determined. If it be a part of the religion of the Mahometans, to extirpate by the sword all other religions, it is, by the laws of self-defence, lawful for men of every other religion, and for Christians among others, to make war upon Mahometans, simply as Mahometans, as men obliged by their own principles to make war upon Christians, and only lying in wait till opportunity shall promise them success." Notes on Shakespeare's Henry IV. act i. scene i. In a similar strain, lord Bacon says, "It is to be well noted, that towards ambitious states, which are noted to aspire to great monarchies, and to seek upon all occasions to enlarge their dominions, *crescunt argumenta justi metus*, all particular fears do grow and multiply out of the contemplation of the general causes and practice of such states. Therefore, in deliberation of war against the Turk, it hath been often, with great judgment, maintained, that Christian princes and states have always a sufficient ground of invasive war against the enemy; not  
" for

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

before they could have been justified on this last mentioned argument, proof was necessary that the danger was imminent, and that time and circumstances had not reduced the principle to a mere dry inoperative letter of the law.\* In the first hundred and fifty years of Muhammedan history, the Muselmans made continued and successful attacks on the Christians; and the invasion of France by the Spanish and African Moors, seemed to endanger Christendom as a world independent of and not tributary to the Saracens. In all that long period the people of the west

“ for cause of religion, but upon a just fear; forasmuch as,  
 “ it is a fundamental law in the Turkish empire, that they  
 “ may, without any other provocation, make war upon  
 “ Christendom for the propagation of their law; so that  
 “ there lieth upon Christians a perpetual fear of war, hang-  
 “ ing over their heads, from them; and therefore they may  
 “ at all times, as they think good, be upon the preventive.”  
*War with Spain.* Bacon's Works, vol. iii. p. 505, edit. 1803.  
 And in his Essays, “ The Turk hath at hand, for cause of  
 “ war, the propagation of his law or sect; a quarrel that he  
 “ may always command.” Vol. ii. p. 328.

\* As it is in the present day with the Turkish nation. The principle that, for the purpose of converting the infidels, war is the ordinance of God, is acknowledged by the Muselman doctors. They have accommodated it, however, to modern times, by the explanation that the duty is sufficiently performed when only one Muhammedan country is in a state of hostility with an infidel people.

west might have instituted Crusades on principles of self-defence. (But as they had acquiesced for ages in the existence of Islamism, they could not afterwards draw the sword, except for the purpose of preventing or repelling new aggressions. . . No dangers hung over Christendom at the time when the Crusades commenced. During the greater part of the century at the end of which the din of religious war resounded throughout Europe, the Seljukian Turks or Tartars were formidable foes to the oriental Christians, and, as we have seen, the terrified Greek emperors frequently implored the succour of the west. But some years before the call was answered, the Turkish empire had suffered the usual fate of oriental greatness, for the emir, Ortok, rebelled in Jerusalem, and the kingdom of Rhoum, or Asia Minor, would not own the supremacy of the Seljuks. If the sultan of Nice had been aided by the Seljukian lord, the Cæsars must have been hurled from their throne. But on the death of Soliman,\* the new state in Asia Minor lost much of its vigour; and the fair prospects of the Tartars for universal dominion were blasted when Malek Shah died.† The royal vassals became independent monarchs. Asia, indeed, was warlike,

z 2

but

\* A.D. 1085.

† A.D. 1092.



CHAP.  
VIII.  

---

but it was divided. The Crusaders, on their arrival in the Moslem states, were opposed by large armies; for the power of the European hosts had spread alarm over all Muselman Asia; and mutual jealousies yielded to the high necessity of preservation. But after the Christians had entered Syria, civil wars among the Turks were renewed; and the rightful lord of Nice had as many districts stript from him by his turbulent nobility as by his religious foes. The want of union between the Seljukian empire and the Seljukian kingdom of Rhoum, and the subsequent dismemberment of both these great states, were the circumstances in politics which preserved Constantinople. The first Crusaders restored much of Bithynia to the Greek emperor; and Alexius Comnenas and his successors profited by the victories of the soldiers of Christ, and of the dissensions among the Moslem emirs, and in consequence of these co-operating causes recovered the dominion over the Grecian shores of the Mediterranean and Euxine seas.

On principles of morals and politics, therefore, the holy wars cannot be justified. It has been shown, that no dangers menaced Europe at the commencement of the Crusades; and it is only a subject of conjecture whether circumstances might in after times have warranted the military

military excitement of Christendom against Islamism. Perhaps the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem diverted the thoughts of Saladin from the subjugation of Constantinople. The master passion of that extraordinary man was hatred of the infidels; but the objects of his fanatical detestation were powerful in Palestine, and the lord of Syria and Egypt, of course, made their destruction his first attempt. The perpetual rebellions of the Atabeks prevented him for many years from seriously attacking the Franks. Death terminated his career of victory, before it could be proved whether his religious ambition was sated, or whether he would not lead his conquering armies into Asia Minor. It may, I think, be fairly conjectured that the only circumstance likely to have checked him, would have been his fear of the rebellion of his valuable province of Egypt, when he should be far removed from the seat of government. His dominion was much greater than that of the Ottoman monarchs when they stormed the capital of the Byzantine empire; and if Saladin's power had, like their's, arisen in Asia Minor, the fall of Constantinople would have been the first and chief object in his desires of foreign hostility. The wars of the early Saracens with the Greeks had shown the difficulty of carrying on attacks upon the imperial city,

CHAP.  
VIII.

unless the whole of the surrounding states were at the command of the besiegers: and as Saladin could not sit down before Constantinople with the advantages which the Ottoman monarchs possessed, the issue perhaps might have been different.

In tracing the history of Europe in its progress from barbarism to refinement, and in accounting for the various phænomena of the moral world, the philosophical observer of man reverts with anxious seriousness to the Crusades of the Latins in the east. Those transmarine expeditions so deeply convulsed the moral fabric of the west, they stand so prominent in the picture of former ages, that curiosity is awakened to the investigation, whether they left some lasting impression of good or of evil on the world. In the two hundred years of their continuance, Europe was making slow and silent advances in arts and civilization; and there were great changes of scene in the political theatre. Viewing then the natural union between principle and event, and guarding ourselves against the error of confounding chronological coincidences with moral connexions, the inquiry is to be made into the consequences of the holy wars.\*

A stamp

\* Like many other subjects of inquiry, the philosophy of history has had its alchymists. The search of a single cause  
of

A stamp of permanency was fixed on popular superstition when pilgrimages became a matter of public concern and national interest. At the same time also, they lost many of their original characteristics. Those religious journeys were only consistent with the Christian character, when they were performed in harmony with great and primary duties. They might have been considered the ornaments of a religious life if they had proceeded from holy sympathy; but when their essential merit was made to consist in the destruction of men, and trampling on the law of nations, their natural tendency was to indurate the heart, and brutalize the character. War became a sacred duty, and obligatory on every class of mankind. The fair face of religion was besmeared with blood, and heavenly attraction was changed for demoniacal repulsiveness. The Crusades encouraged the most horrible violences of fanaticism.\* They

z 4

were

of all effects has bewildered the brains of many reasoners. At one time it was the literary fashion to pay more homage to Bagdad than to Rome; and, with equal wisdom, many writers have ascribed all the civilization and learning of Europe to the Crusades.

\* Independently of the Crusades of children, which the reader will find mentioned in note T, there were two popular commotions in France during and after the thirteenth century, under pretence of crusading. In 1251 and 1320, cer-

tain

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

were the precedent for the military contentions of the church with the Prussians and Albigen-  
ses ; and as the execrable Inquisition arose out of the spirit of clerical dragooning, (the wars in Palestine brought a frightful calamity on the world. Universal dominion was the ambition of the Roman pontiffs ; ) and the iniquity of the means was in dreadful accordance with the audacity of the project. The pastors of the church used anathemas, excommunications, interdicts, and every weapon in the storehouse of spiritual artillery : and when the world was in arms for the purpose of destroying infidels, it was natural that the soldiers of God should turn aside and chastise other foes to the true religion. Before the æra of hostilities in Palestine, among the objects of the military profession was the defence of the church. Thus the cavalier, in vociferating his profession of faith, brandished his sword, or touched the gospels with its point. The martial character of the religion of the eleventh century has been already mentioned as one great cause of the holy wars. Of itself it

certain fanatics raised popular assemblies for the avowed purpose of going to Jerusalem. Much blood was shed, and every species of lawlessness was committed. The Jews seem to have been the chief sufferers. Du Cange, Latin Glossary, article Pastorelli.

it would naturally have led to aggressive hostility on heretics; and the Popes would have called on the world to arm for such purposes, although the example of Palestine had not been before them. But we know that they did profit by the general disposition of the world to fight opinions, that the pardons and indulgences\* which were given to one description of religious warriors, were imparted to another, and that the tide of blood and fanaticism did not flow only through Saracenian lands. (Crusades with idolators and erring Christians were considered as virtuous and as necessary as Crusades with Saracens; the south of France was saturated with heretical blood; and those booted apostles, the Teutonic

\* The conduct of the Popes in the holy wars has been noticed in several parts of this work. The result seems to be, that at first the heads of union gained authority by encouraging religious wars, but that they afterwards lost it by their arrogance and avarice. M. Heeren wishes us to think, but appears afraid openly to say, that the Crusades produced the Reformation. "Les Croisades firent aussi inventer les *indulgences*, dont l'abus irrita Luther au seizième siècle, et amena la réformation.—Peut-on en conclure que les Croisades soient la cause de la guerre des Hussites et de la réformation de Luther?—On en peut conclure seulement cette ancienne vérité, que tout est, étroitement lié dans la série des événemens qui forment les destinées de notre espèce." *Essai sur l'Influence des Croisades*, p. 176. See p. 342, ante, note.

CHAP.  
VIII.

(Teutonic knights, converted) sword in hand, the Prussians and Lithuanians from idolatry to Christianity.)

The sword of religious persecution was not directed against Turks and heretics only. The reader remembers the sanguinary enormities that disgraced the opening of the first Crusade. (Not only was this instance of persecution of the Jews the earliest one upon record in the annals of the west since the fall of the Roman empire; but it is also true that that wretched people met with most of their dreadful calamities during the time of the holy wars.) It is highly probable that the hatred which the Christians felt against them was embittered by that fierce and mistaken zeal for religion which gave birth to the Crusades; (and as the chief object of those Crusades was the recovery of the sepulchre at Jerusalem, it was natural that the Christian belligerents should behold with equal detestation the nation which had crucified the Saviour, as the nation which continued to profane his tomb. This conjecture is much confirmed by the circumstance, that the prevailing prejudice in the middle ages against the Jews was, that they often crucified Christian children in mockery of the great sacrifice. If it be objected to this reasoning that the crusading Cœur de Lion befriended the Jews, I reply, that the crusading

crusading king Edward the First expelled them from England.) The former prince was under the perfect dominion of a mere love of war, careless of the cause or object. The latter hero, on the contrary, was strongly influenced by the religious spirit of chivalry, and consequently a more complete instance of the crusading character than his lion-hearted ancestor.

The features of ferocity which religion assumed from the Asiatic contests, were not the only subject of evil. The penalties which the church inflicted on its members, as the temporal punishments of sin, might have been unwarranted by Scripture, and were, doubtless, often awarded by cruelty and caprice. But the practice of prayer, fasting, and alms-giving, was in itself salubrious to the individual, and beneficial to society. It softened pride; it subdued the sensual passions; it diffused charity. Instead of these blessings, the slaughter of human beings was made the propitiation of offence; and the Christian virtues of self-denial and benevolence were considered an absurd and antiquated fashion. As the discipline of the church had been broken in upon for one purpose, it could be violated for another. The repentant sinner who could not take the cross himself, might contribute to the charge of the holy expedition. When offences were once commuted for money, the religious application of the price of pardon

soon



CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

before they could have been justified on this last mentioned argument, proof was necessary that the danger was imminent, and that time and circumstances had not reduced the principle to a mere dry inoperative letter of the law.\* In the first hundred and fifty years of Muhammedan history, the Muselmans made continued and successful attacks on the Christians; and the invasion of France by the Spanish and African Moors, seemed to endanger Christendom as a world independent of and not tributary to the Saracens. In all that long period the people of the west

“ for cause of religion, but upon a just fear; forasmuch as  
 “ it is a fundamental law in the Turkish empire, that they  
 “ may, without any other provocation, make war upon  
 “ Christendom for the propagation of their law; so that  
 “ there lieth upon Christians a perpetual fear of war, hang-  
 “ ing over their heads, from them; and therefore they may  
 “ at all times, as they think good, be upon the preventive.”  
*War with Spain.* Bacon's Works, vol. iii. p. 505. edit. 1803.  
 And in his Essays, “ The Turk hath at hand, for cause of  
 “ war, the propagation of his law or sect; a quarrel that he  
 “ may always command.” Vol. ii. p. 328.

\* As it is in the present day with the Turkish nation. The principle that, for the purpose of converting the infidels, war is the ordinance of God, is acknowledged by the Muselman doctors. They have accommodated it, however, to modern times, by the explanation that the duty is sufficiently performed when only one Muhammedan country is in a state of hostility with an infidel people.

west might have instituted Crusades on principles of self-defence. (But as they had acquiesced for ages in the existence of Islamism, they could not afterwards draw the sword, except for the purpose of preventing or repelling new aggressions. No dangers hung over Christendom at the time when the Crusades commenced. During the greater part of the century at the end of which the din of religious war resounded throughout Europe, the Seljukian Turks or Tartars were formidable foes to the oriental Christians, and, as we have seen, the terrified Greek emperors frequently implored the succour of the west. But some years before the call was answered, the Turkish empire had suffered the usual fate of oriental greatness, for the emir, Ortok, rebelled in Jerusalem, and the kingdom of Rhoum, or Asia Minor, would not own the supremacy of the Seljuks. If the sultan of Nice had been aided by the Seljukian lord, the Cæsars must have been hurled from their throne. But on the death of Soliman,\* the new state in Asia Minor lost much of its vigour; and the fair prospects of the Tartars for universal dominion were blasted when Malek Shah died.† The royal vassals became independent monarchs. Asia, indeed, was warlike,

z 2

but

\* A. D. 1085.

† A. D. 1092.

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

but it was divided. The Crusaders, on their arrival in the Moslem states, were opposed by large armies; for the power of the European hosts had spread alarm over all Muselman Asia; and mutual jealousies yielded to the high necessity of preservation. But after the Christians had entered Syria, civil wars among the Turks were renewed; and the rightful lord of Nice had as many districts stript from him by his turbulent nobility as by his religious foes. The want of union between the Seljukian empire and the Seljukian kingdom of Rhoum, and the subsequent dismemberment of both these great states, were the circumstances in politics which preserved Constantinople. The first Crusaders restored much of Bithynia to the Greek emperor; and Alexius Comnenas and his successors profited by the victories of the soldiers of Christ, and of the dissensions among the Moslem emirs, and in consequence of these co-operating causes recovered the dominion over the Grecian shores of the Mediterranean and Euxine seas.

On principles of morals and politics, therefore, the holy wars cannot be justified. It has been shown, that no dangers menaced Europe at the commencement of the Crusades; and it is only a subject of conjecture whether circumstances might in after times have warranted the  
military

military excitement of Christendom against Islamism. Perhaps the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem diverted the thoughts of Saladin from the subjugation of Constantinople. The master passion of that extraordinary man was hatred of the infidels; but the objects of his fanatical detestation were powerful in Palestine, and the lord of Syria and Egypt, of course, made their destruction his first attempt. The perpetual rebellions of the Atabeks prevented him for many years from seriously attacking the Franks. Death terminated his career of victory, before it could be proved whether his religious ambition was sated, or whether he would not lead his conquering armies into Asia Minor. It may, I think, be fairly conjectured that the only circumstance likely to have checked him, would have been his fear of the rebellion of his valuable province of Egypt, when he should be far removed from the seat of government. His dominion was much greater than that of the Ottoman monarchs when they stormed the capital of the Byzantine empire; and if Saladin's power had, like their's, arisen in Asia Minor, the fall of Constantinople would have been the first and chief object in his desires of foreign hostility. The wars of the early Saracens with the Greeks had shown the difficulty of carrying on attacks upon the imperial city,

CHAP.  
VIII.

unless the whole of the surrounding states were at the command of the besiegers: and as Saladin could not sit down before Constantinople with the advantages which the Ottoman monarchs possessed, the issue perhaps might have been different.

In tracing the history of Europe in its progress from barbarism to refinement, and in accounting for the various phenomena of the moral world, the philosophical observer of man reverts with anxious seriousness to the Crusades of the Latins in the east. Those transmarine expeditions so deeply convulsed the moral fabric of the west, they stand so prominent in the picture of former ages, that curiosity is awakened to the investigation, whether they left some lasting impression of good or of evil on the world. In the two hundred years of their continuance, Europe was making slow and silent advances in arts and civilization; and there were great changes of scene in the political theatre. Viewing then the natural union between principle and event, and guarding ourselves against the error of confounding chronological coincidences with moral connexions, the inquiry is to be made into the consequences of the holy wars.\*

A stamp

\* Like many other subjects of inquiry, the philosophy of history has had its alchemists. The search of a single cause  
of

A stamp of permanency was fixed on popular superstition when pilgrimages became a matter of public concern and national interest. At the same time also, they lost many of their original characteristics. Those religious journeys were only consistent with the Christian character, when they were performed in harmony with great and primary duties. They might have been considered the ornaments of a religious life if they had proceeded from holy sympathy; but when their essential merit was made to consist in the destruction of men, and trampling on the law of nations, their natural tendency was to indurate the heart, and brutalize the character. War became a sacred duty, and obligatory on every class of mankind. The fair face of religion was besmeared with blood, and heavenly attraction was changed for demoniacal repulsiveness. The Crusades encouraged the most horrible violences of fanaticism.\* They

z 4

were

of all effects has bewildered the brains of many reasoners. At one time it was the literary fashion to pay more homage to Bagdad than to Rome; and, with equal wisdom, many writers have ascribed all the civilization and learning of Europe to the Crusades.

\* Independently of the Crusades of children, which the reader will find mentioned in note T, there were two popular commotions in France during and after the thirteenth century, under pretence of crusading. In 1251 and 1320, certain

CHAP.  
VIII.  

---

were the precedent for the military contentions of the church with the Prussians and Albigenes; and as the execrable Inquisition arose out of the spirit of clerical dragooning, the wars in Palestine brought a frightful calamity on the world. Universal dominion was the ambition of the Roman pontiffs; and the iniquity of the means was in dreadful accordance with the audacity of the project. The pastors of the church used anathemas, excommunications, interdicts, and every weapon in the storehouse of spiritual artillery: and when the world was in arms for the purpose of destroying infidels, it was natural that the soldiers of God should turn aside and chastise other foes to the true religion. Before the æra of hostilities in Palestine, among the objects of the military profession was the defence of the church. Thus the cavalier, in vociferating his profession of faith, brandished his sword, or touched the gospels with its point. The martial character of the religion of the eleventh century has been already mentioned as one great cause of the holy wars. Of itself it

certain fanatics raised popular assemblies for the avowed purpose of going to Jerusalem. Much blood was shed, and every species of lawlessness was committed. The Jews seem to have been the chief sufferers. Du Cange, Latin Glossary, article Pastorelli.

it would naturally have led to aggressive hostility on heretics; and the Popes would have called on the world to arm for such purposes, although the example of Palestine had not been before them. But we know that they did profit by the general disposition of the world to fight opinions, that the pardons and indulgences\* which were given to one description of religious warriors, were imparted to another, and that the tide of blood and fanaticism did not flow only through Saracenian lands. (Crusades with idolators and erring Christians were considered as virtuous and as necessary as Crusades with Saracens; the south of France was saturated with heretical blood; and those booted apostles, the Teutonic

\* The conduct of the Popes in the holy wars has been noticed in several parts of this work. The result seems to be, that at first the heads of union gained authority by encouraging religious wars, but that they afterwards lost it by their arrogance and avarice. M. Heeren wishes us to think, but appears afraid openly to say, that the Crusades produced the Reformation. "Les Croisades firent aussi inventer les *indulgences*, dont l'abus irrita Luther au seizième siècle, et amena la réformation.—Peut-on en conclure que les Croisades soient la cause de la guerre des Hussites et de la réformation de Luther?—On en peut conclure seulement cette ancienne vérité, que tout est, étroitement lié dans la série des événemens qui forment les destinées de notre espèce." *Essai sur l'Influence des Croisades*, p. 176. See p. 342, ante, note.



CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

Teutonic knights, converted, sword in hand, the Prussians and Lithuanians from idolatry to Christianity.)

The sword of religious persecution was not directed against Turks and heretics only. The reader remembers the sanguinary enormities that disgraced the opening of the first Crusade. (Not only was this instance of persecution of the Jews the earliest one upon record in the annals of the west since the fall of the Roman empire; but it is also true that that wretched people met with most of their dreadful calamities during the time of the holy wars.) It is highly probable that the hatred which the Christians felt against them was embittered by that fierce and mistaken zeal for religion which gave birth to the Crusades; (and as the chief object of those Crusades was the recovery of the sepulchre at Jerusalem, it was natural that the Christian belligerents should behold with equal detestation the nation which had crucified the Saviour, as the nation which continued to profane his tomb. This conjecture is much confirmed by the circumstance, that the prevailing prejudice in the middle ages against the Jews was, that they often crucified Christian children in mockery of the great sacrifice. If it be objected to this reasoning that the crusading Cœur de Lion befriended the Jews, I reply, that the crusading

crusading king Edward the First expelled them from England.) The former prince was under the perfect dominion of a mere love of war, careless of the cause or object. The latter hero, on the contrary, was strongly influenced by the religious spirit of chivalry, and consequently a more complete instance of the crusading character than his lion-hearted ancestor.

The features of ferocity which religion assumed from the Asiatic contests, were not the only subject of evil. The penalties which the church inflicted on its members, as the temporal punishments of sin, might have been unwarranted by Scripture, and were, doubtless, often awarded by cruelty and caprice. But the practice of prayer, fasting, and alms-giving, was in itself salubrious to the individual, and beneficial to society. It softened pride; it subdued the sensual passions; it diffused charity. Instead of these blessings, the slaughter of human beings was made the propitiation of offence; and the Christian virtues of self-denial and benevolence were considered an absurd and antiquated fashion. As the discipline of the church had been broken in upon for one purpose, it could be violated for another. The repentant sinner who could not take the cross himself, might contribute to the charge of the holy expedition. When offences were once commuted for money, the religious application of the price of pardon soon

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

soon ceased to be necessary. Absolutions from penance became a matter of traffic, and holy virtues were discountenanced. For this reason, and for many others, the Crusades conferred no benefits on morals. The evils of a life free from domestic restraints, formed a strong argument against pilgrimages in very early ages of the church, and it does not appear that when the wanderers became soldiers their morals improved. The vices of the military colonists in Palestine are the burden of many a page of the crusading annalists. Something must be detracted from those representations in consequence of their authors' prejudice, that the vices of the Christians in the holy land effected the ruin of the kingdom. Yet enough remains to shew that the tone of morals was not at a higher pitch in Palestine than in Europe. The decrees of the council at Naplousa prove that a difference of religion, although a barrier against the dearest charities of life, was no impediment to a vicious sensual intercourse between the Franks and the Moslems. The Latins lived in a constant course of plunder on their Muselman neighbours, and therefore on their return to Europe could not spread around them any rays of virtue.\*

\* See vol. i. p. 7; 343, ante, note; p. 451. Vol. ii. p. 278, note. The old romances give a faithful picture of the dress of the times, and, with a dash of caricature, of the manners and

Undoubtedly the Crusades augmented the wealth of the clergy. It cannot indeed be shown that the church derived pecuniary benefit from any malversation in its office of guardian of the pilgrims' estates, and, in the absence of proof, moral delinquency must not be inferred.\* But the rapacious barons frequently plundered the clergy, and when afterwards they were brought to such a sense of religion as to resolve on a holy war, the restitution of ecclesiastical property became a necessary preliminary proceeding.

and morals too. In the entertaining romance of *Le Renard*, written in the thirteenth century, it is said, that foreign pilgrimages had done no good to any body, and that many good people had been made bad by them. *Notices des MSS. du Roi*, vol. 5, p. 303. In tracing the history of morals, it is curious to observe, that *Piers Ploughman* speaks of pilgrims and palmers, who on their return have leave to tell lies all the rest of their lives.

\* In the legitimate exercise of their office of trustees and guardians, the clergy must of course have considerably augmented their wealth and influence. “ *Li Pontefici co' loro brevi ricevettero sotto la protettione sua, e degli altre prelati le case e li negotii de crocesignati, così si chiamavano quelli, che andavano alla guerra, & questo apporto alle chiese quell' accrescimento che suol apportare l'esser tutore curatore ò procuratore di vedoue pupilli e minori, ne il magistrato secolare poteva pensar pur di difendere alcuno per il terrore delle censure, che all' hora s'adoperavano senza risparmio.*” *P. Paolo, Trattato dell materie Beneficiare*, vol. 1. p. 119. *Opere*, 5 vol. 12mo. 1675.

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

but it was divided. The Crusaders, on their arrival in the Moslem states, were opposed by large armies; for the power of the European hosts had spread alarm over all Muselman Asia; and mutual jealousies yielded to the high necessity of preservation. But after the Christians had entered Syria, civil wars among the Turks were renewed; and the rightful lord of Nice had as many districts stript from him by his turbulent nobility as by his religious foes. The want of union between the Seljukian empire and the Seljukian kingdom of Rhoum, and the subsequent dismemberment of both these great states, were the circumstances in politics which preserved Constantinople. The first Crusaders restored much of Bithynia to the Greek emperor; and Alexius Comnenas and his successors profited by the victories of the soldiers of Christ, and of the dissensions among the Moslem emirs, and in consequence of these co-operating causes recovered the dominion over the Grecian shores of the Mediterranean and Euxine seas.

On principles of morals and politics, therefore, the holy wars cannot be justified. It has been shown, that no dangers menaced Europe at the commencement of the Crusades; and it is only a subject of conjecture whether circumstances might in after times have warranted the  
military

military excitement of Christendom against Islamism. Perhaps the Latin kingdom of Jerusalem diverted the thoughts of Saladin from the subjugation of Constantinople. The master passion of that extraordinary man was hatred of the infidels; but the objects of his fanatical detestation were powerful in Palestine, and the lord of Syria and Egypt, of course, made their destruction his first attempt. The perpetual rebellions of the Atabeks prevented him for many years from seriously attacking the Franks. Death terminated his career of victory, before it could be proved whether his religious ambition was sated, or whether he would not lead his conquering armies into Asia Minor. It may, I think, be fairly conjectured that the only circumstance likely to have checked him, would have been his fear of the rebellion of his valuable province of Egypt, when he should be far removed from the seat of government. His dominion was much greater than that of the Ottoman monarchs when they stormed the capital of the Byzantine empire; and if Saladin's power had, like their's, arisen in Asia Minor, the fall of Constantinople would have been the first and chief object in his desires of foreign hostility. The wars of the early Saracens with the Greeks had shown the difficulty of carrying on attacks upon the imperial city,

CHAP.  
VIII.

unless the whole of the surrounding states were at the command of the besiegers: and as Saladin could not sit down before Constantinople with the advantages which the Ottoman monarchs possessed, the issue perhaps might have been different.

In tracing the history of Europe in its progress from barbarism to refinement, and in accounting for the various phenomena of the moral world, the philosophical observer of man reverts with anxious seriousness to the Crusades of the Latins in the east. Those transmarine expeditions so deeply convulsed the moral fabric of the west, they stand so prominent in the picture of former ages, that curiosity is awakened to the investigation, whether they left some lasting impression of good or of evil on the world. In the two hundred years of their continuance, Europe was making slow and silent advances in arts and civilization; and there were great changes of scene in the political theatre. Viewing then the natural union between principle and event, and guarding ourselves against the error of confounding chronological coincidences with moral connexions, the inquiry is to be made into the consequences of the holy wars.\*

A stamp

\* Like many other subjects of inquiry, the philosophy of history has had its alchymists. The search of a single cause  
of

A stamp of permanency was fixed on popular superstition when pilgrimages became a matter of public concern and national interest. At the same time also, they lost many of their original characteristics. Those religious journeys were only consistent with the Christian character, when they were performed in harmony with great and primary duties. They might have been considered the ornaments of a religious life if they had proceeded from holy sympathy; but when their essential merit was made to consist in the destruction of men, and trampling on the law of nations, their natural tendency was to indurate the heart, and brutalize the character. War became a sacred duty, and obligatory on every class of mankind. The fair face of religion was besmeared with blood, and heavenly attraction was changed for demoniacal repulsiveness. The Crusades encouraged the most horrible violences of fanaticism.\* They

z 4

were

of all effects has bewildered the brains of many reasoners. At one time it was the literary fashion to pay more homage to Bagdad than to Rome; and, with equal wisdom, many writers have ascribed all the civilization and learning of Europe to the Crusades.

\* Independently of the Crusades of children, which the reader will find mentioned in note T, there were two popular commotions in France during and after the thirteenth century, under pretence of crusading. In 1251 and 1320, certain



CHAP.  
VIII.  

---

were the precedent for the military contentions of the church with the Prussians and Albigen-  
ses ; and as the execrable Inquisition arose out of the spirit of clerical dragooning, (the wars in Palestine brought a frightful calamity on the world. Universal dominion was the ambition of the Roman pontiffs ; ) and the iniquity of the means was in dreadful accordance with the audacity of the project. The pastors of the church used anathemas, excommunications, interdicts, and every weapon in the storehouse of spiritual artillery : and when the world was in arms for the purpose of destroying infidels, it was natural that the soldiers of God should turn aside and chastise other foes to the true religion. Before the æra of hostilities in Palestine, among the objects of the military profession was the defence of the church. Thus the cavalier, in vociferating his profession of faith, brandished his sword, or touched the gospels with its point. The martial character of the religion of the eleventh century has been already mentioned as one great cause of the holy wars. Of itself  
it

certain fanatics raised popular assemblies for the avowed purpose of going to Jerusalem. Much blood was shed, and every species of lawlessness was committed. The Jews seem to have been the chief sufferers. Du Cange, Latin Glossary, article Pastorelli.

it would naturally have led to aggressive hostility on heretics; and the Popes would have called on the world to arm for such purposes, although the example of Palestine had not been before them. But we know that they did profit by the general disposition of the world to fight opinions, that the pardons and indulgences\* which were given to one description of religious warriors, were imparted to another, and that the tide of blood and fanaticism did not flow only through Saracenian lands. (Crusades with idolators and erring Christians were considered as virtuous and as necessary as Crusades with Saracens; the south of France was saturated with heretical blood; and those booted apostles, the Teutonick

\* The conduct of the Popes in the holy wars has been noticed in several parts of this work. The result seems to be, that at first the heads of union gained authority by encouraging religious wars, but that they afterwards lost it by their arrogance and avarice. M. Heeren wishes us to think, but appears afraid openly to say, that the Crusades produced the Reformation. "Les Croisades firent aussi inventer les *indulgences*, dont l'abus irrita Luther au seizième siècle, et amena la réformation.—Peut-on en conclure que les Croisades soient la cause de la guerre des Hussites et de la réformation de Luther?—On en peut conclure seulement cette ancienne vérité, que tout est, étroitement lié dans la série des événemens qui forment les destinées de notre espèce." *Essai sur l'Influence des Croisades*, p. 176. See p. 342, ante, note.

CHAP.  
VIII.  
      

Teutonic knights, converted) sword in hand, the Prussians and Lithuanians from idolatry to Christianity.)

The sword of religious persecution was not directed against Turks and heretics only. The reader remembers the sanguinary enormities that disgraced the opening of the first Crusade. (Not only was this instance of persecution of the Jews the earliest one upon record in the annals of the west since the fall of the Roman empire; but it is also true that that wretched people met with most of their dreadful calamities during the time of the holy wars.) It is highly probable that the hatred which the Christians felt against them was embittered by that fierce and mistaken zeal for religion which gave birth to the Crusades; and as the chief object of those Crusades was the recovery of the sepulchre at Jerusalem, it was natural that the Christian belligerents should behold with equal detestation the nation which had crucified the Saviour, as the nation which continued to profane his tomb. This conjecture is much confirmed by the circumstance, that the prevailing prejudice in the middle ages against the Jews was, that they often crucified Christian children in mockery of the great sacrifice. If it be objected to this reasoning that the crusading Cœur de Lion befriended the Jews, I reply, that the crusading

crusading king Edward the First expelled them from England.) The former prince was under the perfect dominion of a mere love of war, careless of the cause or object. The latter hero, on the contrary, was strongly influenced by the religious spirit of chivalry, and consequently a more complete instance of the crusading character than his lion-hearted ancestor.

The features of ferocity which religion assumed from the Asiatic contests, were not the only subject of evil. The penalties which the church inflicted on its members, as the temporal punishments of sin, might have been unwarranted by Scripture, and were, doubtless, often awarded by cruelty and caprice. But the practice of prayer, fasting, and alms-giving, was in itself salubrious to the individual, and beneficial to society. It softened pride ; it subdued the sensual passions ; it diffused charity. Instead of these blessings, the slaughter of human beings was made the propitiation of offence ; and the Christian virtues of self-denial and benevolence were considered an absurd and antiquated fashion. As the discipline of the church had been broken in upon for one purpose, it could be violated for another. The repentant sinner who could not take the cross himself, might contribute to the charge of the holy expedition. When offences were once commuted for money, the religious application of the price of pardon soon

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

writers might *possibly* have been transmitted to Europe by the Christians in Palestine: but we *know* that they were devoutly studied in Spain, and that all the Arabic Spanish knowledge was communicated to every part of the west. The south of France was always more enlightened than the north; for Marseilles and other commercial towns never entirely lost that polish of civilization which they had received, by reason of their connection with the great states of antiquity: and their continued habits of commerce made them rich and luxurious. (When, therefore, Raymond Berenger, count of Barcelona, acquired the throne of Provence, his new subjects were well fitted to receive the Arabic notions of taste and elegance which he introduced from Spain. But still a great cause of the diffusion of oriental imagery and oriental apologues over the literature of the west, was unquestionably owing to the intercourse between Asia and Europe, occasioned by pilgrimages, crusades, and commerce. The minstrels, who were the successors of the northern scalds, travelled to Palestine both before and during the holy wars.) When, for instance, Louis VII. went into the east, he was accompanied by "Legions de Poetes," to "charm.

"charm the seas to give him gentle pass,"\* and to solace him with their songs during the dangers and inconveniences of so long a voyage.†

CHAP.  
VIII.

VOL. II.

2 B

It

\* Warton's beautiful opening to his Ode called *The Crusade* is applicable here.

"Bound for holy Palestine,

"Nimble we brush'd the level brine,

"All in azure steel array'd;

"O'er the wave our weapons play'd,

"And made the dancing billows glow;

"High upon the trophied prow,

"Many a warrior-minstrel swung

"His sounding harp, and boldly sung."

† Warton, *History of English Poetry*, vol. i. p. 111. The Jesuit Claude François Menestrier, no less renowned for his love of the theatre and all manner of public shews than for the capacity of his memory and the variety of his learning, contends that it is certain that pilgrimages introduced the theatrical spectacles of old times called the *Mysteries*. The pious itinerants dissipated the languor of the voyage by composing and singing songs relating to the subjects of their expedition. Troops of these pilgrims, after their return to France and other places, went about different towns, repeating these songs, and the citizens, sympathizing with their enthusiasm, erected theatres, whereon, upon festival days, the mysteries of religion were represented. Bayle, *Dict. art. Chocquet*. Bayle has received this story without examination, and Boileau has put it into very elegant verses. See his *Art of Poetry*, cant. 2. Every person acquainted with French literature knows the disposition of continental writers to magnify the consequences of the Crusades. With respect to the present question it is only necessary for me to say that the events in sacred history were dramatised and acted by the

CHAP.  
VIII.

It was merely agreeable fictions that were communicated; nothing but what might be gained from a short and casual intercourse. The circumstance of Muselmans aspiring to the dignity of chivalry, is a subject, indeed, of the Trouveurs, or poets of the north of France, who flourished from the close of the twelfth to the middle of the fourteenth century. But the wars between the Christians and infidels in the holy land form no part of their theme. Those Italian novels which constitute much of the basis of the Decameron of Boccaccio are likewise barren of crusading events: but if it be true that many of those novels were drawn from the Fabliaux of the Trouveurs, we cannot expect to find in the copy what does not exist in the original. The bright days of Troubadour song were also coeval with the Crusades. The Provençal poets sometimes emerged from the mystics of love,\*

to the monks anterior to the holy wars: and I refer my readers for proofs of this assertion to Warton, Percy, and other writers on the origin of the Mysteries.

\* Such as the difficult question, whether a lover had rather behold his mistress dead, or married to his successful rival. Every deep and delicate subject was discussed in the courts of love with the greatest solemnity, and with all the abstractions of metaphysical refinement; "and it is probable," a polite author observes, "that the disputes on these subjects would have produced as many heresies as love

to excite the zeal of princes and subjects for the recovery of the holy land. Occasionally and accidentally Palestine was the scene of their romantic passion.\* As the Crusades were wild

2 B 2

and

"love as in religion, but that the judgment-seat in the tribunals was filled by ladies, whose decision was very properly admitted to be final and absolute. It should seem that the Provençals were so completely absorbed in these abstract speculations, as to neglect and despise the composition of fabulous histories, only four of which are attributed to the Troubadours; and even these are rather legions of devotion than of chivalry." Preface to the *Fabliaux*, p. 26.

\* One Troubadour, Geoffrey Rudel, died for the charms of an imaginary mistress. He became, says Warton, enamoured from fancy of the countess of Tripoli, whom he had never seen. He embarked for the east; fell sick during the voyage through the fever of expectation, and was brought on shore half expiring. The countess, having heard the news of the arrival of this gallant stranger, hastened to the shore, and took him by the hand: he opened his eyes, and, at once overpowered by disease and gratitude, had but just time to say inarticulately, "that having seen her he died satisfied." The countess caused him to be magnificently buried among the knights Templars, was seized with a profound melancholy, and turned nun.

This history may bring to the reader's recollection another equally romantic and dreadful, which is told of Ralph, Chatelain de Coucy, who went with the lord de Coucy to the holy land in the third Crusade, and who was mortally wounded at the siege of Acre: In his last moments he bequeathed his heart to his mistress, who was a married woman (a fashionable



CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

and romantic adventures, it might be expected that they would have formed the great topic of popular fiction. But, excepting the romance concerning Richard, and another relating to Godfrey, the Crusades are not the subject of the romances of chivalry.\* | The victories of Arthur and

(a fashionable sort of attachment in the twelfth century as well as in the nineteenth). The husband met the messenger, and seized the precious relic. His mode of revenge was not more gross than was the love of the Chatelain. His cooks dressed the heart, and it was placed at the family board. Unluckily for herself, the lady, not being a square elbowed family drudge, never interfered with culinary details, and knew not that the banquet was of the Thyestean description. She partook freely of the heart, whose genuine taste, like that of the young Saracen's head eaten by Richard, was disguised by "spicery powder and saffron." Her malignant lord then told her of the dreadful mistake which she had made. Out of grief and indignation she vowed that no other food should ever pass her lips; and she continued firm to her purpose till her life closed.

\* "Nothing can be worse founded than the assertion of Warburton and Warton, that, after the holy wars, a new set of champions, conquests, and countries, were introduced into romance; and that Soliman, Nouredin, with the cities of Palestine and Egypt, became the favourite topics. Mr. Ritson has justly remarked that no such change took place as is pretended; and so far from the Crusades and holy land becoming favourite topics, there is not, with the exception of the uninteresting romance of Godfrey of Bouillon, a single tale of chivalry founded on  
" any

and Charlemagne were still dwelt upon, though the brilliant achievements of holy warriors were before the writers. The fame of the latter had not transcended the glory of the former. This love of ancient chivalry influenced the courts of princes as well as the haunts of poets; and it was the reputation of Arthur, not that of Godfrey, which Edward III. wished to emulate, and in honour of whom he kept a round table of knights.

The last point of enquiry into the consequences of the holy wars, concerns their effects on the political relations of the great European states. As the Crusades were carried on for holy objects, not for civil or national ends, their connection with politics could only have been collateral and indirect. The spirit of crusading, composed as it was of superstition and military ardour, was hostile to the advancement of knowledge and liberty; and, consequently, no improvement in the civil condition of the kingdoms of the west could have been the legitimate issue of the principles of the holy wars. The Pope

2 B 3

was

"any of these subjects. Perhaps these celebrated expeditions, undertaken for the recovery of the holy land, were too recent, and too much matters of real life, to admit the decorations of fiction." Dunlop, *History of Fiction*, vol. ii. p. 140. 2d edit.

CHAP.  
VIII.

was the only monarch who mixed politics with his piety ; and if Frederic II. had died in the holy land, or the Pope had executed his schemes of ambition, then the Asiatic annals would have become closely connected with the history of Germany and Italy. The other princes seem to have been influenced by the spirit of religion or of chivalry ; and it was only in the attempts again to disorder the intellect of Europe, that we find one monarch, Henry IV. of England, acting the part of a crafty politician. Great changes in the political aspect of Europe were coeval with, but were not occasioned by, the holy wars. The power of the French crown was much higher at the end of the thirteenth, than it had been at the same period of the eleventh century ; but the influence of the imperial throne was materially depressed. These opposite effects could never have been the simple results of the same cause ; namely, the loss of the flower of the western aristocracy in Palestine. The hereditary succession of the French monarchy had been made a fundamental law in the time of Hugh Capet. Unlike Germany, therefore, the nobles of France were not aggrandised by the possession of the elective franchise. The Capetian monarchs acquired many great and small fiefs, not on account of the absence or death of the barons in the holy wars, but,

as

as we have seen, in consequence of circumstances totally unconnected with the Crusades. The causes of the depression of imperial authority were the aggrandisement of the nobles, (a natural effect of the feudal system); the improvident grants of lands which the Suabian family made to the clergy; the contests between the Popes and emperors respecting their different jurisdictions, and, above all the rest, the destructive wars which the emperors waged in the north of Italy for the re-appexation of that country to the throne of the descendants of the imperial house of Charlemagne. The political changes in England cannot with justice be attributed to the Crusades. Until the days of Richard I. holy wars had not become a general or a national concern. The monarchy stood the same at the close of his reign as at its commencement; and the only favourable issue of Cœur de Lion's armament was an increase of military reputation. His renunciation of feudal sovereignty over Scotland had no influence on politics. Edward I. pressed his claim, although Richard had deprived him of his strongest support. The pusillanimous John assumed the cross; but that circumstance did not occur until after he had surrendered his crown to the papal see, and until the barons had formed a confederacy against him. His

CHAP.  
VIII.  

---

assumption of the cross neither retarded nor accelerated the progress of English liberty. The Pope was not linked to him by stronger ties than those which had formerly bound them; and the barons were not deceived by the religious hypocrisy of the king. The transmarine expeditions of the earls of Cornwall and Salisbury, and of prince Edward, in the reign of Henry III. were the ebullitions of religious and military ardour, but did not affect the general course of events.

The great political circumstance of the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and which was important above all others to civil liberty, was the appearance of free and corporate towns. But the Crusades neither produced their establishment, nor affected their history. Whenever any part of the public became more rich and enlightened than the rest, the tyranny of the aristocracy was found to be insupportable. The kings of France and England eagerly assisted the burghers of their respective countries, and enfranchised the towns in order to raise a barrier against baronial aggressions on the throne. In France it became a maxim, that no commune could be formed without the king's consent, and his officers were established in every town. The free cities in Germany acknowledged some feudal rights in the emperor. The Alps separated the Lombard

Lombard towns from their liege lords, and the dissimilarity of natural situation was highly favourable to the Italians; who were, moreover, encouraged in rebellion by the Pope, happy of any occasion of humbling the emperor. After various vicissitudes of fortune the battle of Legnano, and the peace of Constance, established the independence of the towns in the north of Italy. The Crusades did not contribute to these events; for the two sacred expeditions which had taken place were as disastrous to peasants as to princes, and drained Europe of all ranks of society. Consequently it was not from the holy wars that the people gained their liberties. We find that so ill regulated was the liberty of the towns alluded to, that anarchy soon succeeded. Men of personal importance and wealth aspired to sovereign honours; an overwhelming aristocracy extinguished freedom, and at the end of the thirteenth century there were as many princes in Tuscany and Lombardy as there had been free towns at the end of the twelfth.\* It is only in the maritime cities of Italy that any indisputable influence of the Crusades can be marked. Trade with the Christian states in Palestine, and the furnishing of transports to the pilgrims, increased

\* Hallam's Middle Ages, vol. i. ch. iii. part i.

CHAP.  
VIII.

increased the wealth of the commercial cities.\* The capture of Constantinople by the French and Venetians was important in its issues. Venice regained maritime ascendancy: but it was soon taken from her by the Genoese, who aided the Greeks to recover their capital. Genoa then became a leading power in the Mediterranean, and she subdued Pisa. The rapid increase of the wealth and power of Venice and Genoa, and the eventual destruction of Pisa seem, then, to form the principal circumstances in commercial history which the Crusades were instrumental in producing. But how insignificant were these events, both locally and generally, both in their relation to Italy and to the general history of Europe, when compared with the discovery of a maritime passage to India!

A view of the heroic ages of Christianity, in regard to their grand and general results, is, in itself, useful and important, though a melancholy employment. The Crusades retarded the march of civilization, thickened the clouds of ignorance and superstition; and encouraged intol-

\* Muratori, *Antiq. Italise. Med. Ævi*, II. 905. *Ungus de Vitry* mentions several sources of Italian wealth, during the Crusades. "Homines si quidem Italici terre sancte sunt valde necessarii, non solum in præliando, sed in navali exercitio, in mercimonium, et peregrinia, et vic-tualibus deportandis," &c. lib. i. c. 67.

"rance, cruelty, and fierceness. Religion lost its  
 mildness and charity; and war its mitigating  
 qualities of honour and courtesy. Such were  
 the bitter fruits of the holy wars! Painful is a  
 retrospect of the consequences;) but interesting  
 are the historical details of the heroic and fana-  
 tical achievements of our ancestors. The per-  
 fect singularity of the object, the different cha-  
 racters of the preachers and leaders of the Cru-  
 sades; the martial array of the ancient power  
 and majesty of Europe, the political and civil  
 history of the Latin states in Syria, the military  
 annals of the orders of St. John and the Temple,  
 &c. the regard of those who view the history of  
 human passions with the eyes of a philosopher  
 or a statesman.) We can follow with sympathy  
 both the deluded fanatic, and the noble adven-  
 turer in arms, in their wanderings and marches  
 through foreign regions, braving the most  
 frightful dangers, patient in toil, invincible in  
 military spirit. So visionary was the object, so  
 apparently remote from selfish relations, that  
 their fanaticism wears a character of generous  
 virtue. The picture, however, becomes dark-  
 ened, and nature recoils with horror from their  
 cruelties;\* and with shame from their habitual  
 folly

\* Tantum religio potuit suadere malorum.

Lucretius, I, 102.



CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

folly and senselessness. (Comparing the object with the cost, the gain proposed with the certain peril, we call the attempt the extremest idea of madness, and wonder that the western world should for two hundred years pour forth its blood and treasure in chase of a phantom.) But the Crusades were not a greater reproach to virtue and wisdom, than most of those contests which in every age of the world pride and ambition have given rise to. If what is perpetual be natural, the dreadful supposition might be entertained that war is the moral state of man. The miseries of hostilities almost induce us to think, with the ancient sage, that man is the most wretched of animals. (Millions of our race have been sacrificed at the altar of glory and popular praise, as well as at the shrine of superstition. Fanciful claims to foreign thrones, and the vanity of foreign dominion have, like the Crusades, contracted the circle of science and civilization, and turned the benevolent affections into furious passions. But

They err, who count it glorious to subdue  
By conquest far and wide, to over-run  
Large countries, and in field great battles win,  
Great cities by assault : What do these worthies,  
But rob and spoil, burn, slaughter, and enslave  
Peaceable nations, neighbouring or remote,  
Made captive, yet deserving freedom more

Than

Then those their conquerors, who leave behind  
 Nothing but ruin wheresoe'er they rove,  
 And all the flourishing works of peace destroy.\*

CHAP.  
 VIII.

(We feel no sorrow at the final doom of the  
 Crusades, because in its origin the war was  
 iniquitous and unjust. "THE BLOOD OF MAN  
 "SHOULD NEVER BE SHED BUT TO REDEEM THE  
 "BLOOD OF MAN. IT IS WELL SHED FOR OUR  
 "FAMILY, FOR OUR FRIENDS, FOR OUR GOD, FOR  
 "OUR KIND. THE REST IS VANITY, THE REST IS  
 "CRIME."† ) ✓

\* Paradise Regained, book iii. 71, &c.

† Burke.

CHAP.  
VIII.

folly and senselessness. (Comparing the object with the cost, the gain proposed with the certain peril, we call the attempt the extremest idea of madness, and wonder that the western world should for two hundred years pour forth its blood and treasure in chase of a phantom.) But the Crusades were not a greater reproach to virtue and wisdom, than most of those contests which in every age of the world pride and ambition have given rise to. If what is perpetual be natural, the dreadful supposition might be entertained that war is the moral state of man. The miseries of hostilities almost induce us to think, with the ancient sage, that man is the most wretched of animals. (Millions of our race have been sacrificed at the altar of glory and popular praise, as well as at the shrine of superstition. Fanciful claims to foreign thrones, and the vanity of foreign dominion have, like the Crusades, contracted the circle of science and civilization, and turned the benevolent affections into furious passions. But

They err, who count it glorious to subdue  
 By conquest far and wide, to over-run  
 Large countries, and in field great battles win,  
 Great cities by assault : What do these worthies,  
 But rob and spoil, burn, slaughter, and enslave  
 Peaceable nations, neighbouring or remote,  
 Made captive, yet deserving freedom more

Than

“bèrent au lieu de leur promettre des victoires imaginaires qui ne devoient jamais arriver.”—Bayle, *Pensées diverses*, tome ii. p. 780. Rotterdam, 1683.

Note (B).—Page 20. ✓

For the third crusade, the materials are rich and ample. I have gained much from my old guides Bernardus the treasurer, James de Vitry, the anonymous history of Jerusalem in Bongarsius, Nicetas, M. Paris, and Herold, one of the continuations of William of Tyre. The circumstances of the emperor Frederic's crusade are told in the annals of Godfrey the monk, Tageno, and the history of the expedition of Barbarossa, by an anonymous but contemporary writer. Rigord's History of Philip Augustus furnished me with a few particulars; but my great leader was the Itinerary of Richard to the Holy Land, by Jeffrey of Vinesauf, contained in the second volume of Gale's important collection of English historians. Vinesauf is highly praised by Leland; but some caution is necessary in reading the work of a man who equals Richard to Ulysses in eloquence, and to Nestor in wisdom. Hoveden's book is principally valuable for its state papers, and its reaching to a later time than the work of Benedict, abbot of Peterborough, which Hoveden has often abridged, and Brimton has merely transcribed. William of Newborough is an author next in merit, I think, to Malmsbury. His narrative is in the style of a history, and not of a mere chronicle. For my Arabic authorities, Abulfeda continues useful, but my greatest reliance is placed upon Bohadin, the friend and historian of Saladin. M. Michaud, author of the French History

History of the Crusades, now in the course of publication, has had access to the Latin translations which the late Father Berthéreau, a Maurist monk, made from various Arabic manuscripts. Except in one case, which I shall mention when it occurs, they appear to be of very little value. They throw no new light on the general history, and only reassert facts which have already been amply proved.

✓ Note (C).—Page 22.

Though the history of the reciprocal state of the Greeks and Latins cannot be admitted into a work which, like the present, is only a supplement or appendix to national histories, yet I may be allowed to remind my reader, that from very early times there were greater animosities between the Greeks and Latins than between any two countries of Europe or Asia. The people of Greece and Constantinople hated those of the west, as descendants of the ferocious savages who had extinguished the power of classic Rome in Europe. The Greeks were proud of their learned and potent ancestors, and despised all other nations as rude and ignorant. The martial Latins held in equal contempt the luxurious and effeminate Greeks. In the sixth century the bishops of Jerusalem and Constantinople were elevated to the dignity of patriarchs, and were equal to the patriarchs of Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch: yet the patriarch of Rome had always precedence of the patriarch of Constantinople, agreeably to the custom of revering the majesty of the republic, and of the consul of the west preceding the consul of the east. But the ecclesiastical governors of the two greatest cities of the world soon considered

considered each other as rivals, and contended for power. In the end the bishop of Rome was more potent than the bishop of Constantinople, because, Italy being deserted by its Greek lords, the Pope became a temporal monarch as well as a spiritual guide, and because Europe was not, like Asia, unchristianised by the Muselmans. In the eighth century the Christian world was divided into two great factions, on the subjects of the procession of the Holy Ghost, and the worship of images. In the eleventh century the Greeks widened the breach, by accusing the Latins of various acts and opinions of heresy. The latter used unleavened bread in the holy supper; they confined themselves to one single immersion in the rite of baptism; their bishops wore rings like bridegrooms, kept sabbaths, and did not refrain from things strangled, and from blood. Notwithstanding the violence of national and religious hatred, the emperors of Constantinople frequently indulged the hope of being able to unite the crowns of the west and east. Manuel Comnenus gained the friendship of the Pope, formed for himself and children matrimonial connections with Latin princes, and entrusted Frenchmen with high official charges. This attachment to the Latins was odious and detestable in the eyes of his own subjects. The Greeks dissembled for a while their feelings; but at length the concealed rage and fury of many centuries burst into a flame. The natives of Constantinople arose in arms, burnt the quarters of the city where the strangers resided, massacred most of those who escaped the flames, and dragged through the dirt the head of the papal legate tied to a dog's tail. Four thousand Latins were sold

for slaves to the Turks; some others escaped in their ships, and, in the course of their return to Italy, made the harmless provincials suffer for the crimes of the metropolis. The massacre of the Latins at Constantinople happened about six years before the third Crusade. But the providing materials for the luxury of a great city was so tempting to minds occupied in the pursuit of wealth, and the Italians were so much more industrious than the Greeks, that the Pisans and other people again became residents in Constantinople, and the fierce passions of the nations gradually gave way to sensuality and licentiousness. But the clergy were inexorable; and when Barbarossa was in the Grecian territories, they preached, though without much success, the justice of destroying the heretics.)

Note (D).—Page 44.

In a short time the king became convalescent; and, according to the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, the first symptom of his recovery was a violent longing for pork. Of course it was difficult to procure swine's flesh in a Muselman country. But

An old knight, with Richard biding,  
When he heard of that tiding,  
That the king's wants were swyche,  
To the steward he spake privyliche.  
“ Our lord the king sore is sick, I wis,  
“ After pork he alonged is;  
“ Ye may none find to sell;  
“ No man be hardy him so to telle!  
“ If he did, he might die.  
“ Now behoves to done as I shall say,

“ That

" That he wote naught of that,  
 " Takes a Saracen young and fat ;  
 " In haste let the thief be slain,  
 " Opened, and his skin off flayn ;  
 " And sodden, full hastily,  
 " With powder and with spicery,  
 " And with saffron of good colour.  
 " When the king feels therof savour,  
 " Out of ague if he be went,  
 " He shall have thereto good talent,  
 " When he has a good taste,  
 " And eaten with a good repast,  
 " And supped of the *brewis* \* a sup  
 " Slept after and swet a drop,  
 " Thorough Godis help, and my counsail,  
 " Soon he shall be as fresh and hail."  
 The sooth to say, at wordes few,  
 Slain and sodden was the heathen shrew.  
 Before the king it was forth brought :  
 Quod his men, " Lord, we have pork sought ;  
 " Eates and suppes of the *brewis soote* †  
 " Thorough grace of God it shall be your boot."  
 Before king Richard carff a knight,  
 He ate faster than he carve might.  
 The king ate the flesh, and *gnew* ‡ the bones,  
 And drank well after for the nonce.  
 And when he had eaten enough,  
 His folk hem turned away, and *lough*. §  
 He lay still, and drew in his arm ;  
 His chamberlain him wrapped warm.  
 He lay and slept, and swet a stound,  
 And became whole and sound.  
 King Richard clad him and arose,  
 And walked abouten in the close.

2 c 2

Sometime

\* Broth. † Sweet. ‡ Gnawed. § Laughed.



✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, "That head I ne have."

Then said the king, "So God me save,

"But I see the head of that swine,

"For sooth thou shalt lessen thine!"

The cook saw none other might be;

He fet the head, and let him see.

He fell on knees, and made a cry,

Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.

The *swarte vis*\* when the king seeth,

His black beard and white teeth,

How his lippes grinned wide,

"What devil is this?" the king cried,

And gan to laugh as he were wode.

What! is Saracen's flesh thus good?

That, never erst, I nought wist!

By Gode's death, and his up-ris,

Shall we never die for default,

While we may, in any assault,

(Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,

And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,

And gnawen her flesh to the bones!

Now I have proved it once,

For hunger eke I be wp,

I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,  
To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;  
They said, " This is the devil's brother,  
" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,  
There is no flesh so nourissant  
Unto an English man,  
Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,  
Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,  
As the head of a Saracen.  
There he is fat and thereto tender ;  
And my men be lean and slender.  
While any Saracen quick be,  
Livand now in this Syrie ;

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

- ✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo. by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenician pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverun!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vivesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

( Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,

"Spare hem nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross. }

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episcodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fowles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

folly and senselessness. (Comparing the object with the cost, the gain proposed with the certain peril, we call the attempt the extremest idea of madness, and wonder that the western world should for two hundred years pour forth its blood and treasure in chase of a phantom.) But the Crusades were not a greater reproach to virtue and wisdom, than most of those contests which in every age of the world pride and ambition have given rise to. If what is perpetual be natural, the dreadful supposition might be entertained that war is the moral state of man. The miseries of hostilities almost induce us to think, with the ancient sage, that man is the most wretched of animals. (Millions of our race have been sacrificed at the altar of glory and popular praise, as well as at the shrine of superstition. Fanciful claims to foreign thrones, and the vanity of foreign dominion have, like the Crusades, contracted the circle of science and civilization, and turned the benevolent affections into furious passions. But

They err, who count it glorious to subdue  
By conquest far and wide, to over-run  
Large countries, and in field great battles win,  
Great cities by assault : What do these worthies,  
But rob and spoil, burn, slaughter, and enslave  
Peaceable nations, neighbouring or remote,  
Made captive, yet deserving freedom more

Than

duke of Burgundy. Vinessauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

( Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,

"Spare hem nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross. }

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fowles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;

## ADDITIONAL NOTES.

Note (A).—Page 2.

“ HAVING promised the Croises great success, in the  
 “ name of the Lord, and finding them soundly banged,  
 “ and utterly discomfited, he wrote an apology for  
 “ himself, justifying his promises, and laying the fault  
 “ entirely on the vices of the Croises. You never  
 “ knew a fanatic pretending to prophecy, who ever  
 “ blushed when his predictions came to nought, or  
 “ ever was at a loss for some paltry subterfuge in his  
 “ own vindication.” Jortin, Remarks on Ecclesiastical  
 History, vol. iii. p. 231.—“ Au lieu d'avouer de  
 “ bonne foi qu'il avoit été trompé le premier, il se  
 “ sauva dans la pitoyable asyle des promesses condi-  
 “ tionnelles, faisant entendre que quand il avoit prédit  
 “ que le croisade seroit heureuse, c'étoit en sous-  
 “ entendant comme une condition nécessaire que les  
 “ croisez n'offenseroient point le bon Dieu par le  
 “ dérèglement de leurs mœurs. Avouez-moi que c'est  
 “ se moquée du monde, que de s'ériger en prophète,  
 “ pour prédire ce qui n'arrivera jamais, et pour ne  
 “ pas dire un seul mot de ce qui arrivera effective-  
 “ ment. Ou il ne falloit pas que S. Bernard se me-  
 “ last de prédire l'avenir, ou il devoit prédire les  
 “ désordres effectifs dans lesquelles les croisez tom-  
 “ bèrent

"bèrent au lieu de leur promettre des victoires imaginaires qui ne devoient jamais arriver."—Bayle, *Pensées diverses*, tome ii. p. 780. Rotterdam, 1683.

Note (B).—Page 20. ✓

For the third crusade, the materials are rich and ample. I have gained much from my old guides Bernardus the treasurer, James de Vitry, the anonymous history of Jerusalem in Bongarsius, Nicetas, M. Paris, and Herold, one of the continuations of William of Tyre. The circumstances of the emperor Frederic's crusade are told in the annals of Godfrey the monk, Tageno, and the history of the expedition of Barbarossa, by an anonymous but contemporary writer. Rigord's History of Philip Augustus furnished me with a few particulars; but my great leader was the Itinerary of Richard to the Holy Land, by Jeffrey of Vinesauf, contained in the second volume of Gale's important collection of English historians. Vinesauf is highly praised by Leland; but some caution is necessary in reading the work of a man who equals Richard to Ulysses in eloquence, and to Nestor in wisdom. Hoveden's book is principally valuable for its state papers, and its reaching to a later time than the work of Benedict, abbot of Peterborough, which Hoveden has often abridged, and Bromton has merely transcribed. William of Newborough is an author next in merit, I think, to Malmesbury. His narrative is in the style of a history, and not of a mere chronicle. For my Arabic authorities, Abulfeda continues useful, but my greatest reliance is placed upon Bohadin, the friend and historian of Saladin. M. Michaud, author of the French History



History of the Crusades, now in the course of publication, has had access to the Latin translations which the late Father Berthéreau, a Maurist monk, made from various Arabic manuscripts. Except in one case, which I shall mention when it occurs, they appear to be of very little value. They throw no new light on the general history, and only reassert facts which have already been amply proved.

✓ Note (C).—Page 22.

Though the history of the reciprocal state of the Greeks and Latins cannot be admitted into a work which, like the present, is only a supplement or appendix to national histories, yet I may be allowed to remind my reader, that from very early times there were greater animosities between the Greeks and Latins than between any two countries of Europe or Asia. The people of Greece and Constantinople hated those of the west, as descendants of the ferocious savages who had extinguished the power of classic Rome in Europe. The Greeks were proud of their learned and potent ancestors, and despised all other nations as rude and ignorant. The martial Latins held in equal contempt the luxurious and effeminate Greeks. In the sixth century the bishops of Jerusalem and Constantinople were elevated to the dignity of patriarchs, and were equal to the patriarchs of Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch: yet the patriarch of Rome had always precedence of the patriarch of Constantinople, agreeably to the custom of revering the majesty of the republic, and of the consul of the west preceding the consul of the east. But the ecclesiastical governors of the two greatest cities of the world soon considered

considered each other as rivals, and contended for power. In the end the bishop of Rome was more potent than the bishop of Constantinople, because, Italy being deserted by its Greek lords, the Pope became a temporal monarch as well as a spiritual guide, and because Europe was not, like Asia, unchristianised by the Muselmans. In the eighth century the Christian world was divided into two great factions, on the subjects of the procession of the Holy Ghost, and the worship of images. In the eleventh century the Greeks widened the breach, by accusing the Latins of various acts and opinions of heresy. The latter used unleavened bread in the holy supper; they confined themselves to one single immersion in the rite of baptism; their bishops wore rings like bridegrooms, kept sabbaths, and did not refrain from things strangled, and from blood. Notwithstanding the violence of national and religious hatred, the emperors of Constantinople frequently indulged the hope of being able to unite the crowns of the west and east. Manuel Comnenus gained the friendship of the Pope, formed for himself and children matrimonial connections with Latin princes, and entrusted Frenchmen with high official charges. This attachment to the Latins was odious and detestable in the eyes of his own subjects. The Greeks dissembled for a while their feelings; but at length the concealed rage and fury of many centuries burst into a flame. The natives of Constantinople arose in arms, burnt the quarters of the city where the strangers resided, massacred most of those who escaped the flames, and dragged through the dirt the head of the papal legate tied to a dog's tail. Four thousand Latins were sold

for slaves to the Turks; some others escaped in their ships, and, in the course of their return to Italy, made the harmless provincials suffer for the crimes of the metropolis. The massacre of the Latins at Constantinople happened about six years before the third Crusade. But the providing materials for the luxury of a great city was so tempting to minds occupied in the pursuit of wealth, and the Italians were so much more industrious than the Greeks, that the Pisans and other people again became residents in Constantinople, and the fierce passions of the nations gradually gave way to sensuality and licentiousness. But the clergy were inexorable; and when Barbarossa was in the Grecian territories, they preached, though without much success, the justice of destroying the heretics.)

Note (D).—Page 44.

In a short time the king became convalescent; and, according to the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, the first symptom of his recovery was a violent longing for pork. Of course it was difficult to procure swine's flesh in a Muselman country. But

An old knight, with Richard biding,  
When he heard of that tiding,  
That the king's wants were swyche,  
To the steward he spake privyliche.  
“ Our lord the king sore is sick, I wis,  
“ After pork he alonged is;  
“ Ye may none find to sell;  
“ No man be hardy him so to telle!  
“ If he did, he might die.  
“ Now behoves to done as I shall say,

“ That

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,  
To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;  
They said, " This is the devil's brother,  
" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,  
There is no flesh so nourissant  
Unto an English man,  
Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,  
Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,  
As the head of a Saracen.—  
There he is fat and thereto tender ;  
And my men be lean and slender.  
While any Saracen quick be,  
Livand now in this Syrie ;

✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, "That head I ne have."  
 Then said the king, "So God me save,  
 "But I see the head of that swine,  
 "For sooth thou shalt lessen thine!"  
 The cook saw none other might be;  
 He fet the head, and let him see.  
 He fell on knees, and made a cry,  
 Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.  
 The *swarte vis*\* when the king seeth,  
 His black beard and white teeth,  
 How his lippes grinned wide,  
 "What devil is this?" the king cried,  
 And gan to laugh as he were wode.  
 What! is Saracen's flesh thus good?  
 That, never erst, I nought wist!  
 By Gode's death, and his up-rist,  
 Shall we never die for default,  
 While we may, in any assault,  
 { Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,  
 And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,  
 And gnawen her flesh to the bones!  
 Now I have proved it once,  
 For hunger eke I be wop,  
 I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,

To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;

They said, " This is the devil's brother,

" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,

There is no flesh so nourissant

Unto an English man,

Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,

Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,

As the head of a Saracen.

There he is fat and thereto tender ;

And my men be lean and slender.

While any Saracen quick be,

Livand now in this Syrie ;

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo. by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenian pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

( Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,

"Spare them nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross.)

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fowles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;



CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

folly and senselessness. (Comparing the object with the cost, the gain proposed with the certain peril, we call the attempt the extremest idea of madness, and wonder that the western world should for two hundred years pour forth its blood and treasure in chase of a phantom.) But the Crusades were not a greater reproach to virtue and wisdom, than most of those contests which in every age of the world pride and ambition have given rise to. If what is perpetual be natural, the dreadful supposition might be entertained that war is the moral state of man. The miseries of hostilities almost induce us to think, with the ancient sage, that man is the most wretched of animals. (Millions of our race have been sacrificed at the altar of glory and popular praise, as well as at the shrine of superstition. Fanciful claims to foreign thrones, and the vanity of foreign dominion have, like the Crusades, contracted the circle of science and civilization, and turned the benevolent affections into furious passions. But

They err, who count it glorious to subdue  
By conquest far and wide, to over-run  
Large countries, and in field great battles win,  
Great cities by assault : What do these worthies,  
But rob and spoil, burn, slaughter, and enslave  
Peaceable nations, neighbouring or remote,  
Made captive, yet deserving freedom more

Than

highest authority on Richard's crusade, and his narrative is full and circumstantial. He mentions violent and alarming altercations between the duke and the king, and the receding of the former from Ascalon. These circumstances were the foundation of the popular story, which in its progress through the world assumed different shapes; wrong places were mentioned as the scene of action, and false conclusions drawn.

Note (I).—Page 78.

Poetry, particularly that of the Provençal bards, was patronised in the court of king Henry the second; for his queen, Eleanor, was a Troubadour by birth, and, as we have already seen, she did not disgrace her family by the prosaic virtues of prudence, chastity, &c. Richard cultivated the "gay science." Unluckily for the royal lute-loving heroes of modern times, the stanzas which it is said he wrote on the eyes of gentle ladies have not descended to us. One of his other poems seems to have been written in prison. It has often been versified, but in every thing that constitutes merit, the translation from the elegant pen of Mr. Ellis is the best.

If captive wight attempt the tuneful strain,  
 His voice, belike, full dolefully will sound;  
 Yet, to the sad, 'tis comfort to complain.  
 Friends have I store; and promises abound;  
 Shame on the niggards! Since, these winters twain  
 Unransom'd, still I bear a tyrant's chain.  
 Full well they know, my lords and nobles all,  
 Of England, Normandy, Guienne, Poictou,  
 Ne'er did I slight my poorest vassal's call,  
 But all, whom wealth could buy, from chains withdrew.

Not

Not in reproach I speak, nor idly vain,  
But I alone unpitied bear the chain.

My fate will shew, " the dungeon and the grave

" Alike repel our kindred and our friends."

Here am I left their paltry gold to save !

Sad fate is mine ; but worse their crime attends.  
Their lord will die : their conscience shall remain,  
And tell how long I wore this galling chain.

No wonder, though my heart with grief boil o'er,

When he, my perjurd lord, invades my lands ;  
Forgets he then the oaths he lately swore,

When both, in treaty, join'd our plighted hands ?  
Else, sure I ween, I should not long remain,  
Unpitied here to wear a tyrant's chain.

To those my friends, long lov'd, and ever dear,

To gentle Chaile, and kind Persarain,  
Go forth my song, and say, whate'er they hear,

To them my heart was never false or vain.  
Should they rebel—but no ; their souls disdain  
With added weight to load a captive's chain.

Know then the youths of Anjou and Touraine,

Those lusty bachelors, those airy lords,  
That these vile walls their captive king restrain ?

Sure they in aire will draw their loyal swords !

Alas ! nor faith, nor valour, now remain ;

Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my chain.

#### Note (K).—Page 78.

The chaplain Anselm is our chief guide for the history of the circumstances which attended the seizure of Richard. His narrative is contained in *M. Paris*, 143-145 : and in the *Chronicle of Oxenedes* in *Brit. Mus. Cotton. MSS. Nero D. 2. p. 221*. One of these writers

"bèrent au lieu de leur promettre des victoires imaginaires qui ne devoient jamais arriver."—Bayle, *Pensées diverses*, tome ii. p. 780. Rotterdam, 1683.

Note (B).—Page 20. ✓

For the third crusade, the materials are rich and ample. I have gained much from my old guides Bernardus the treasurer, James de Vitry, the anonymous history of Jerusalem in Bongarsius, Nicetas, M. Paris, and Herold, one of the continuations of William of Tyre. The circumstances of the emperor Frederic's crusade are told in the annals of Godfrey the monk, Tageno, and the history of the expedition of Barbarossa, by an anonymous but contemporary writer. Rigord's History of Philip Augustus furnished me with a few particulars; but my great leader was the Itinerary of Richard to the Holy Land, by Jeffrey of Vinesauf, contained in the second volume of Gale's important collection of English historians. Vinesauf is highly praised by Leland; but some caution is necessary in reading the work of a man who equals Richard to Ulysses in eloquence, and to Nestor in wisdom. Hoveden's book is principally valuable for its state papers, and its reaching to a later time than the work of Benedict, abbot of Peterborough, which Hoveden has often abridged, and Brantton has merely transcribed. William of Newborough is an author next in merit, I think, to Malmsbury. His narrative is in the style of a history, and not of a mere chronicle. For my Arabic authorities, Abulfeda continues useful, but my greatest reliance is placed upon Bohadin, the friend and historian of Saladin. M. Michaud, author of the French History

History of the Crusades, now in the course of publication, has had access to the Latin translations which the late Father Berthéreau, a Maurite monk, made from various Arabic manuscripts. Except in one case, which I shall mention when it occurs, they appear to be of very little value. They throw no new light on the general history, and only reassert facts which have already been amply proved.

✓ Note (C).—Page 22.

Though the history of the reciprocal state of the Greeks and Latins cannot be admitted into a work which, like the present, is only a supplement or appendix to national histories, yet I may be allowed to remind my reader, that from very early times there were greater animosities between the Greeks and Latins than between any two countries of Europe or Asia. The people of Greece and Constantinople hated those of the west, as descendants of the ferocious savages who had extinguished the power of classic Rome in Europe. The Greeks were proud of their learned and potent ancestors, and despised all other nations as rude and ignorant. The martial Latins held in equal contempt the luxurious and effeminate Greeks. In the sixth century the bishops of Jerusalem and Constantinople were elevated to the dignity of patriarchs, and were equal to the patriarchs of Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch: yet the patriarch of Rome had always precedence of the patriarch of Constantinople, agreeably to the custom of revering the majesty of the republic, and of the consul of the west preceding the consul of the east. But the ecclesiastical governors of the two greatest cities of the world soon considered

considered each other as rivals, and contended for power. In the end the bishop of Rome was more potent than the bishop of Constantinople, because, Italy being deserted by its Greek lords, the Pope became a temporal monarch as well as a spiritual guide, and because Europe was not, like Asia, unchristianised by the Muselmans. In the eighth century the Christian world was divided into two great factions, on the subjects of the procession of the Holy Ghost, and the worship of images. In the eleventh century the Greeks widened the breach, by accusing the Latins of various acts and opinions of heresy. The latter used unleavened bread in the holy supper; they confined themselves to one single immersion in the rite of baptism; their bishops wore rings like bridegrooms, kept sabbaths, and did not refrain from things strangled, and from blood. Notwithstanding the violence of national and religious hatred, the emperors of Constantinople frequently indulged the hope of being able to unite the crowns of the west and east. Manuel Comnenus gained the friendship of the Pope, formed for himself and children matrimonial connections with Latin princes, and entrusted Frenchmen with high official charges. This attachment to the Latins was odious and detestable in the eyes of his own subjects. The Greeks dissembled for a while their feelings; but at length the concealed rage and fury of many centuries burst into a flame. The natives of Constantinople arose in arms, burnt the quarters of the city where the strangers resided, massacred most of those who escaped the flames, and dragged through the dirt the head of the papal legate tied to a dog's tail. Four thousand Latins were sold

for slaves to the Turks; some others escaped in their ships, and, in the course of their return to Italy, made the harmless provincials suffer for the crimes of the metropolis. The massacre of the Latins at Constantinople happened about six years before the third Crusade. But the providing materials for the luxury of a great city was so tempting to minds occupied in the pursuit of wealth, and the Italians were so much more industrious than the Greeks, that the Pisans and other people again became residents in Constantinople, and the fierce passions of the nations gradually gave way to sensuality and licentiousness. But the clergy were inexorable; and when Barbarossa was in the Grecian territories, they preached, though without much success, the justice of destroying the heretics.)

Note (D).—Page 44.

In a short time the king became convalescent; and, according to the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, the first symptom of his recovery was a violent longing for pork. Of course it was difficult to procure swine's flesh in a Muselman country. But

An old knight, with Richard biding,  
When he heard of that tiding,  
That the king's wants were swyche,  
To the steward he spake privyliche.  
“ Our lord the king sore is sick, I wis,  
“ After pork he alonged is;  
“ Ye may none find to sell;  
“ No man be hardy him so to telle!  
“ If he did, he might die.  
“ Now behoves to done as I shall say,

“ That

Richard, and declaring that Conrad was killed by order of the old man, in consequence of the marquis having robbed and murdered an assassin. Another letter is also produced, addressed to all the princes and people of Christendom; in which, as in the former one, the chief of the assassins assumes to himself all the honour of the murder. There is very little difficulty in proving that these letters were forgeries. The very superscriptions are contrary to the oriental mode. "Limpoldo duci Austriæ Vetus de Monte salutem."—"Vetus de Monte Principibus Europæ et omni populo Christiano salutem." The phrase, Vetus de Monte, is a mere Latin translation of the name by which the chief of the assassins was known in Europe. His appellation in Syria was very different, and, consequently, the letters were not translated from an Arabic original. The over anxiety expressed in the letters for the exculpation of Richard, shews that they were of European manufacture. "Et bene dicimus vobis in veritate; quod dominus Ricardus rex Angliæ in hac Marchisi morte nullam culpam habuit. Et qui propter hoc domino regi Angliæ malum fecerunt injuste fecerunt et sine causa. Sciat is pro certo quod nullum hominem hujus mundi pro mercede aliqua vel pecunia occidimus, nisi prius malum nobis fecerit." It is difficult to suppose that this chief would run the risk of the vengeance of the Christian powers from a mere love of justice, and from a wish to exculpate a monarch whom he neither knew nor regarded. The circular letter is without date. The other letter is dated in the middle of September. But the common European division of time was unknown to the Asiatics, and particularly



✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, "That head I ne have."  
 Then said the king, "So God me save,  
 "But I see the head of that swine,  
 "For sooth thou shalt lessen thine!"  
 The cook saw none other might be;  
 He fet the head, and let him see.  
 He fell on knees, and made a cry,  
 Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.  
 The *swarte vis*\* when the king seeth,  
 His black beard and white teeth,  
 How his lippes grinned wide,  
 "What devil is this?" the king cried,  
 And gan to laugh as he were wode.  
 What! is Saracen's flesh thus good?  
 That, never erst, I nought wist!  
 By Gode's death, and his up-ris,  
 Shall we never die for default,  
 While we may, in any assault,  
 (Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,  
 And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,  
 And gnawen her flesh to the bones!  
 Now I have proved it once,  
 For hunger eke I be wop,  
 I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

It was a trait of remarkable independence in Dante to have dared to place in Elysium this terrible enemy of Christians. )

The following are pleasing instances of Saladin's self-command and love of justice. "As Bohadin, the historian, was one day exercising, at Jerusalem, his office of judge, a decent old merchant tendered him a bill or libel of complaint, which he insisted upon having opened. 'Who (says Bohadin) is your adversary?' 'My adversary,' replies the merchant, 'is the sultan himself; but this is the seat of justice; and we have heard that you (applying to Bohadin) are not governed by regard to persons.' Bohadin told him his cause could not be decided without his adversary being first apprized. The sultan, accordingly, was informed of the affair; he submitted to appear; produced his witnesses; and, having justly defended himself, gained the cause. Yet so little did he resent this treatment, that he dismissed his antagonist with a rich garment and a donation."—"At another time Saladin was in company with his intimate friends, enjoying their conversation apart, the crowd being dismissed, when a slave of some rank brought him a petition in behalf of some person oppressed. The sultan said that he was then fatigued, and wished the matter, whatever it was, might for a time be deferred. The other did not attend to what was desired, but, on the contrary, almost thrust the petition into the sultan's face. The sultan, on this, opening and reading it once, declared he thought the petitioner's cause a good one. 'Let then our sovereign lord,' says the other, 'sign it.' 'There is no inkstand,' says the sultan

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

- ✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo. by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's Specimens of Metrical Romances, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenic pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel. eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

(Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.)

They were led into the place full even.  
There they heard angels of heaven;  
They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,  
"Spare hem nought, and beheadeth these!"  
King Richard heard the angels' voice,  
And thanked God and the holy cross.)

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,  
When fowls sing in her lay.  
Floweres on apple-trees and perry;  
Small fewles sing merry.  
Ladies strew her bowers  
With red roses and lilly flowers.  
Great joy is in frith and lake;  
Beast and bird plays with his mate;

CHAP.  
VIII.  
—

folly and senselessness. (Comparing the object with the cost, the gain proposed with the certain peril, we call the attempt the extremest idea of madness, and wonder that the western world should for two hundred years pour forth its blood and treasure in chase of a phantom.) But the Crusades were not a greater reproach to virtue and wisdom, than most of those contests which in every age of the world pride and ambition have given rise to. If what is perpetual be natural, the dreadful supposition might be entertained that war is the moral state of man. The miseries of hostilities almost induce us to think, with the ancient sage, that man is the most wretched of animals. (Millions of our race have been sacrificed at the altar of glory and popular praise, as well as at the shrine of superstition. Fanciful claims to foreign thrones, and the vanity of foreign dominion have, like the Crusades, contracted the circle of science and civilization, and turned the benevolent affections into furious passions. But

They err, who count it glorious to subdue  
By conquest far and wide, to over-run  
Large countries, and in field great battles win,  
Great cities by assault : What do these worthies,  
But rob and spoil, burn, slaughter, and enslave  
Peaceable nations, neighbouring or remote,  
Made captive, yet deserving freedom more

Than

Lo, now the fruitful hour at hand !  
 To thee the precious boon is given ;  
 For Paynims waste the holy land,  
 And spoil the heritage of heaven.  
 Shall we such faithless works behold,  
 With craven courage slack and cold ?  
 How else, but to the giver's praise,  
 May we devote our wealth and days ? )

NON-CRUSADER.

I read thee right—thou holdest good,  
 To this same land I straight should hie,  
 And win it back with mickle blood,  
 (Nor gain one foot of soil thereby.  
 While here, dejected and forlorn,  
 My wife and babes are left to mourn ;  
 My goodly mansion rudely marr'd,  
 All trusted to my dogs to guard.)  
 But I, fair comrade, well I wot  
 An ancient saw, of pregnant wit,  
 Doth bid us, “ Keep what we have got ; ”  
 And troth I mean to follow it.  
 I cannot learn what part 'tis read,  
 That Christian folk shall so be fed ;  
 Who soweth thus, I shrewdly guess,  
 Shall gather naught but emptiness.

CRUSADER.

(Forth from thy groaning mother's womb,  
 Thou, naked helpless child, wast brought ;  
 You see, how soon thou art become  
 Stout, lusty, lacking now for naught.  
 Then sure, if wealth for heaven we lose,  
 Heaven, hundred fold, that wealth renews ;  
 But Paradise may never bless  
 The wretch who lives in idleness. )

## ADDITIONAL NOTES.

## NON-CRUSADER.

Howbeit, my friend, of folk that toil,  
 And sweat almost their dear heart's blood;  
 And all their days keep mighty coil,  
 To keep some store of this world's good:  
 Of such, I say, full oft from home,  
 On penance sent to holy Rome,  
 Asturia, or I wot not where,  
 Nor what befalls the caitiffs there.  
 (I've seen a band of gallants brave,  
 To France returning all forlorn;  
 Without or waiting wench or knave,  
 And naked, nigh, as they were born.  
 Now sure, it needs not cross the seas,  
 And play such losing games as these;  
 And bow one's flesh to servitude,  
 All for one's soul's immortal good!  
 I say, good brother, so you hold  
 Alone we purchase heavenly bliss:)  
 For this a man must waste his gold,  
 And pass the boundless seas for this.  
 Now I maintain 'tis far more sage,  
 In peace to hold one's heritage;  
 And there that Paradise obtain,  
 For which thou needs wilt cross the main.

## CRUSADER.

Nay, now thy speech so lewdly sounds,  
 I scarce may sober answer deign:  
 Thou ween'st, forsooth, with hawks and hounds  
 To save thy soul, sans fleshly pain:  
 (How much of martyr's blood has flow'd  
 To win those seats of heaven's abode?  
 How many, this world's joys foregone,  
 And buried quick, in cloisters moan?)

NON-

"bèrent au lieu de leur promettre des victoires imaginaires qui ne devoient jamais arriver."—Bayle, *Pensées diverses*, tome ii. p. 780. Rotterdam, 1683.

Note (B).—Page 20. ✓

For the third crusade, the materials are rich and ample. I have gained much from my old guides Bernardus the treasurer, James de Vitry, the anonymous history of Jerusalem in Bongarsius, Nicetas, M. Paris, and Herold, one of the continuations of William of Tyre. The circumstances of the emperor Frederic's crusade are told in the annals of Godfrey the monk, Tageno, and the history of the expedition of Barbarossa, by an anonymous but contemporary writer. Rigord's History of Philip Augustus furnished me with a few particulars; but my great leader was the Itinerary of Richard to the Holy Land, by Jeffrey of Vinesauf, contained in the second volume of Gale's important collection of English historians. Vinesauf is highly praised by Leland; but some caution is necessary in reading the work of a man who equals Richard to Ulysses in eloquence, and to Nestor in wisdom. Hoveden's book is principally valuable for its state papers, and its reaching to a later time than the work of Benedict, abbot of Peterborough, which Hoveden has often abridged, and Bromton has merely transcribed. William of Newborough is an author next in merit, I think, to Malmsbury. His narrative is in the style of a history, and not of a mere chronicle. For my Arabic authorities, Abulfeda continues useful, but my greatest reliance is placed upon Bohadin, the friend and historian of Saladin. M. Michaud, author of the French  
History



History of the Crusades, now in the course of publication, has had access to the Latin translations which the late Father Berthéreau, a Maurite monk, made from various Arabic manuscripts. Except in one case, which I shall mention when it occurs, they appear to be of very little value. They throw no new light on the general history, and only reassert facts which have already been amply proved:

✓ Note (C).—Page 22.

Though the history of the reciprocal state of the Greeks and Latins cannot be admitted into a work which, like the present, is only a supplement or appendix to national histories, yet I may be allowed to remind my reader, that from very early times there were greater animosities between the Greeks and Latins than between any two countries of Europe or Asia. The people of Greece and Constantinople hated those of the west, as descendants of the ferocious savages who had extinguished the power of classic Rome in Europe. The Greeks were proud of their learned and potent ancestors, and despised all other nations as rude and ignorant. The martial Latins held in equal contempt the luxurious and effeminate Greeks. In the sixth century the bishops of Jerusalem and Constantinople were elevated to the dignity of patriarchs, and were equal to the patriarchs of Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch: yet the patriarch of Rome had always precedence of the patriarch of Constantinople, agreeably to the custom of revering the majesty of the republic, and of the consul of the west preceding the consul of the east. But the ecclesiastical governors of the two greatest cities of the world soon considered

considered each other as rivals, and contended for power. In the end the bishop of Rome was more potent than the bishop of Constantinople, because, Italy being deserted by its Greek lords, the Pope became a temporal monarch as well as a spiritual guide, and because Europe was not, like Asia, unchristianised by the Muselmans. In the eighth century the Christian world was divided into two great factions, on the subjects of the procession of the Holy Ghost, and the worship of images. In the eleventh century the Greeks widened the breach, by accusing the Latins of various acts and opinions of heresy. The latter used unleavened bread in the holy supper; they confined themselves to one single immersion in the rite of baptism; their bishops wore rings like bridegrooms, kept sabbaths, and did not refrain from things strangled, and from blood. Notwithstanding the violence of national and religious hatred, the emperors of Constantinople frequently indulged the hope of being able to unite the crowns of the west and east. Manuel Comnenus gained the friendship of the Pope, formed for himself and children matrimonial connections with Latin princes, and entrusted Frenchmen with high official charges. This attachment to the Latins was odious and detestable in the eyes of his own subjects. The Greeks dissembled for a while their feelings; but at length the concealed rage and fury of many centuries burst into a flame. The natives of Constantinople arose in arms, burnt the quarters of the city where the strangers resided, massacred most of those who escaped the flames, and dragged through the dirt the head of the papal legate tied to a dog's tail. Four thousand Latins were sold

for slaves to the Turks; some others escaped in their ships, and, in the course of their return to Italy, made the harmless provincials suffer for the crimes of the metropolis. The massacre of the Latins at Constantinople happened about six years before the third Crusade. But the providing materials for the luxury of a great city was so tempting to minds occupied in the pursuit of wealth, and the Italians were so much more industrious than the Greeks, that the Pisans and other people again became residents in Constantinople, and the fierce passions of the nations gradually gave way to sensuality and licentiousness. But the clergy were inexorable; and when Barbarossa was in the Grecian territories, they preached, though without much success, the justice of destroying the heretics.)

Note (D).—Page 44.

In a short time the king became convalescent; and, according to the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, the first symptom of his recovery was a violent longing for pork. Of course it was difficult to procure swine's flesh in a Muselman country. But

An old knight, with Richard biding,  
When he heard of that tiding,  
That the king's wants were swyche,  
To the steward he spake privyliche.  
“ Our lord the king sore is sick, I wis,  
“ After pork he alonged is;  
“ Ye may none find to sell;  
“ No man be hardy him so to telle!  
“ If he did, he might die.  
“ Now behoves to done as I shall say,

“ That

God love thy sone come after the,  
 Bringe to ende that thou hast bygonne,  
 The holy crois ymade of tre  
 So fain thou woldest hit have ywonne.

" Jerusalem, thou hast ilore  
 The floure of all chivalrie,  
 Now kyng Edward liveth na more,  
 Alas, that he yet shulde deye!  
 He wolde ha rered up full heyge  
 Our banners that bulth broht to grounde;  
 Wel longe we may clepe\* and crie,  
 Er we such a kyng have y founde."

It is said that Robert Bruce, in his dying moments, exclaimed that he had formerly made a vow that if his wars should end favourably, he would go and fight the enemies of Jesus Christ. But as his life had been spent in contests with England, he could not accomplish what he wished, and he would send his heart in the stead of his body to fulfil his vow. Lord James Douglas then promised upon his knighthood to bear the heart to the holy sepulchre, proclaiming at every principal place on his journey that he bore the heart of king Robert of Scotland. Froissart, vol. 1. p. 48, &c. The king died; his friend embalmed his remains, put the heart into a silver casket, and commenced his journey. He went into Spain, and was killed fighting with the infidels. The issue is thus told by Barbour.

Sum off the lord Dowglas' men,  
 That thair lord dede has fundyn there,  
 Yeid weill ner woud for dule and wa,  
 Lang quhill our hym thai sorowit awa,

And

\* Call.

✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, " That head I ne have."  
 Then said the king, " So God me save,  
 " But I see the head of that swine,  
 " For sooth thou shalt lessen thine !"  
 The cook saw none other might be ;  
 He fet the head, and let him see.  
 He fell on knees, and made a cry,  
 Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.  
 The *marie vis*\* when the king seeth,  
 His black beard and white teeth,  
 How his lippes grinned wide,  
 " What devil is this ?" the king cried,  
 And gan to laugh as he were wode.  
 What ! is Saracen's flesh thus good ?  
 That, never erst, I nought wist !  
 By Gode's death, and his up-risť,  
 Shall we never die for default,  
 While we may, in any assault,  
 ( Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,  
 And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,  
 And gnawen her flesh to the bones !  
 Now I have proved it once,  
 For hunger eke I be wof,  
 I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,  
To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;  
They said, " This is the devil's brother,  
" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,  
There is no flesh so nourissant  
Unto an English man,  
Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,  
Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,  
As the head of a Saracen.—  
There he is fat and thereto tender ;  
And my men be lean and slender.  
While any Saracen quick be,  
Livand now in this Syrie ;

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

- ✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo: by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenian pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

( Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives..

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,

"Spare them nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross.)

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fowles sing merry.

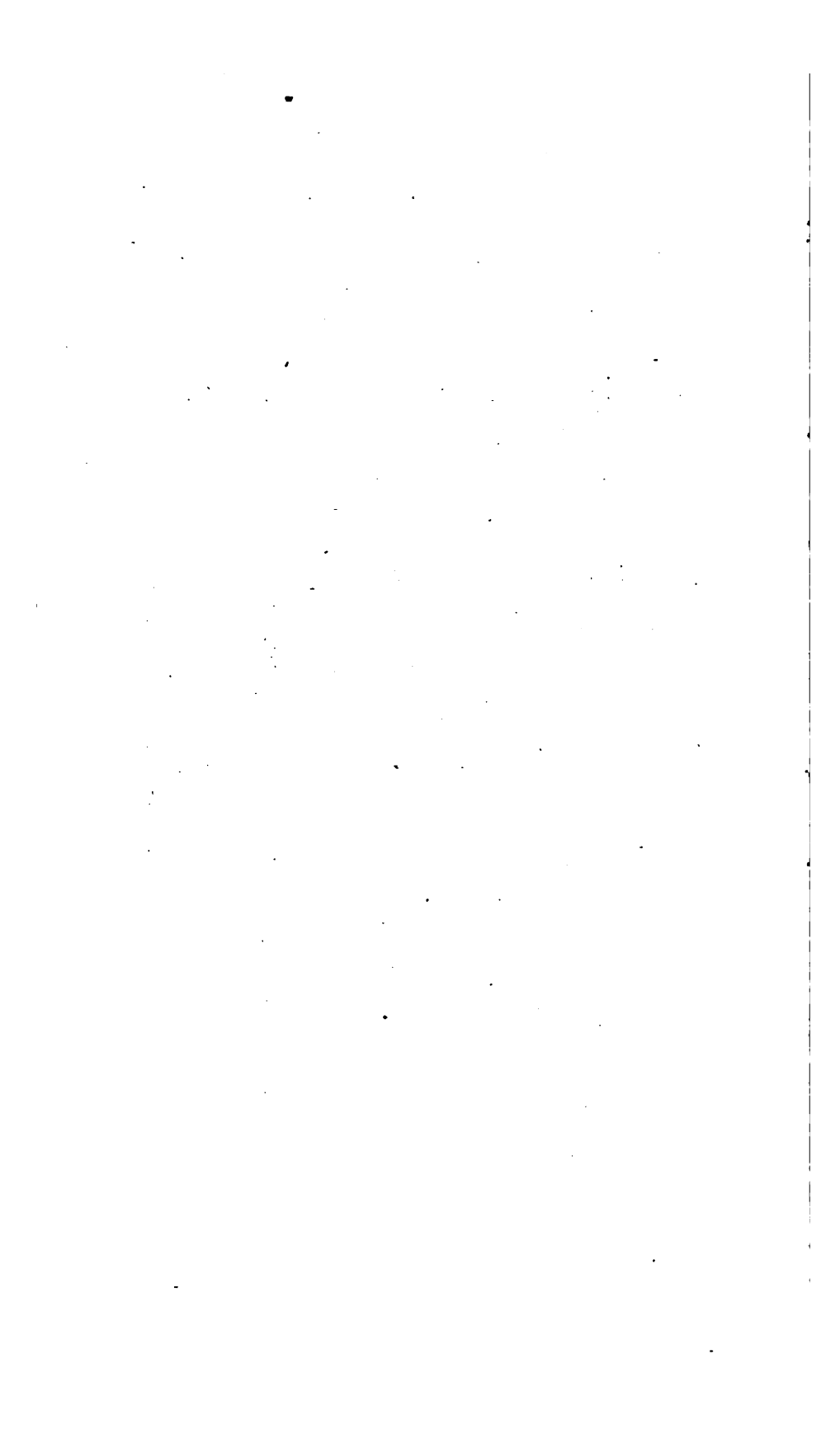
Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;





"bèrent au lieu de leur promettre des victoires imaginaires qui ne devoient jamais arriver."—Bayle, *Pensées diverses*, tome ii. p. 780. Rotterdam, 1683.

Note (B).—Page 20. ✓

For the third crusade, the materials are rich and ample. I have gained much from my old guides Bernardus the treasurer, James de Vitry, the anonymous history of Jerusalem in Bongarsius, Nicetas, M. Paris, and Herold, one of the continuations of William of Tyre. The circumstances of the emperor Frederic's crusade are told in the annals of Godfrey the monk, Tageno, and the history of the expedition of Barbarossa, by an anonymous but contemporary writer. Rigord's History of Philip Augustus furnished me with a few particulars; but my great leader was the Itinerary of Richard to the Holy Land, by Jeffrey of Vinesauf, contained in the second volume of Gale's important collection of English historians. Vinesauf is highly praised by Leland; but some caution is necessary in reading the work of a man who equals Richard to Ulysses in eloquence, and to Nestor in wisdom. Hoveden's book is principally valuable for its state papers, and its reaching to a later time than the work of Benedict, abbot of Peterborough, which Hoveden has often abridged, and Brimton has merely transcribed. William of Newborough is an author next in merit, I think, to Malmsbury. His narrative is in the style of a history, and not of a mere chronicle. For my Arabic authorities, Abulfeda continues useful, but my greatest reliance is placed upon Bohadin, the friend and historian of Saladin. M. Michaud, author of the French History

History of the Crusades, now in the course of publication, has had access to the Latin translations which the late Father Berthéreau, a Maurite monk, made from various Arabic manuscripts. Except in one case, which I shall mention when it occurs, they appear to be of very little value. They throw no new light on the general history, and only reassert facts which have already been amply proved:

✓ Note (C).—Page 22.

Though the history of the reciprocal state of the Greeks and Latins cannot be admitted into a work which, like the present, is only a supplement or appendix to national histories, yet I may be allowed to remind my reader, that from very early times there were greater animosities between the Greeks and Latins than between any two countries of Europe or Asia. The people of Greece and Constantinople hated those of the west, as descendants of the ferocious savages who had extinguished the power of classic Rome in Europe. The Greeks were proud of their learned and potent ancestors, and despised all other nations as rude and ignorant. The martial Latins held in equal contempt the luxurious and effeminate Greeks. In the sixth century the bishops of Jerusalem and Constantinople were elevated to the dignity of patriarchs, and were equal to the patriarchs of Rome, Alexandria, and Antioch: yet the patriarch of Rome had always precedence of the patriarch of Constantinople, agreeably to the custom of revering the majesty of the republic, and of the consul of the west preceding the consul of the east. But the ecclesiastical governors of the two greatest cities of the world soon considered

considered each other as rivals, and contended for power. In the end the bishop of Rome was more potent than the bishop of Constantinople, because, Italy being deserted by its Greek lords, the Pope became a temporal monarch as well as a spiritual guide, and because Europe was not, like Asia, unchristianised by the Muselmans. In the eighth century the Christian world was divided into two great factions, on the subjects of the procession of the Holy Ghost, and the worship of images. In the eleventh century the Greeks widened the breach, by accusing the Latins of various acts and opinions of heresy. The latter used unleavened bread in the holy supper; they confined themselves to one single immersion in the rite of baptism; their bishops wore rings like bridegrooms, kept sabbaths, and did not refrain from things strangled, and from blood. Notwithstanding the violence of national and religious hatred, the emperors of Constantinople frequently indulged the hope of being able to unite the crowns of the west and east. Manuel Comnenus gained the friendship of the Pope, formed for himself and children matrimonial connections with Latin princes, and entrusted Frenchmen with high official charges. This attachment to the Latins was odious and detestable in the eyes of his own subjects. The Greeks dissembled for a while their feelings; but at length the concealed rage and fury of many centuries burst into a flame. The natives of Constantinople arose in arms, burnt the quarters of the city where the strangers resided, massacred most of those who escaped the flames, and dragged through the dirt the head of the papal legate tied to a dog's tail. Four thousand Latins were sold

for slaves to the Turks; some others escaped in their ships, and, in the course of their return to Italy, made the harmless provincials suffer for the crimes of the metropolis. The massacre of the Latins at Constantinople happened about six years before the third Crusade. But the providing materials for the luxury of a great city was so tempting to minds occupied in the pursuit of wealth, and the Italians were so much more industrious than the Greeks, that the Pisans and other people again became residents in Constantinople; and the fierce passions of the nations gradually gave way to sensuality and licentiousness. But the clergy were inexorable; and when Barbarossa was in the Grecian territories, they preached, though without much success, the justice of destroying the heretics.)

Note (D).—Page 44.

In a short time the king became convalescent; and, according to the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, the first symptom of his recovery was a violent longing for pork. Of course it was difficult to procure swine's flesh in a Muselman country. But

An old knight, with Richard biding,  
When he heard of that tiding,  
That the kingis wants were swyche,  
To the steward he spake privyliche.  
“ Our lord the king sore is sick, I wis,  
“ After pork he alonged is;  
“ Ye may none find to sell;  
“ No man be hardy him so to telle!  
“ If he did, he might die.  
“ Now behoves to done as I shall say,

“ That



✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, "That head I ne have."  
 Then said the king, "So God me save,  
 "But I see the head of that swine,  
 "For sooth thou shalt lessen thine!"  
 The cook saw none other might be;  
 He fet the head, and let him see.  
 He fell on knees, and made a cry,  
 Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.  
 The *swarte vis*\* when the king seeth,  
 His black beard and white teeth,  
 How his lippes grinned wide,  
 "What devil is this?" the king cried,  
 And gan to laugh as he were wode.  
 What! is Saracen's flesh thus good?  
 That, never erst, I nought wist!  
 By Gode's death, and his up-rist,  
 Shall we never die for default,  
 While we may, in any assault,  
 (Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,  
 And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,  
 And gnawen her flesh to the bones!  
 Now I have proved it once,  
 For hunger eke I be wop,  
 I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,  
To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;  
They said, " This is the devil's brother,  
" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,  
There is no flesh so nourissant  
Unto an English man,  
Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,  
Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,  
As the head of a Sarezyn.—  
There he is fat and thereto tender ;  
And my men be lean and slender.  
While any Saracen quick be,  
Livand now in this Syrie ;



For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

- ✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo. by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenan pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinessauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

(Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.)

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez;

"Spare them nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross.)

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fowles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;

The damiseles lead dance ;  
 Knights play with shield and lance ;  
 In justs and tournaments they ride ;  
 Many a case hem betide !  
 Many chances and strokes hard !  
 So befell to King Richurd.

Note (F).—Page 59.

During the siege of Acre the duke of Austria took one of the enemy's towers, and placed his banner upon it. Richard, as supreme commander, was indignant at this assumption of superiority, and threw the flag into a ditch. The historical fact, of the haughty duke's refusal to work, is thus curiously mentioned in the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion.

" My father n'as mason ne carpenter ;  
 " And though your walls should all to shake,  
 " I shall never help hem to make."

The irascible monarch was incensed to the highest pitch of fury.

The duke with his foot he smot,  
 Against the breast, God it wot,  
 That on a stone he him overthrew ;  
 It was evil done, by St. Mathew.

He at the same time ordered him to depart instantly, with his vassals, from the Christian camp, threatening to break his standard, and throw it into the river ; and while the duke retired, muttering projects of vengeance, which he afterwards too successfully executed, Richard continued to follow him with imprecations, exclaiming—

With

— With voice full steep,

"Home, shrew! coward! and sleep!

"Come no more, in no wise,

"Never oft in God's service."

Ellis's *Specimens of Met. Rom.* vol. ii. p. 263.

Note. (G).—Page 62.

The murderers were taken and tortured. Bromton (col. 1243) says nothing certain could be gained from them. Hoveden (p. 717) and Vinesauf (whom that excellent compiler Sanudo has followed) make them declare, that they murdered Conrad in revenge for an injury which he had done their master. But Bohadin (c. 144) affirms that they said they were employed by Richard. Against the testimony of this Arabic writer must be placed that of another Arabic historian, namely, the continuator of Tabary, who says (according to father Berthereau, cited in Michaud, *Histoire des Croisades*, II. 422) that the murderers, when under the hands of the executioner, would not confess the names of those that had employed them. The same author says that Saladin offered ten thousand pieces of gold to the old man of the mountain if he would assassinate the marquis of Tyre and the king of England; but that the prince of the assassins did not think proper to deliver Saladin entirely from the Franks, and therefore performed only a moiety of what was required of him. The generosity of Richard to Conrad is admitted in Sicard's *Chronicle*, cited in *l'Art de vérifier les Dates*, I. 449, and it seems that Conrad, with his dying breath, recommended his wife to surrender Tyre to Richard. There is great good sense in Holingshed's remark. He is the only witness

witness who shall "speak to character:"—"And verily it is most likely that king Richard would have been loth to have communicated his purpose unto such a wicked kind of Pagans as the assassins were, if he had pretended any such matter; but rather would have sought his revenge by some other means."

Note (H).—Page 66.

This history of the circumstances respecting the Christians giving up the attack on Jerusalem, have taken from Vinesauf, V. 54. VI. 1, 2, 7. Another class of writers have attributed the loss of the object of the crusade to the selfishness or national feelings of the duke of Burgundy. Some have charged him with taking the bribes of Saladin, others make him refuse co-operation with Richard, lest Richard should have all the honour of the conquest of Jerusalem. It was true that the French were more numerous than the English; but as the commander was an Englishman, they would not receive due reward of fame: and it would be a disgrace on France, if it could be said, that after Philip had retired, Jerusalem had been taken by Richard. M. Paris, 141. Bernardus, 811. Plagon, Cont. of Archb. of Tyre, 635. Sanutus, lib. iii. part 10, c. 6. Hoveden's story is (p. 716), that Richard wished the duke of Burgundy and the French to swear that they would not depart till the conquest should be achieved: but they refused, answering that they would return to France agreeably to the commands of Philip. This general opinion of French and English writers it is difficult to contradict in all respects: on the other hand, Vinesauf is an author of the highest

highest authority on Richard's crusade, and his narrative is full and circumstantial. He mentions violent and alarming altercations between the duke and the king, and the receding of the former from Ascalon. These circumstances were the foundation of the popular story, which in its progress through the world assumed different shapes; wrong places were mentioned as the scene of action, and false conclusions drawn.

Note (I).—Page 78.

Poetry, particularly that of the Provençal bards, was patronised in the court of king Henry the second; for his queen, Eleanor, was a Troubadour by birth, and, as we have already seen, she did not disgrace her family by the prosaic virtues of prudence, chastity, &c. Richard cultivated the "gay science." Unluckily for the royal lute-loving heroes of modern times, the stanzas which it is said he wrote on the eyes of gentle ladies have not descended to us. One of his other poems seems to have been written in prison. It has often been versified, but in every thing that constitutes merit, the translation from the elegant pen of Mr. Ellis is the best.

If captive wight attempt the tuneful strain,  
His voice, belike, full dolefully will sound;  
Yet, to the sad, 'tis comfort to complain.  
Friends have I store; and promises abound;  
Shame on the niggards! Since, these winters twain  
Unransom'd, still I bear a tyrant's chain.  
Full well they know, my lords and nobles all,  
Of England, Normandy, Guienne, Poictou,  
Ne'er did I slight my poorest vassal's call,  
But all, whom wealth could buy, from chains withdrew.

Not

Not in reproach I speak, nor idly vain,  
But I alone unpitied bear the chain.

My fate will shew, " the dungeon and the grave

" Alike repel our kindred and our friends."

Here am I left their paltry gold to save !

Sad fate is mine ; but worse their crime attends,  
Their lord will die : their conscience shall remain,  
And tell how long I wore this galling chain.

No wonder, though my heart with grief boil o'er,

When he, my perjur'd lord, invades my lands ;

Forgets he then the oaths he lately swore,

When both, in treaty, join'd our plighted hands ?

Else, sure I ween, I should not long remain,

Unpitied here to wear a tyrant's chain.

To those my friends, long lov'd, and ever dear,

To gentle Chaile, and kind Persarain,

Go forth my song, and say, whate'er they hear,

To them my heart was never false or vain.

Should they rebel—but no ; their souls disdain

With added weight to load a captive's chain.

Know then the youths of Anjou and Touraine,

Those lusty bachelors, those airy lords,

That these vile walls their captive king restrain ?

Sure they in aire will draw their loyal swords !

Alas ! nor faith, nor valour, now remain ;

Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my chain.

Note (K).—Page 78.

The chaplain Anselm is our chief guide for the history of the circumstances which attended the seizure of Richard. His narrative is contained in *M. Paris*, 143-145 : and in the *Chronicle of Oxenedes* in *Brit. Mus. Cotton. MSS. Nero D. 2. p. 221.* One of these writers

writers must have copied from the other, or both copied from one original, for their statements are almost literally the same. See too Hoveden, 717, 721, 723. The plain matter of fact story of Richard's adventures in Germany is quite as interesting, I think, as the fable, which is as follows. A whole year elapsed before the English knew where their monarch was confined. Blondell de Nesle, Richard's favourite French minstrel, resolved to find out his lord; and after travelling many days without success, at last came to a castle where Richard was detained. Here he found that the castle belonged to the duke of Austria, and that a king was there imprisoned. Suspecting that the prisoner was his master, he found means to place himself directly before the window of the chamber where the king was kept; and in this situation began to sing a French chanson which Richard and Blondell had formerly written together. When the king heard the song he knew it was Blondell who sung it; and when Blondell paused after the first half of the song, the king began the other half and completed it. Blondell then returned to England, acquainted the people with his discovery, and Richard was in due time liberated. Fauchet, *Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Française*, p. 92. Warton's *History of English Poetry*, vol. 1. p. 113. note.

CHanson.

Blondel.—Domna vostra beaumas  
 Elas bellas faisos  
 Els bels oils amoros  
 Els gens cors ben taillats  
 Dons sieu empresenats  
 De vostra amor que mi liu.

Richard.



✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, "That head I ne have."

Then said the king, "So God me save,

"But I see the head of that swine,

"For sooth thou shalt lessen thine!"

The cook saw none other might be;

He fet the head, and let him see.

He fell on knees, and made a cry,

Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.

The *swarte vis*\* when the king seeth,

His black beard and white teeth,

How his lippes grinned wide,

"What devil is this?" the king cried,

And gan to laugh as he were wode.

What! is Saracen's flesh thus good?

That, never erst, I nought wist!

By Gode's death, and his up-ris,

Shall we never die for default,

While we may, in any assault,

(Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,

And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,

And gnawen her flesh to the bones!

Now I have proved it once,

For hunger eke I be wop,

I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,  
To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;  
They said, " This is the devil's brother,  
" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,  
There is no flesh so nourissant  
Unto an English man,  
Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,  
Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,  
As the head of a Sarezyn.—  
There he is fat and thereto tender ;  
And my men be lean and slender.  
While any Saracen quick be,  
Livand now in this Syrie ;

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo. by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 89, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenic pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

( Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,

"Spare them nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross. )

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fewles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;

The damiseles lead dance ;  
 Knights play with shield and lance ;  
 In justs and tournaments they ride ;  
 Many a case hem betide !  
 Many chances and strokes hard !  
 So befell to King Richurd.

Note (F).—Page 59.

During the siege of Acre the duke of Austria took one of the enemy's towers, and placed his banner upon it. Richard, as supreme commander, was indignant at this assumption of superiority, and threw the flag into a ditch. The historical fact, of the haughty duke's refusal to work, is thus curiously mentioned in the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion.

" My father n'as mason ne carpenter ;  
 " And though your walls should all to shake,  
 " I shall never help hem to make."

The irascible monarch was incensed to the highest pitch of fury.

The duke with his foot he smot,  
 Against the breast, God it wot,  
 That on a stone he him overthrew ;  
 It was evil done, by St. Mathew.

He at the same time ordered him to depart instantly, with his vassals, from the Christian camp, threatening to break his standard, and throw it into the river ; and while the duke retired, muttering projects of vengeance, which he afterwards too successfully executed, Richard continued to follow him with imprecations, exclaiming—

With

— With voice full steep,

“ Home, shrew ! coward ! and sleep !

“ Come no more, in no wise,

“ Never oft in God’s service.”

Ellis’s *Specimens of Met. Rom.* vol. ii. p. 263.

Note (G).—Page 62.

The murderers were taken and tortured. Bromton (col. 1243) says nothing certain could be gained from them. Hoveden (p. 717) and Vinesauf (whom that excellent compiler Sanudo has followed) make them declare, that they murdered Conrad in revenge for an injury which he had done their master. But Bohadin (c. 144) affirms that they said they were employed by Richard. Against the testimony of this Arabic writer must be placed that of another Arabic historian, namely, the continuator of Tabary, who says (according to father Berthereau, cited in Michaud, *Histoire des Croisades*, II. 422) that the murderers, when under the hands of the executioner, would not confess the names of those that had employed them. The same author says that Saladin offered ten thousand pieces of gold to the old man of the mountain if he would assassinate the marquis of Tyre and the king of England ; but that the prince of the assassins did not think proper to deliver Saladin entirely from the Franks, and therefore performed only a moiety of what was required of him. The generosity of Richard to Conrad is admitted in Sicard’s *Chronicle*, cited in *l’Art de vérifier les Dates*, I. 449, and it seems that Conrad, with his dying breath, recommended his wife to surrender Tyre to Richard. There is great good sense in Holingshed’s remark. He is the only witness

witness who shall "speak to character."—"And verily it is most likely that king Richard would have been loth to have communicated his purpose unto such a wicked kind of Pagans as the assassins were, if he had pretended any such matter; but rather would have sought his revenge by some other means."

Note (H).—Page 66.

This history of the circumstances respecting the Christians giving up the attack on Jerusalem, have taken from Vinesauf, V. 54. VI. 1, 2, 7. Another class of writers have attributed the loss of the object of the crusade to the selfishness or national feelings of the duke of Burgundy. Some have charged him with taking the bribes of Saladin, others make him refuse co-operation with Richard, lest Richard should have all the honour of the conquest of Jerusalem. It was true that the French were more numerous than the English; but as the commander was an Englishman, they would not receive due reward of fame: and it would be a disgrace on France, if it could be said, that after Philip had retired, Jerusalem had been taken by Richard. M. Paris, 141. Bernardus, 811. Plagon, Cont. of Archb. of Tyre, 635. Sanutus, lib. iii. part 10, c. 6. Hoveden's story is (p. 716), that Richard wished the duke of Burgundy and the French to swear that they would not depart till the conquest should be achieved: but they refused, answering that they would return to France agreeably to the commands of Philip. This general opinion of French and English writers it is difficult to contradict in all respects: on the other hand, Vinesauf is an author of the highest

highest authority on Richard's crusade, and his narrative is full and circumstantial. He mentions violent and alarming altercations between the duke and the king, and the receding of the former from Ascalon. These circumstances were the foundation of the popular story, which in its progress through the world assumed different shapes; wrong places were mentioned as the scene of action, and false conclusions drawn.

Note (I).—Page 78.

Poetry, particularly that of the Provençal bards, was patronised in the court of king Henry the second; for his queen, Eleanor, was a Troubadour by birth, and, as we have already seen, she did not disgrace her family by the prosaic virtues of prudence, chastity, &c. Richard cultivated the "gay science." Unluckily for the royal lute-loving heroes of modern times, the stanzas which it is said he wrote on the eyes of gentle ladies have not descended to us. One of his other poems seems to have been written in prison. It has often been versified, but in every thing that constitutes merit, the translation from the elegant pen of Mr. Ellis is the best.

If captive wight attempt the tuneful strain,  
 His voice, belike, full dolefully will sound;  
 Yet, to the sad, 'tis comfort to complain.  
 Friends have I store; and promises abound;  
 Shame on the niggards! Since, these winters twain  
 Unransom'd, still I bear a tyrant's chain.  
 Full well they know, my lords and nobles all,  
 Of England, Normandy, Guienne, Poictou,  
 Ne'er did I slight my poorest vassal's call,  
 But all, whom wealth could buy, from chains withdrew.

Not



Not in reproach I speak, nor idly vain,  
But I alone unpitied bear the chain.

My fate will shew, " the dungeon and the grave

" Alike repel our kindred and our friends."

Here am I left their paltry gold to save!

Sad fate is mine ; but worse their crime attends.  
Their lord will die : their conscience shall remain,  
And tell how long I wore this galling chain.

No wonder, though my heart with grief boil o'er,

When he, my perjur'd lord, invades my lands ;

Forgets he then the oaths he lately swore,

When both, in treaty, join'd our plighted hands ?

Else, sure I ween, I should not long remain,

Unpitied here to wear a tyrant's chain.

To those my friends, long lov'd, and ever dear,

To gentle Chaile, and kind Persarain,

Go forth my song, and say, whate'er they hear,

To them my heart was never false or vain.

Should they rebel—but no ; their souls disdain

With added weight to load a captive's chain.

Know then the youths of Anjou and Touraine,

Those lusty bachelors, those airy lords,

That these vile walls their captive king restrain ?

Sure they in aire will draw their loyal swords !

Alas ! nor faith, nor valour, now remain ;

Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my chain.

#### Note (K).—Page 78.

The chaplain Anselm is our chief guide for the history of the circumstances which attended the seizure of Richard. His narrative is contained in *M. Paris*, 143-145 : and in the *Chronicle of Oxenedes* in *Brit. Mus. Cotton. MSS. Nero D. 2. p. 221*. One of these writers

writers must have copied from the other, or both copied from one original, for their statements are almost literally the same. See too Hoveden, 717, 721, 723. The plain matter of fact story of Richard's adventures in Germany is quite as interesting, I think, as the fable, which is as follows. A whole year elapsed before the English knew where their monarch was confined. Blondell de Nesle, Richard's favourite French minstrel, resolved to find out his lord; and after travelling many days without success, at last came to a castle where Richard was detained. Here he found that the castle belonged to the duke of Austria, and that a king was there imprisoned. Suspecting that the prisoner was his master, he found means to place himself directly before the window of the chamber where the king was kept; and in this situation began to sing a French chanson which Richard and Blondell had formerly written together. When the king heard the song he knew it was Blondell who sung it; and when Blondell paused after the first half of the song, the king began the other half and completed it. Blondell then returned to England, acquainted the people with his discovery, and Richard was in due time liberated. Fauchet, *Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Française*, p. 92. Warton's *History of English Poetry*, vol. 1. p. 113. note.

## CHANÇON.

Blondel.—Domna vostra beaumas  
 Elas bellas faisos  
 Els bels oils amoros  
 Els gens cors ben taillats  
 Dons sieu empresenats  
 De vostra amor que mi liu.

Richard.

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

- ✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion; one in 8vo. by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenian pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

(Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives.)

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez,

"Spare them nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross.)

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fewles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;

The damiseles lead dance ;  
 Knights play with shield and lance ;  
 In jousts and tournaments they ride ;  
 Many a case hem betide !  
 Many chances and strokes hard !  
 So befell to King Richard.

Note (F).—Page 59.

During the siege of Acre the duke of Austria took one of the enemy's towers, and placed his banner upon it. Richard, as supreme commander, was indignant at this assumption of superiority, and threw the flag into a ditch. The historical fact, of the haughty duke's refusal to work, is thus curiously mentioned in the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion.

" My father n'as mason ne carpenter ;  
 " And though your walls should all to shake,  
 " I shall never help hem to make."

The irascible monarch was incensed to the highest pitch of fury.

The duke with his foot he smot,  
 Against the breast, God it wot,  
 That on a stone he him overthrew ;  
 It was evil done, by St. Mathew.

He at the same time ordered him to depart instantly, with his vassals, from the Christian camp, threatening to break his standard, and throw it into the river ; and while the duke retired, muttering projects of vengeance, which he afterwards too successfully executed, Richard continued to follow him with imprecations, exclaiming—

With

— With voice full steep,

“ Home, shrew! coward! and sleep!

“ Come no more, in no wise,

“ Never oft in God's service.”

Ellis's Specimens of Met. Rom. vol. ii. p. 263.

Note. (G).—Page 62.

The murderers were taken and tortured. Bromton (col. 1243) says nothing certain could be gained from them. Hoveden (p. 717) and Vinesauf (whom that excellent compiler Sanudo has followed) make them declare, that they murdered Conrad in revenge for an injury which he had done their master. But Bohadin (c. 144) affirms that they said they were employed by Richard. Against the testimony of this Arabic writer must be placed that of another Arabic historian, namely, the continuator of Tabary, who says (according to father Berthereau, cited in Michaud, *Histoire des Croisades*, II. 422) that the murderers, when under the hands of the executioner, would not confess the names of those that had employed them. The same author says that Saladin offered ten thousand pieces of gold to the old man of the mountain if he would assassinate the marquis of Tyre and the king of England; but that the prince of the assassins did not think proper to deliver Saladin entirely from the Franks, and therefore performed only a moiety of what was required of him. The generosity of Richard to Conrad is admitted in Sicard's *Chronicle*, cited in *l'Art de vérifier les Dates*, I. 449, and it seems that Conrad, with his dying breath, recommended his wife to surrender Tyre to Richard. There is great good sense in Holingshed's remark. He is the only witness

witness who shall "speak to character."—"And verily it is most likely that king Richard would have been loth to have communicated his purpose unto such a wicked kind of Pagans as the assassins were, if he had pretended any such matter; but rather would have sought his revenge by some other means."

Note (H).—Page 66.

This history of the circumstances respecting the Christians giving up the attack on Jerusalem, I have taken from Vinesauf, V. 54. VI. 1, 2, 7. Another class of writers have attributed the loss of the object of the crusade to the selfishness or national feelings of the duke of Burgundy. Some have charged him with taking the bribes of Saladin, others make him refuse co-operation with Richard, lest Richard should have all the honour of the conquest of Jerusalem. It was true that the French were more numerous than the English; but as the commander was an Englishman, they would not receive due reward of fame: and it would be a disgrace on France, if it could be said, that after Philip had retired, Jerusalem had been taken by Richard. M. Paris, 141. Bernardus, 811. Plagon, Cont. of Archb. of Tyre, 635. Sanutus, lib. iii. part 10, c. 6. Hoveden's story is (p. 716), that Richard wished the duke of Burgundy and the French to swear that they would not depart till the conquest should be achieved: but they refused, answering that they would return to France agreeably to the commands of Philip. This general opinion of French and English writers it is difficult to contradict in all respects: on the other hand, Vinesauf is an author of the highest

highest authority on Richard's crusade, and his narrative is full and circumstantial. He mentions violent and alarming altercations between the duke and the king, and the receding of the former from Ascalon. These circumstances were the foundation of the popular story, which in its progress through the world assumed different shapes; wrong places were mentioned as the scene of action, and false conclusions drawn.

Note (I).—Page 78.

Poetry, particularly that of the Provençal bards, was patronised in the court of king Henry the second; for his queen, Eleanor, was a Troubadour by birth, and, as we have already seen, she did not disgrace her family by the prosaic virtues of prudence, chastity, &c. Richard cultivated the "gay science." Unluckily for the royal lute-loving heroes of modern times, the stanzas which it is said he wrote on the eyes of gentle ladies have not descended to us. One of his other poems seems to have been written in prison. It has often been versified, but in every thing that constitutes merit, the translation from the elegant pen of Mr. Ellis is the best.

If captive wight attempt the tuneful strain,  
 His voice, belike, full dolefully will sound;  
 Yet, to the sad, 'tis comfort to complain.  
 Friends have I store; and promises abound;  
 Shame on the niggards! Since, these winters twain  
 Unransom'd, still I bear a tyrant's chain.  
 Full well they know, my lords and nobles all,  
 Of England, Normandy, Guienne, Poictou,  
 Ne'er did I slight my poorest vassal's call,  
 But all, whom wealth could buy, from chains withdrew.

Not



Not in reproach I speak, nor idly vain,  
But I alone unpitied bear the chain.

My fate will shew, " the dungeon and the grave

" Alike repel our kindred and our friends."

Here am I left their paltry gold to save !

Sad fate is mine ; but worse their crime attends.  
Their lord will die : their conscience shall remain,  
And tell how long I wore this galling chain.

No wonder, though my heart with grief boil o'er,

When he, my perjurd lord, invades my lands ;

Forgets he then the oaths he lately swore,

When both, in treaty, join'd our plighted hands ?

Else, sure I ween, I should not long remain,

Unpitied here to wear a tyrant's chain.

To those my friends, long lov'd, and ever dear,

To gentle Chaile, and kind Persarain,

Go forth my song, and say, whate'er they hear,

To them my heart was never false or vain.

Should they rebel—but no ; their souls disdain

With added weight to load a captive's chain.

Know then the youths of Anjou and Touraine,

Those lusty bachelors, those airy lords,

That these vile walls their captive king restrain ?

Sure they in aire will draw their loyal swords !

Alas ! nor faith, nor valour, now remain ;

Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my chain.

#### Note (K).—Page 78.

The chaplain Anselm is our chief guide for the history of the circumstances which attended the seizure of Richard. His narrative is contained in *M. Paris*, 143-145 : and in the *Chronicle of Oxenedes* in *Brit. Mus. Cotton. MSS. Nero D. 2. p. 221.* One of these writers

writers must have copied from the other, or both copied from one original, for their statements are almost literally the same. See too Hoveden, 717, 721, 723. The plain matter of fact story of Richard's adventures in Germany is quite as interesting, I think, as the fable, which is as follows. A whole year elapsed before the English knew where their monarch was confined. Blondell de Nesle, Richard's favourite French minstrel, resolved to find out his lord; and after travelling many days without success, at last came to a castle where Richard was detained. Here he found that the castle belonged to the duke of Austria, and that a king was there imprisoned. Suspecting that the prisoner was his master, he found means to place himself directly before the window of the chamber where the king was kept; and in this situation began to sing a French chanson which Richard and Blondell had formerly written together. When the king heard the song he knew it was Blondell who sung it; and when Blondell paused after the first half of the song, the king began the other half and completed it. Blondell then returned to England, acquainted the people with his discovery, and Richard was in due time liberated. Fauchet, *Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Française*, p. 92. Warton's *History of English Poetry*, vol. 1. p. 113. note.

CHANSON.

Blondel.—Domna vostra beaumas  
 Elas bellas faisos  
 Els bels oils amoros  
 Els gens cors ben taillats  
 Dons sieu empresenats  
 De vostra amer que mi liu.

Richard.

✓ Sometime afterwards, in a dainty mood, the king desired that the swine's head should be dressed.

Quod the cook, " That head I ne have."  
 Then said the king, " So God me save,  
 " But I see the head of that swine,  
 " For sooth thou shalt lessen thine !"  
 The cook saw none other might be ;  
 He fet the head, and let him see.  
 He fell on knees, and made a cry,  
 Lo here the head, my lord, mercy.  
 The *swarte vis*\* when the king seeth,  
 His black beard and white teeth,  
 How his lippes grinned wide,  
 " What devil is this ?" the king cried,  
 And gan to laugh as he were wode.  
 What ! is Saracen's flesh thus good ?  
 That, never erst, I nought wist !  
 By Gode's death, and his up-rist,  
 Shall we never die for default,  
 While we may, in any assault,  
 ( Slee Saracens, the flesh may take,  
 And seethen, and rosten, and do hem bake,  
 And gnawen her flesh to the bones !  
 Now I have proved it once,  
 For hunger eke I be wop,  
 I and my folk shall eat mo.)

✓ ( On the occasion of an entertainment which he gave to some Saracenian ambassadors, he commanded his marshal to strike off the heads of an equal number of Muselman prisoners of high rank, and deliver them to the cook, with instructions to clear away the hair, and, after boiling them in a caldron, to distribute them

\* Black face.

them on several platters, one to each guest, observing to fasten on the forehead of each the piece of parchment expressing the name and family of the victim. A head was also to be brought for Richard, and he would eat thereof,

As it were a tender chick,  
To see how the others will like.

Every thing took place according to order. The ambassadors were shocked at the repast, and astonished at the king, who swallowed the morsels as fast as they could be supplied by the knight who carved them.

Every man then poked other ;  
They said, " This is the devil's brother,  
" That slays our men, and thus hem eats."

The table was then cleared, and covered again with a proper dinner. Richard then courteously relieved their fears respecting their own personal safety, apologized to them for what had passed, which he attributed entirely to his ignorance of their taste, and added,

King Richard shall warrant,  
There is no flesh so nourissant  
Unto an English man,  
Partridge, plover, haron, ne swan,  
Cow ne ox, sheep ne swine,  
As the head of a Saracen.—  
There he is fat and thereto tender ;  
And my men be lean and slender.  
While any Saracen quick be,  
Livand now in this Syrie ;

For meat will we nothing care,  
 Abouten fast we shall fare,  
 And every day we shall eat  
 All so many as we may get.  
 To England will we nought gon,  
 Till they be eaten every one. )

- ✓ According to Warton, there are three printed editions of this romance of Richard Cœur de Lion, one in 8vo: by Winken de Worde, in 1509; another by him in 4to. 1528, and a third by W. C. no date. Of the second, there is a copy in the Bodleian (c. 39, art. Selden), in which there is no account of the savage meal which Richard made of the Saracens, and the feast of the ambassadors. The circumstance of these omissions adds force to the opinion, that the tale of the crusade of Richard was altered in various ways by the lying minstrels, and that there is no perfect standard of this romance. See Ellis's *Specimens of Metrical Romances*, vol. ii. p. 172. From Mr. Ellis's version I have extracted my account of the Saracenian pork story. )

Note (E).—Page 51.

Vinesauf, iii. 19, iv. 2, 4, and 6. Benedict. 674. Bohadin, cap. 115, p. 183. The soldiers of Richard's crusade did not materially differ from their predecessors—*et aurum et argentum multum invenerunt in visceribus eorum (Paganorum)—et fel eorum usui medicinali servaverunt!* (Hemingford (p. 531) states sixteen hundred as the number of prisoners destroyed by Richard, and Bohadin (cap. 115) estimates them at three thousand. Hoveden (p. 698) says, that five thousand captives were slain by the king and the duke

duke of Burgundy. Vinesauf sets them down at two thousand seven hundred. He seems ashamed of his master's ferocity, and is obliged to hazard the supposition, that Richard killed the Muselmans out of his great zeal for the glory of Christianity, and his hatred of Islamism. Saladin did not forget this act of barbarity, and, in revenge, he slew all the Christians whom the chances of war threw into his hands.)

( Exercising the privilege of poetical exaggeration, the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion says, that Richard gave orders for the execution of sixty thousand captives..

They were led into the place full even.

There they heard angels of heaven;

They said, "Seigneurs, tuez, tuez;

"Spare them nought, and beheadeth these!"

King Richard heard the angels' voice,

And thanked God and the holy cross.)

The author of the romance, Mr. Ellis says, considering that murder, conducted on so grand a scale, at the expense of unbelievers, and expressly enjoined by angels, could not fail of communicating great pleasure to the reader, has here introduced the following episodical description of Spring.

Merry is, in time of May,

When fowls sing in her lay.

Floweres on apple-trees and perry;

Small fowles sing merry.

Ladies strew her bowers

With red roses and lilly flowers.

Great joy is in frith and lake;

Beast and bird plays with his mate;

The damiseles lead dance ;  
 Knights play with shield and lance ;  
 In justs and tournaments they ride ;  
 Many a case hem betide !  
 Many chances and strokes hard !  
 So befell to King Richard.

Note (F).—Page 59.

During the siege of Acre the duke of Austria took one of the enemy's towers, and placed his banner upon it. Richard, as supreme commander, was indignant at this assumption of superiority, and threw the flag into a ditch. The historical fact, of the haughty duke's refusal to work, is thus curiously mentioned in the romance of Richard Cœur de Lion.

" My father n'as mason ne carpenter ;  
 " And though your walls should all to shake,  
 " I shall never help hem to make."

The irascible monarch was incensed to the highest pitch of fury.

The duke with his foot he smot,  
 Against the breast, God it wot,  
 That on a stone he him overthrew ;  
 It was evil done, by St. Mathew.

He at the same time ordered him to depart instantly, with his vassals, from the Christian camp, threatening to break his standard, and throw it into the river ; and while the duke retired, muttering projects of vengeance, which he afterwards too successfully executed, Richard continued to follow him with imprecations, exclaiming—

With

— With voice full steep,

“ Home, shrew! coward! and sleep!

“ Come no more, in no wise,

“ Never oft in God’s service.”

Ellis’s *Specimens of Met. Rom.* vol. ii. p. 263.

Note (G).—Page 62.

The murderers were taken and tortured. Bromton (col. 1243) says nothing certain could be gained from them. Hoveden (p. 717) and Vinesauf (whom that excellent compiler Sanudo has followed) make them declare, that they murdered Conrad in revenge for an injury which he had done their master. But Bohadin (c. 144) affirms that they said they were employed by Richard. Against the testimony of this Arabic writer must be placed that of another Arabic historian, namely, the continuator of Tabary, who says (according to father Berthereau, cited in Michaud, *Histoire des Croisades*, II. 422) that the murderers, when under the hands of the executioner, would not confess the names of those that had employed them. The same author says that Saladin offered ten thousand pieces of gold to the old man of the mountain if he would assassinate the marquis of Tyre and the king of England; but that the prince of the assassins did not think proper to deliver Saladin entirely from the Franks, and therefore performed only a moiety of what was required of him. The generosity of Richard to Conrad is admitted in Sicard’s *Chronicle*, cited in *l’Art de vérifier les Dates*, I. 449, and it seems that Conrad, with his dying breath, recommended his wife to surrender Tyre to Richard. There is great good sense in Holingshed’s remark. He is the only witness



witness who shall "speak to character."—"And verily it is most likely that king Richard would have been loth to have communicated his purpose unto such a wicked kind of Pagans as the assassins were, if he had pretended any such matter; but rather would have sought his revenge by some other means."

Note (H).—Page 66.

This history of the circumstances respecting the Christians giving up the attack on Jerusalem, have taken from Vinesauf, V. 54. VI. 1, 2, 7. Another class of writers have attributed the loss of the object of the crusade to the selfishness or national feelings of the duke of Burgundy. Some have charged him with taking the bribes of Saladin, others make him refuse co-operation with Richard, lest Richard should have all the honour of the conquest of Jerusalem. It was true that the French were more numerous than the English; but as the commander was an Englishman, they would not receive due reward of fame: and it would be a disgrace on France, if it could be said, that after Philip had retired, Jerusalem had been taken by Richard. M. Paris, 141. Bernardus, 811. Plagon, Cont. of Archb. of Tyre, 635. Sanutus, lib. iii. part 10, c. 6. Hoveden's story is (p. 716), that Richard wished the duke of Burgundy and the French to swear that they would not depart till the conquest should be achieved: but they refused, answering that they would return to France agreeably to the commands of Philip. This general opinion of French and English writers it is difficult to contradict in all respects: on the other hand, Vinesauf is an author of the highest

highest authority on Richard's crusade, and his narrative is full and circumstantial. He mentions violent and alarming altercations between the duke and the king, and the receding of the former from Ascalon. These circumstances were the foundation of the popular story, which in its progress through the world assumed different shapes; wrong places were mentioned as the scene of action, and false conclusions drawn.

Note (I).—Page 78.

Poetry, particularly that of the Provençal bards, was patronised in the court of king Henry the second; for his queen, Eleanor, was a Troubadour by birth, and, as we have already seen, she did not disgrace her family by the prosaic virtues of prudence, chastity, &c. Richard cultivated the "gay science." Unluckily for the royal lute-loving heroes of modern times, the stanzas which it is said he wrote on the eyes of gentle ladies have not descended to us. One of his other poems seems to have been written in prison. It has often been versified, but in every thing that constitutes merit, the translation from the elegant pen of Mr. Ellis is the best.

If captive wight attempt the tuneful strain,  
 His voice, belike, full dolefully will sound;  
 Yet, to the sad, 'tis comfort to complain.  
 Friends have I store; and promises abound;  
 Shame on the niggards! Since, these winters twain  
 Unransom'd, still I bear a tyrant's chain.  
 Full well they know, my lords and nobles all,  
 Of England, Normandy, Guienne, Poictou,  
 Ne'er did I slight my poorest vassal's call,  
 But all, whom wealth could buy, from chains withdrew.

Not

Not in reproach I speak, nor idly vain,  
But I alone unpitied bear the chain.

My fate will shew, " the dungeon and the grave  
" Alike repel our kindred and our friends."

Here am I left their paltry gold to save !

Sad fate is mine ; but worse their crime attends.  
Their lord will die : their conscience shall remain,  
And tell how long I wore this galling chain.

No wonder, though my heart with grief boil o'er,  
When he, my perjur'd lord, invades my land ;  
Forgets he then the oaths he lately swore,

When both, in treaty, join'd our plighted hands ?  
Else, sure I ween, I should not long remain,  
Unpitied here to wear a tyrant's chain.

To those my friends, long lov'd, and ever dear,

To gentle Chaile, and kind Persarain,  
Go forth my song, and say, whate'er they hear,

To them my heart was never false or vain.  
Should they rebel—but no ; their souls disdain  
With added weight to load a captive's chain.

Know then the youths of Anjou and Touraine,

Those lusty bachelors, those airy lords,  
That these vile walls their captive king restrain ?

Sure they in aire will draw their loyal swords !

Alas ! nor faith, nor valour, now remain ;  
Sighs are but wind, and I must bear my chain.

#### Note (K).—Page 78.

The chaplain Anselm is our chief guide for the history of the circumstances which attended the seizure of Richard. His narrative is contained in *M. Paris*, 143-145 : and in the *Chronicle of Oxenedes* in *Brit. Mus. Cotton. MSS. Nero D. 2. p. 221*. One of these writers

writers must have copied from the other, or both copied from one original, for their statements are almost literally the same. See too Hoveden, 717, 721, 723. The plain matter of fact story of Richard's adventures in Germany is quite as interesting, I think, as the fable, which is as follows. A whole year elapsed before the English knew where their monarch was confined. Blondell de Nesle, Richard's favourite French minstrel, resolved to find out his lord; and after travelling many days without success, at last came to a castle where Richard was detained. Here he found that the castle belonged to the duke of Austria, and that a king was there imprisoned. Suspecting that the prisoner was his master, he found means to place himself directly before the window of the chamber where the king was kept; and in this situation began to sing a French chanson which Richard and Blondell had formerly written together. When the king heard the song he knew it was Blondell who sung it; and when Blondell paused after the first half of the song, the king began the other half and completed it. Blondell then returned to England, acquainted the people with his discovery, and Richard was in due time liberated. Fauchet, *Recueil de l'Origine de la Langue Française*, p. 92. Warton's *History of English Poetry*, vol. 1. p. 113. note.

## CHANSON.

Blondel.—*Domna vostra beaumas*  
*Elas bellas faisos*  
*Els bels oils amoros*  
*Els gens cors ben taillats*  
*Dons sieu empresenats*  
*De vostra amor que mi liu.*

Richard.

Richard.—*Si bel trop affansa*  
*Ja dei vos non portrai*  
*Que major honorai*  
*Sol en votre detman*  
*Que santra des beisan*  
*So cau de vos volrai.*

## IMITATED.

B.—Your beauty, lady fair,  
 None views without delight;  
 But still so cold an air  
 No passion can excite.  
 Yet this I patient see  
 While all are shunn'd like me.

R.—No nymph my heart can wound,  
 If favours she divide,  
 And smile on all around,  
 Unwilling to decide:  
 I'd rather hatred bear  
 Than love with others share.

Burney's History of Music, vol. 2. p. 266.

In the fourth part of the *Mirror for Magistrates*,  
 Richard Cœur de Lion thus relates his events.

Backe, backe to England, with a griev'd heart,  
 Leaving these blest affairs of th' holy one  
 Of Israel, we must with grief depart:  
 Philip my foe excites my brother John,  
 In my long absence to aspire the throne:  
 My England's rocky bounds ring with alarms  
 Of factious traitors, John is up in arms.  
 Warn'd by report, my course I did direct  
 For England's bounds: but here thy muse must know  
 My father's curse began to take effect:  
 Heav'n seem'd to frowné, the sea became my foe,  
 And earth conspir'd to work my greater woe:

By

By seas' dark waves and froward winds from heav'n,  
Unto my foes at shore I up was given.

By tempest driven, from danger to be free,  
I made hard shipwracke on the Istrian strand,  
Depriv'd of all my train, excepting three,  
Enforc'd I was to make my way by land  
Through Austria, to Vienna, that doth stand  
Upon Danubius' banks, that dukedom's seat,  
The bulwark now 'gainst Turkish Mahumet.

There being descri'd unto mine ancient foe,  
The Austrian duke I was given up for prey :  
Who like himself, himself to me did show,  
Bearing in mind the malice of that day,  
When I at Acon, for his proud assay  
In taking for his lodging in the towne  
The palace up, I cast his ensigns down.

Yet with this duke not long was my abode ;  
For when report of my captivity  
Was newly set on wing, and flown abroad,  
Henry, then emperor of Germany,  
Forgetful of imperial royalty,  
Of that false duke that had me fast in hold,  
Greedy of prey, did purchase me for gold.

Upon that man, whom fortune doth begin  
To leave forlorn, who will not seem to frown ?  
When he is sunken up unto the chin  
In waves of sad distresse, all thrust him downe,  
And suffer him in wretchednesse to drowne ;  
They that did envy my great state before,  
Did wish such state might nere betide me more.

Ambitious John, and Philip, that false king,  
Taking the time to perfect their intent,  
To Henry did a golden message wing,

In hope if he to set me free was bent,  
 Such purpose with corruption to prevent.  
 Which when with terror stricken I did heare,  
 No hope I had, no comfort did appeare.

Ignoble age, branded with this foule crime,  
 This blemish thou canst never wipe away;  
 When true record shall tell to future time,  
 How most unjust the Christian did repay  
 His backe returne that did through death assay,  
 'Gainst paganism to advance the Christian name,  
 Even children shall upbraid thee with the same.

In tempest of this trouble long being tost,  
 Sore griev'd in mind for my captivity,  
 At length compounding with my greedy host,  
 Th' emperor Henry, hight of Germany,  
 With ransom to redeem my liberty,  
 An hundred thousand pounds I did agree  
 To give to him before I could be free.

Note (L).—Page 79.

Richard's speech is not given by any original writer. M. Paris (145) says that the emperor, as well as the other members of the diet, was convinced of Plantagenet's innocence, and that he treated him thenceforth with humanity. The price of the ransom was then the only question. But it is difficult to understand by what right they could detain him, if his innocence were acknowledged. Bromton tells us, that although Richard had proved that he had not participated in Conrad's murder, yet that, for the perfect conviction of the potentates, he sent to the old man of the mountain for a justification. A letter from the chief of the assassins to the duke of Austria is accordingly produced, completely exculpating Richard,

Richard, and declaring that Conrad was killed by order of the old man, in consequence of the marquis having robbed and murdered an assassin. Another letter is also produced, addressed to all the princes and people of Christendom; in which, as in the former one, the chief of the assassins assumes to himself all the honour of the murder. There is very little difficulty in proving that these letters were forgeries. The very superscriptions are contrary to the oriental mode. "Limpoldo duci Austriæ Vetus de Monte salutem."—"Vetus de Monte Principibus Europæ et omni populo Christiano salutem." The phrase, Vetus de Monte, is a mere Latin translation of the name by which the chief of the assassins was known in Europe. His appellation in Syria was very different, and, consequently, the letters were not translated from an Arabic original. The over anxiety expressed in the letters for the exculpation of Richard, shews that they were of European manufacture. "Et bene dicimus vobis in veritate; quod dominus Ricardus rex Angliæ in hac Marchisi morte nullam culpam habuit. Et qui propter hoc domino regi Angliæ malum fecerunt injuste fecerunt et sine causa. Scitis pro certo quod nullum hominem hujus mundi pro mercede aliqua vel pecunia occidimus, nisi prius malum nobis fecerit." It is difficult to suppose that this chief would run the risk of the vengeance of the Christian powers from a mere love of justice, and from a wish to exculpate a monarch whom he neither knew nor regarded. The circular letter is without date. The other letter is dated in the middle of September. But the common European division of time was unknown to the Asiatics, and particularly



to the savage ignorant assassins. The writer of the letter in Diceto thought to give it probability by dating it according to the year of the Greeks. With the oriental modes he was totally unacquainted. He therefore dates the letter in the year 1565 from Alexander. This year of the Seleucidæ corresponds with the year of Christ 1193. The copyist of the letter for Bromton did not understand this mode of computing time; and, accordingly, he dates his letter, "anno ab Alexandro papa quinto." A Muhammedan prince dating his letters according to pontificates is somewhat strange; and we may pardon his ignorance of what was passing at Rome. Pope Alexander died 1181. Bromton, Diceto, Hemingford, and Trivet, insert one or both of these letters. But those respectable historians, Matthew Paris and Roger Hoveden, have not suffered them to corrupt their works.

Note (M).—Page 85.

Saladin's humility and generosity were the principal subjects of praise among the people of the west; and hence the stories became believed, that he distributed money in charity among the poor of every religious denomination, and that a little while before his death he ordered his standard-bearer, when his funeral should take place, to carry his winding sheet, suspended from a lance, through Damasous, and proclaim, "Behold all that Saladin, the great conqueror of the East, carries with him to the grave." Dante mentions Saladin, and gives him a place in the division of the lower regions occupied by the greatest and wisest pagan philosophers and poets. *Dell' Inferno*, canto iv. 129. M. Ginguené well observes, that  
it

it was a trait of remarkable independence in Dante to have dared to place in Elysium this terrible enemy of Christians. )

The following are pleasing instances of Saladin's self-command and love of justice. "As Bohadin, the "historian, was one day exercising, at Jerusalem, his "office of judge, a decent old merchant tendered him "a bill or libel of complaint, which he insisted upon "having opened. 'Who (says Bohadin) is your ad- "versary?' 'My adversary,' replies the merchant, "'is the sultan himself; but this is the seat of jus- "tice; and we have heard that you (applying to "Bohadin) are not governed by regard to persons.' "Bohadin told him his cause could not be decided "without his adversary being first apprized. The "sultan, accordingly, was informed of the affair; he "submitted to appear; produced his witnesses, and, "having justly defended himself, gained the cause. "Yet so little did he resent this treatment, that he "dismissed his antagonist with a rich garment and a "donation."—"At another time Saladin was in com- "pany with his intimate friends, enjoying their con- "versation apart, the crowd being dismissed, when a "slave of some rank brought him a petition in behalf "of some person oppressed. The sultan said that he "was then fatigued, and wished the matter, whatever "it was, might for a time be deferred. The other "did not attend to what was desired, but, on the "contrary, almost thrust the petition into the sultan's "face. The sultan, on this, opening and reading it "once, declared he thought the petitioner's cause a "good one. 'Let then our sovereign lord,' says the "other, 'sign it.' 'There is no inkstand,' says the sultan

"sultan (who, being at that time seated at the door of his tent, rendered it impossible for any one to enter).—'You have one,' replies the petitioner, 'in the inner part of the tent;' (which meant, as the writer well observes, little less than bidding the prince go and bring it himself). The sultan, looking back and seeing the inkstand behind him, cries out, 'God help me! the man says true;' and immediately reached back for it, and signed the instrument." Bohadin's Life of Saladin, p. 22, p. 10, as translated by Mr. Harris, Philological Inquiries, chap. 6.

[Note (N).—Page 95.]

For the fourth crusade, that of the German lords, our authorities, with the exception of Arnold of Lubbeck, were writers whom I have already characterized, and have often quoted. (Our materials for the fifth crusade, though few, are valuable. L'Histoire de la Prise de Constantinople par les Français et les Vénitiens, écrite par Geoffroy de Villehardouin, maréchal de Champagne, fol. edit. Du Cange. The author was an eye-witness, and his testimony is given with simplicity and tolerable candour. Du Cange's notes are as valuable as his notes on the Alexiad. Another observer of the wonderful scenes which were passing on the world was Nicetas. After the last siege of Constantinople, in 1204, this Grecian retired to Nice, and wrote the history of his country from the year 1118 to 1218. Of this lachrymal annalist I have read, and shall refer to Wolf's edition, Basil, 1557. The life of Pope Innocent III. by a contemporaneous, but anonymous author. It is prefixed to Baluzius's edition of the letters of his Holiness, and is inserted by Muratori

tori in the third volume of his great collection of Italian historians, p. 486, &c. Some letters or public dispatches from Baldwin, count of Flanders, to the Pope, are included in this life, and are of great value. We have no Venetian eye-witnesses,) but I have gathered some facts both from the Chronicle of Andrew Dandolo, in the twelfth volume of Muratori, and the work of Paolo Ramusio, *De Bello Constantinopolitano et Imperatoribus Comnenis per Gallos et Venetis restitutis*. Venet. fol. 1635. The author was secretary to the council of ten, and was ordered by that assembly to write the history of the eventful war between Venice and Greece. Villehardouin's work was his foundation, but the archives of the republic enabled him to give a new air and colour to many facts. The work of Gunther, on the subject of the fifth crusade, has been frequently referred to by other writers; but I have not found in his short narrative many things that are not better treated in Villehardouin. The Jesuit Doutreman's history, entitled *Constantinopolis Belgica*, has not fallen into my hands. I do not regret it, for I am not prejudiced in favour of the biographer of Peter, and I learn from Du Cange, that the Jesuit had not seen the work of Ramusio, or the letters to Pope Innocent III.

Note (O).—Page 207.

The count of Champagne published the Crusade in a chanson. He was as serious about the matter as if he had been writing a sermon, for he says,

Diex se laissa per nos en crois pener,  
Et nous dira au jour, où tuit venront,  
Vos, qui ma crois m'aidates à porter,  
Vos en ciez là, où li angele sont,

La me verrez, et ma mere Marie;  
 Et vos, par qui je n'ai jamais aie  
 Descendez tuit en infer le profond.

Canzon 55. Poesies du Roi de Navarre,  
 2 vol. 12mo. Paris, 1742.

Thibaud, however, was more of a gallant than a religious man. Just before embarkation at Marseilles, he consoles himself by writing a song, on leaving the queen of France or some imaginary mistress, and puts himself under the protection of the Virgin.

Dame des Ciex, grans roine poissanz,  
 Au grant besoig me soiez secarranz,  
 De vos amer puisse avoir droite flame  
 Quand Dame perc,\* Dame me soit aidanz.

I would give more specimens of the poetry of this count of Champagne, were I not afraid that my readers recollect the expression of Bossuet, that the count of Champagne made verses which he was fool enough to publish.

Note (P).—Page 221.

### THE CRUSADERS.

#### CRUSADER.

Thou seest, my friend, of good and ill  
 To reason, and their bounds to know,  
 To us is dealt by sovereign will,  
 Alone of creatures here below.  
 And hence, so we employ our pains  
 To do the works which God ordains,  
 For us his bounty hath prepar'd,  
 Of peerless price, a sure reward.

Lo,

\* Je pars, je me sépare. Chanson 56.

Lo, now the fruitful hour at hand !  
 To thee the precious boon is given ;  
 For Paynims waste the holy land,  
 And spoil the heritage of heaven.  
 Shall we such faithless works behold,  
 With craven courage slack and cold ?  
 How else, but to the giver's praise,  
 May we devote our wealth and days ? )

NON-CRUSADER.

I read thee right—thou holdest good,  
 To this same land I straight should hie,  
 And win it back with mickle blood,  
 ( Nor gain one foot of soil thereby.  
 While here, dejected and forlorn,  
 My wife and babes are left to mourn ;  
 My goodly mansion rudely marr'd,  
 All trusted to my dogs to guard. )  
 But I, fair comrade, well I wot  
 An ancient saw, of pregnant wit,  
 Doth bid us, “ Keep what we have got ; ”  
 And troth I mean to follow it.  
 I cannot learn what part 'tis read,  
 That Christian folk shall so be fed ;  
 Who soweth thus, I shrewdly guess,  
 Shall gather naught but emptiness.

CRUSADER.

( Forth from thy groaning mother's womb,  
 Thou, naked helpless child, wast brought ;  
 You see, how soon thou art become  
 Stout, lusty, lacking now for naught.  
 Then sure, if wealth for heaven we lose,  
 Heaven, hundred fold, that wealth renews ;  
 But Paradise may never bless  
 The wretch who lives in idleness. )

## ADDITIONAL NOTES.

## NON-CRUSADER.

Howbeit, my friend, of folk that toll,  
 And sweat almost their dear heart's blood ;  
 And all their days keep mighty coil,  
 To keep some store of this world's good :  
 Of such, I say, full oft from home,  
 On penance sent to holy Rome,  
 Asturia, or I wot not where,  
 Nor what befalls the caitiffs there.  
 (I've seen a band of gallants brave,  
 To France returning all forlorn ;  
 Without or waiting wench or knave,  
 And naked, nigh, as they were born.  
 Now sure, it needs not cross the seas,  
 And play such losing games as these ;  
 And bow one's flesh to servitude,  
 All for one's soul's immortal good !  
 I say, good brother, so you hold  
 Alone we purchase heavenly bliss : )  
 For this a man must waste his gold,  
 And pass the boundless seas for this.  
 Now I maintain 'tis far more sage,  
 In peace to hold one's heritage ;  
 And there that Paradise obtain,  
 For which thou needs wilt cross the main.

## CRUSADER.

Nay, now thy speech so lewdly sounds,  
 I scarce may sober answer deign :  
 Thou ween'st, forsooth, with hawks and hounds  
 To save thy soul, sans fleshly pain :  
 (How much of martyr's blood has flow'd  
 To win those seats of heaven's abode ?  
 How many, this world's joys foregone,  
 And buried quick, in cloisters moan ? )

NON-

✓ NON-CRUSADER.

(Sire, by my fay, thou preacheest well !  
Thy words are brave ; 'twere best thou go  
To yon sequester'd silent cell,  
And teach its lordly abbot so !  
Those fattening deans would gladly hear ;  
Those prelates needs must lend an ear ;  
Such men, be sure, heaven's laws fulfil,  
Devoted to their Maker's will !

On these his plenteous gifts he showers,  
While we are told his wars to wage :  
Their rents flow in, they dwell in bowers,  
Nor, slumbering, note the tempest's rage.  
Good faith, Sir, if the road to heaven  
Be made so passing smooth and even,  
The priest who changeth, wit must lack,  
He ne'er shall find a readier track.

Way's *Fabliaux*, vol. ii. p. 227, 230, edit. 1796.

Note (Q).—Page 236.

M. Paris, 684. The English were alluded to by the count of Artois. The reason for the supposition that they belonged to the caudatory part of mankind, it is difficult to determine. Every one knows that there was a common story in old times, that some of our ancestors, in consequence of having treated disrespectfully St. Augustine the missionary, incurred the punishment of wearing tails ; and that the curse was hereditary. The murder of Thomas à Becket was another reason why our forefathers became caudati. Du Cange (*Alexiad*, book iv. p. 202. n.) thinks that an allusion is here made to their custom of wearing shoes with long extended points, sustained by chains of gold and silver, or silken strings, which were tied



tied to the knee. So old a writer as Malmesbury mentions this foppery. "The ecclesiastics," says Hume, "took exception at this ornament, which, they said, was an attempt to belie the Scripture, where it is affirmed, that no man can add a cubit to his stature; and they declaimed against it with great vehemence; nay, assembled some synods, who absolutely condemned it. But, such are the strange contradictions in human nature! though the clergy, at that time, could overturn thrones, and had authority to send above a million of men on *their* errand to the deserts of Asia, they could never prevail against these long pointed shoes." Hume, History of England, vol. i. p. 302. edit. 8vo. 1788. An act of parliament in the third year of the reign of Edward IV. and a subsequent royal proclamation, prohibited these chains and strings, and declared that the shoes should not extend two inches beyond the foot, under the penalty of twenty shillings. The fashion then ran into a contrary extreme; and, in queen Mary's days, a prohibition was made of shoes' toes more than six inches square. But it is difficult to agree with Du Cange, that the word "*caudati*" is used in the sense he contends for, by the count d'Artois. Long pointed shoes were in fashion in France as well as in England; and in both countries clerical admonition stayed the usual capriciousness of fashion. In a strange mixture of spiritual and trifling matters, a council held at Sens, about half a century after the proclamation of Edward IV., condemned Luther and pointed shoes. Du Cange, who, in the course of his inquisitive and learned researches, always sweeps every thing both far and near

near to his subject, shews that Tertullian and St. Augustine declaimed against long and pointed shoes. Cicero (*de Natura Deorum*, i. 29.) mentions the *calcei repandi* of Juno, and Ernesti brings instances of coins which prove the fact. On the different effects of clerical preaching and royal counsel against a particular form of dress, the curious reader is referred to Bayle, article *Connecte*.

Note (R).—Page 280.

The excessive simplicity of the monument of Edward I. has been supposed to have proceeded from the circumstance that his body was frequently re-embalmed: and such a tomb was favourable to the operation. The king's appointment was never executed. "The monkish Chronicles," says Warton, "impute the crime of withholding so pious a legacy to the advice of the king of France, whose daughter Isabel was married to the succeeding king. But it is more probable that Edward II. and his profligate minion, Piers Gaveston, dissipated the money in their luxurious and expensive pleasures." Warton, *History of English Poetry*, vol. i. p. 106-108. In an elegy made on the death of Edward I. the writer makes Edward say,

"Iche biqueth myn hirte aryht,  
 "That hit be write at mi devys,  
 "Over the sea that Hue\* be diht,  
 "With fourscore knyghtes al of pris,  
 "In werre that buen war aut wys,  
 "Agein the hethene for to fyhte,

"To

\* One of his officers.

" To wynde the croize that low bys,  
 " Myself ycholden get that y myhte."

The elegist thus proceeds,

Kyng of France ! thou hevedust sunne,\*  
 That thou the counsail woldest fonde,  
 To latte † the wille of kyng Edward,  
 To wend to the holi londe ;  
 Thet our kyng hede take on honde,  
 All Engeland to zeme ‡ and wysse,§  
 To wenden in to the holi londe ;  
 To wynnen us heveriche blisse.

The messenger to the Pope com  
 And seyede that our kyng was dede,  
 Ys owne hond the lettre he nom,||  
 Y wis his herte wes ful gret ;  
 The Pope himself the lettre redde,  
 And spec a word of gret honour.  
 " Alas," he seid, " is Edward ded ?  
 " Of Cristendome he ber the flour."

The Pope is to chautmbre wende,  
 For dole ne mihte he spake na more ;  
 Ant after cardinales he sende  
 That muche couthen of Cristes lore.  
 Both the lasse¶ ant eke the more  
 Bed hem both red ant synge ;  
 Great deol me\*\* myhte se thore,††  
 Many mon is honde wrnge.

The Pope of Peyters stod at is masse  
 With ful gret solempnete  
 Ther me con‡‡ the soule blisse ;  
 " Kyng Edward, honoured thou be ;

God

\* Sin. † Let, hinder. ‡ Protect. § Govern. || Took.

¶ Less. \*\* Men. †† There. ‡‡ Began.

God love thy sone come after the,  
 Bringe to ende that thou hast bygonne,  
 The holy crois ymade of tre  
 So fain thou woldest hit have ywonne.

" Jerusalem, thou hast ilore  
 The floure of all chivalrie,  
 Now kyng Edward liveth na more,  
 Alas, that he yet shulde deye!  
 He wolde ha rered up full heyge  
 Our banners that bulth broht to ground;e;  
 Wel longe we may clepe\* and crie,  
 Er we such a kyng have y founde."

It is said that Robert Bruce, in his dying moments, exclaimed that he had formerly made a vow that if his wars should end favourably, he would go and fight the enemies of Jesus Christ. But as his life had been spent in contests with England, he could not accomplish what he wished, and he would send his heart in the stead of his body to fulfil his vow. Lord James Douglas then promised upon his knighthood to bear the heart to the holy sepulchre, proclaiming at every principal place on his journey that he bore the heart of king Robert of Scotland. Froissart, vol. 1. p. 48, &c. The king died; his friend embalmed his remains, put the heart into a silver casket, and commenced his journey. He went into Spain, and was killed fighting with the infidels. The issue is thus told by Barbour.

Sum off the lord Dowglas' men,  
 That thair lord dede has fundyn there,  
 Yeid weill ner woud for dule and wa,  
 Lang quhill our hym thai sorowit awa,

And

And syne with gret dule hame hym bar :  
 The king's hart half thai fundya thar,  
 And that hame with thaim half thai tane.

The Bruce, vol. 8. p. 174.

Pinkerton's Edition.

The heart of Bruce was deposited at Melros.

Note (S).—Page 306.

Parmi les nombreuses recherches qu'on a faites de nos jours, pour découvrir si les Templiers avaient un secret et quel était ce secret, il a été présenté le système que les Templiers avaient des opinions Gnostico-Manichéennes et que l'idole qu'on les accusait, d'adorer était une figure BAFFOMETIQUE, mot difficile ou peut-être impossible à expliquer.

Une observation très simple suffira pour renverser ce système et réfuter l'érudition dont on a tâché de l'appuyer.

Dans la déposition de deux témoins entendus à Carcassonne, qui parlent de FIGURA BAFFOMETI, il est évident que c'est par une faute d'orthographe ou de prononciation que ce mot est ainsi écrit, au lieu de *Mahometi*, soit qu'alors dans les provinces du midi, on prononçât ainsi le nom de Mahomet, soit que le copiste ait écrit par erreur *Baffometi*, comme il a écrit en même temps *asorare* pour *adorare* ; et ce qui doit ne laisser aucun doute à cet égard, c'est que le second témoin prétend qu'on lui fit prononcer Y ALLA, mot des Sarrazins, dit-il, qui signifie Dieu.

Enfin, on restera convaincu que les inquisiteurs ont voulu faire avouer aux témoins que les Templiers rendaient un culte à Mahomet, et que ce mot ne s'applique qu'à Mahomet, si l'on se souvient que l'un  
 des

des témoins entendus à Florence, prétend qu'en lui montrant l'idole, on lui disait: "Voici votre Dieu et votre "Mahomet." ECCE DEUS VESTER ET VESTER MAHUMET."

Raynouard, p. 301. Appendix.

Note (T).—Page 343.

Some of the best witnesses for the history of the middle ages affirm, that, seduced by the preaching of fanatics, the children of France and Germany, about the year 1213, thought themselves authorized by Heaven to attempt the rescue of the sepulchre, and ran about the country, crying, "Lord Jesus Christ, restore thy cross to us." Boys and girls stole from their homes, "no bolts, no bars, no fear of fathers or love of mothers, could hold them back," and the number of youthful converts was thirty thousand. They were organized by some fanatical wretches, one of whom was taken and hanged at Cologne. The children drove down France, crossed the Alps, and those who survived thirst, hunger, and heat, presented themselves at the gates of the sea-ports of Italy and the south of France. Many were driven back to their homes; but seven large ships full of them went from Marseilles; two of the vessels were wrecked on the isle of St. Peter, the rest of the ships went to Bugia and Alexandria, and the masters sold the children to slavery. These singular events are mentioned by four contemporary writers. 1. Alberic, monk of Trois Fontaines, in his Chronicle, p. 459, edit. Leibnitz. 2. Godfrey of St. Pantaleon, in his Annals, p. 381, in the first vol. of Freher, Rer. Germ. Scríp. edit. Struve. The editor cites in his margin a  
Belgie

Belgic chronicle as a testimony, which I have not seen. 3. Sicard, bishop of Cremona, in Muratori, *Rer. Ital. Scrip.* vii. p. 623. 4. M. Paris, p. 204. Roger Bacon, who flourished in the middle of the thirteenth century, thus speaks of the crusade of children. "For-  
san vidistis aut audistis pro certo quod pueri de regno Franciæ semel occurrebant in infinita multitudine post quondam malignum hominem, ita quod nec a patribus, nec a matribus, nec amicis poterant detineri, et positi sunt in navibus et Saracenis redditi, et non sunt adhuc 64 anni. *Opus Majus*, p. 253. Honest Fuller says, "this Crusade was done by the instinct of  
"the devil, who, as it were, desired a cordial of chil-  
"dren's blood, to comfort his weak stomach, long  
"cloyed with murdering of men." *History of the Holy War*, book iii. chap. xxiv.

---

In illustration of the foregoing History the following Genealogical Tables are annexed.

1. The Latin Kings of Jerusalem.
2. Princes of Antioch.
3. Counts of Tripoli.
4. Counts of Edessa.

TABLES.

Following eq 416 CRUS 113 6.2

1st FOOTOUT VOL<sup>III</sup>



# No. I.

[End of Vol. II.]

1000 A.D.

1. Baldwin IV. Thendora, great-granddaughter of emperor Alexius I. † 1165.

2. Maria, married 1. Maron of Montferrat, and 2. son of Jerusalem, with king, who abdicated 1192.

Baldwin V. son of Baldwin IV. and Maria, died 1196.

Isabella, married to, 1. Humphry of Thourou, 2. Conrad, a lord of Montferrat, 3. Henry, count of Champagne, 11th king, † 1197; and 4. Almeric of Lusignan, 12th king, † 1205.

Her issue.

2. Mary—John de Britone, 13th king, who abdicated.

3. Alice—Hugh, king of Cyprus.

4. Melisinda—Bohemond IV. of Antioch.

Violante—Frederick II. 14th king, † 1250.

Hugh the Great, lineal descendant of Hugh and Alice, crowned king of Jerusalem at Tyre, 24th September 1268.

Madison N. - Thackeray, 1884.  
Grandfather of the  
American people.

Some connections.

1884.

Raymond, godson of Raymond of Tripoli, and himself Count of Tripoli, died before his father.  
 —Alice, daughter of Rupin of Armenia. † 1200.

1.

Rupin—Heloise, daughter of Almeric, king of Cyprus. † 1222.

Two daughters. Mary.—Lord of Tyre and Eschive.

VI. Bohemond IV, prince of Antioch, and Count of Tripoli, by usurpation.—  
 1. Plaisance, daughter of Lord Gibelet. 2. Melisinda, daughter of Almeric, king of Cyprus, and of Isabel, Queen of Jerusalem. † 1233.

1.

VII. Bohemond V.—Lucy, daughter of Count Pol. of Rome. † 1251.

1.

Mary.

2.

VIII. Bohemond VI.—Sibilla, daughter of Hailon, king of Armenia. † 1275.  
 In 1268, Antioch was taken.

Bohemond VII. † 1287.  
 Tripoli was taken in 1288.

No. III.

[End of Vol. II.]

COUNTS OF TRIPOLI,

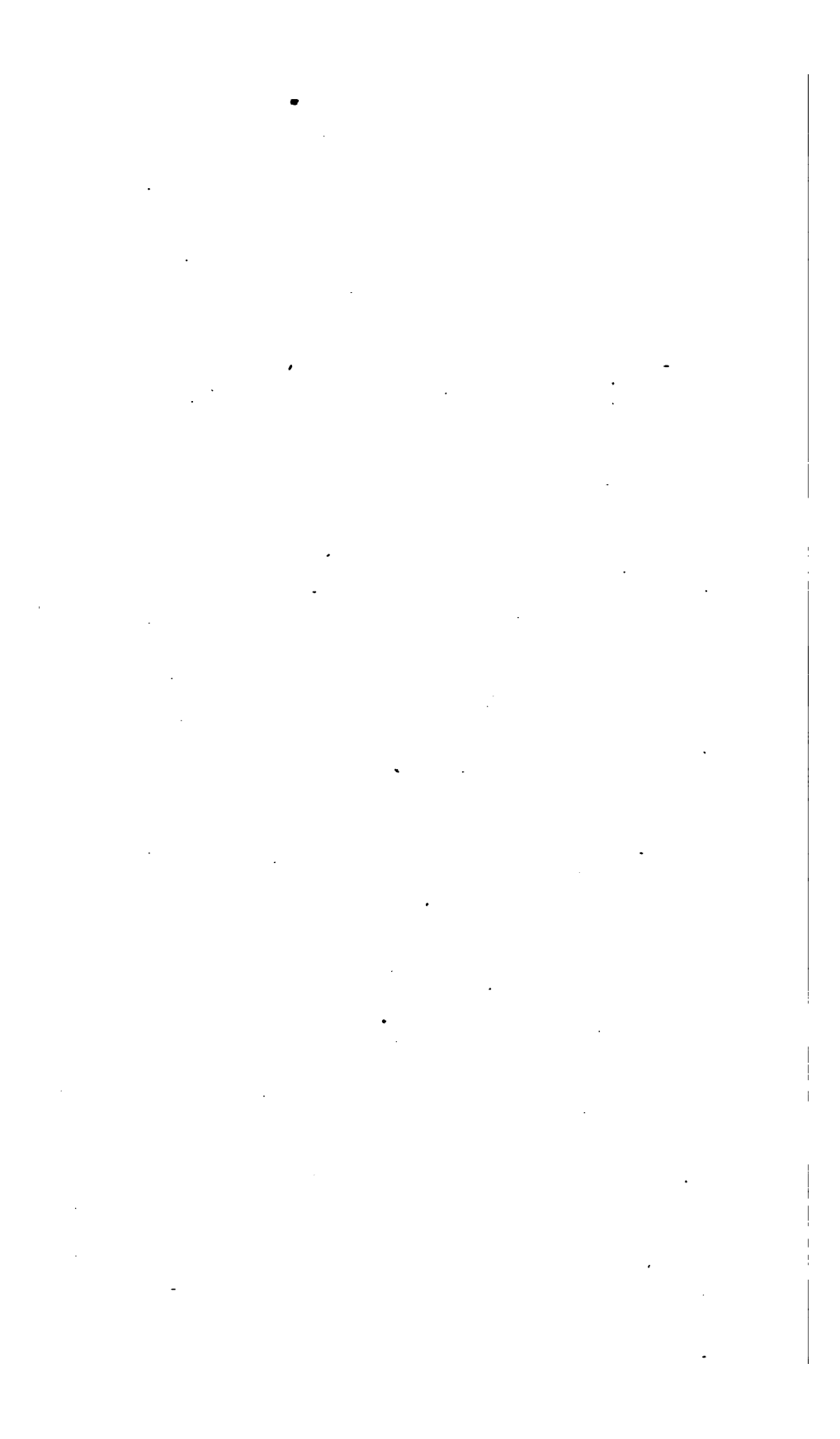
*From 1109 to the Junction of the County with the Principality of Antioch.*

I. Bertrand, son of Raymond, count of Toulouse.—Alice, daughter of Eudes I. duke of Burgundy. † 1112.

II. Pontius.—Cecilia, daughter of king Philip I. of France, and widow of Tancred. † 1137.

III. Raymond I.—Hodierna, daughter of Baldwin II. king of Jerusalem. † 1151.

IV. Raymond II.—Eschive, Lady of Tiberias. No issue. Gave Tripoli to his cousin and godson Raymond, son of Bohemond, fifth prince of Antioch. † 1187.



# No. IV.

[End of Vol. II.]

## PRINCES OR COUNTS OF EDESSA.

1097—1151.



<p>Joscelyn de Courtenay Patriarch of the noble family of Courtenay.</p>	<p>Elizabeth, daughter of Guy de Montlheri, and sister of Melesinda, mother of Baldwin du Bourg, king of Jerusalem.</p>
--	---

<p>Joscelyn de Courtenay First count of Edessa.</p>	<p>An Armenian lady.</p>
---	--------------------------

<p>Joscelyn, second count</p>	<p>Beatrice, widow of lord of Saone.</p>
-------------------------------	--

Joscelyn, third and last count of Edessa,  
Married Agnes, dame of Montresai.  
No male issue.

Agnes, wife of, 1. Almeric, king of  
Jerusalem. 2. Hugh of Ibelin.

THE END.

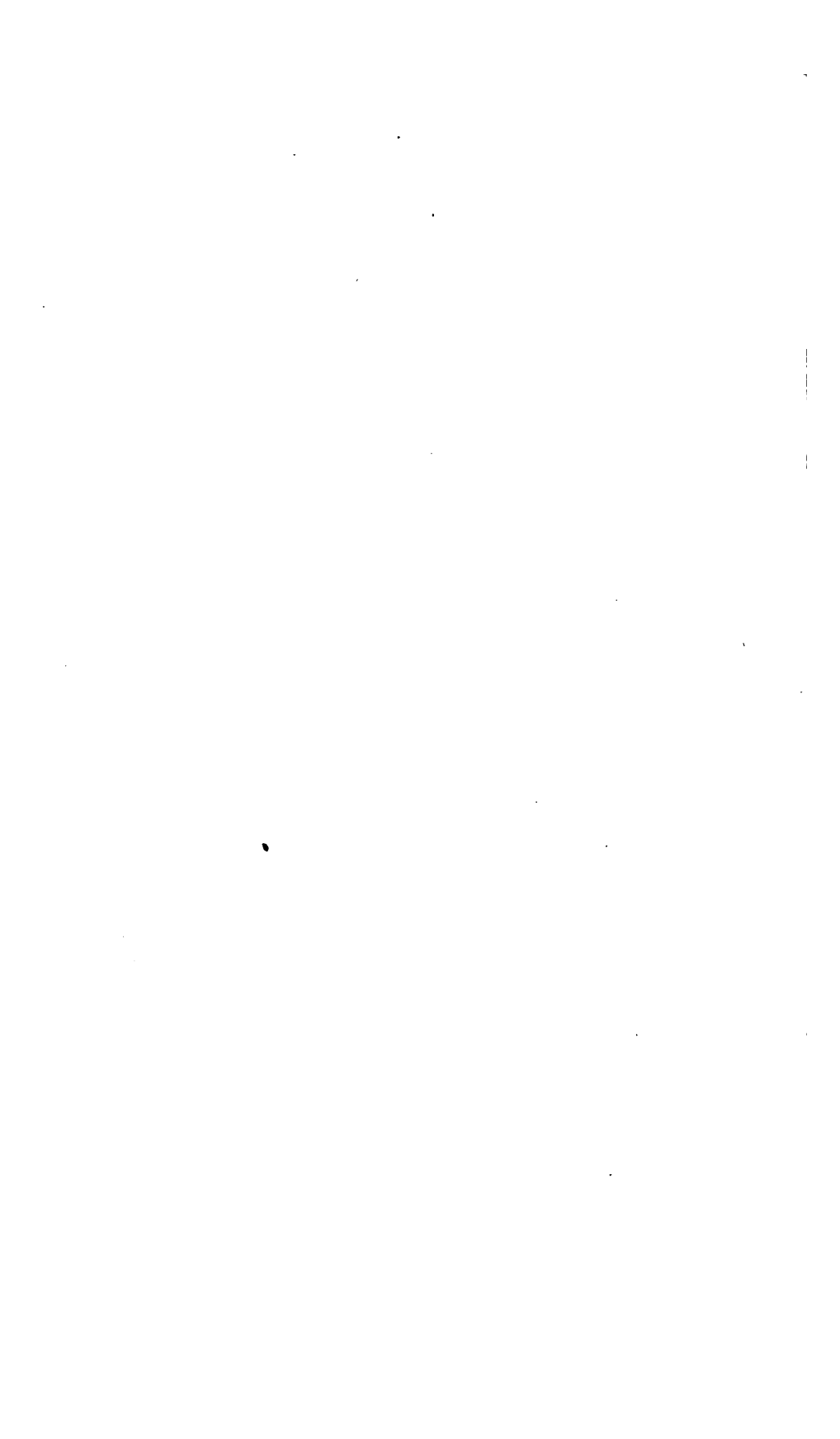
---

Printed by Cox and Baylis, Great Queen Street,  
Lincoln's-Inn-Fields.

---

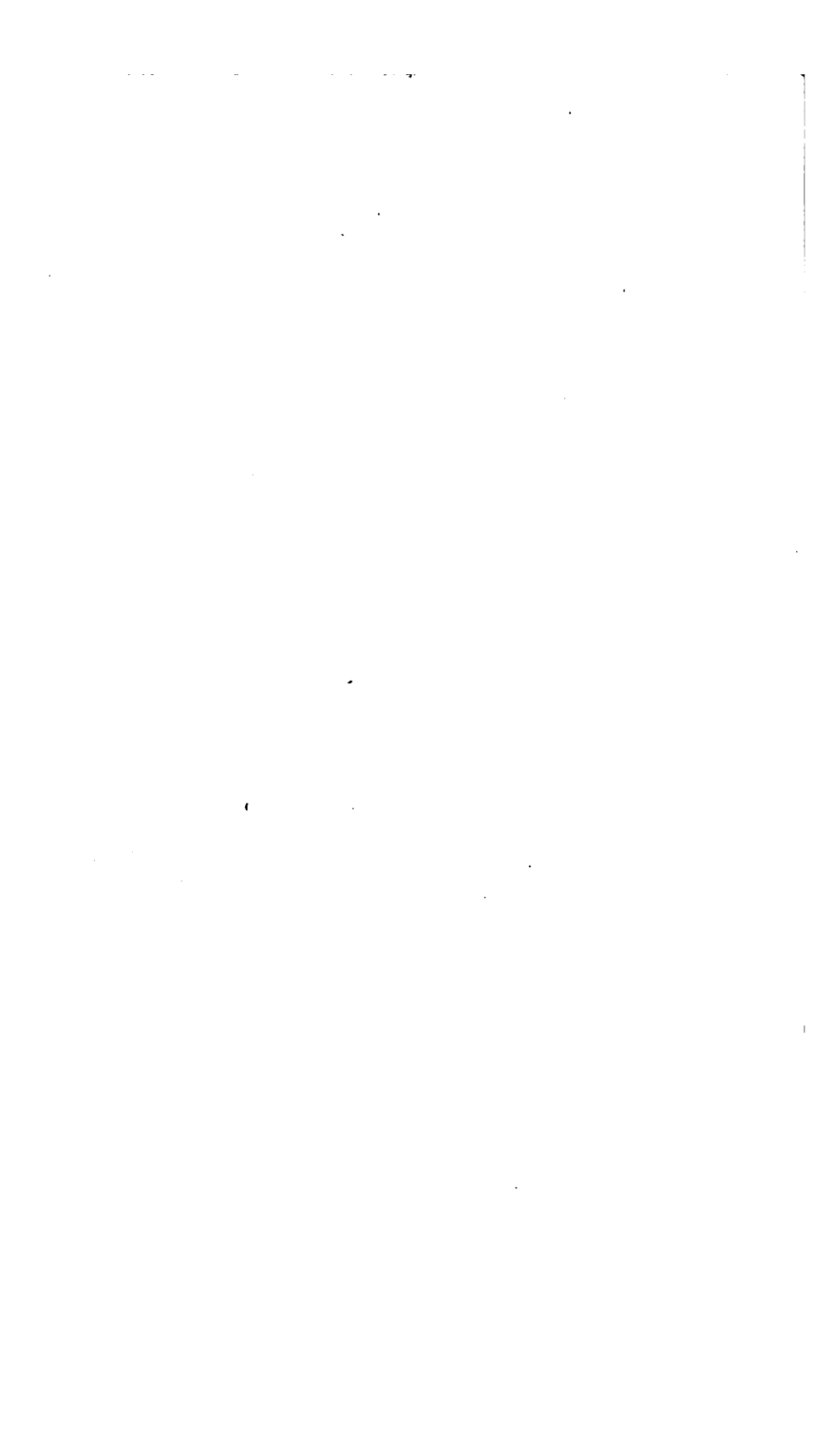
3

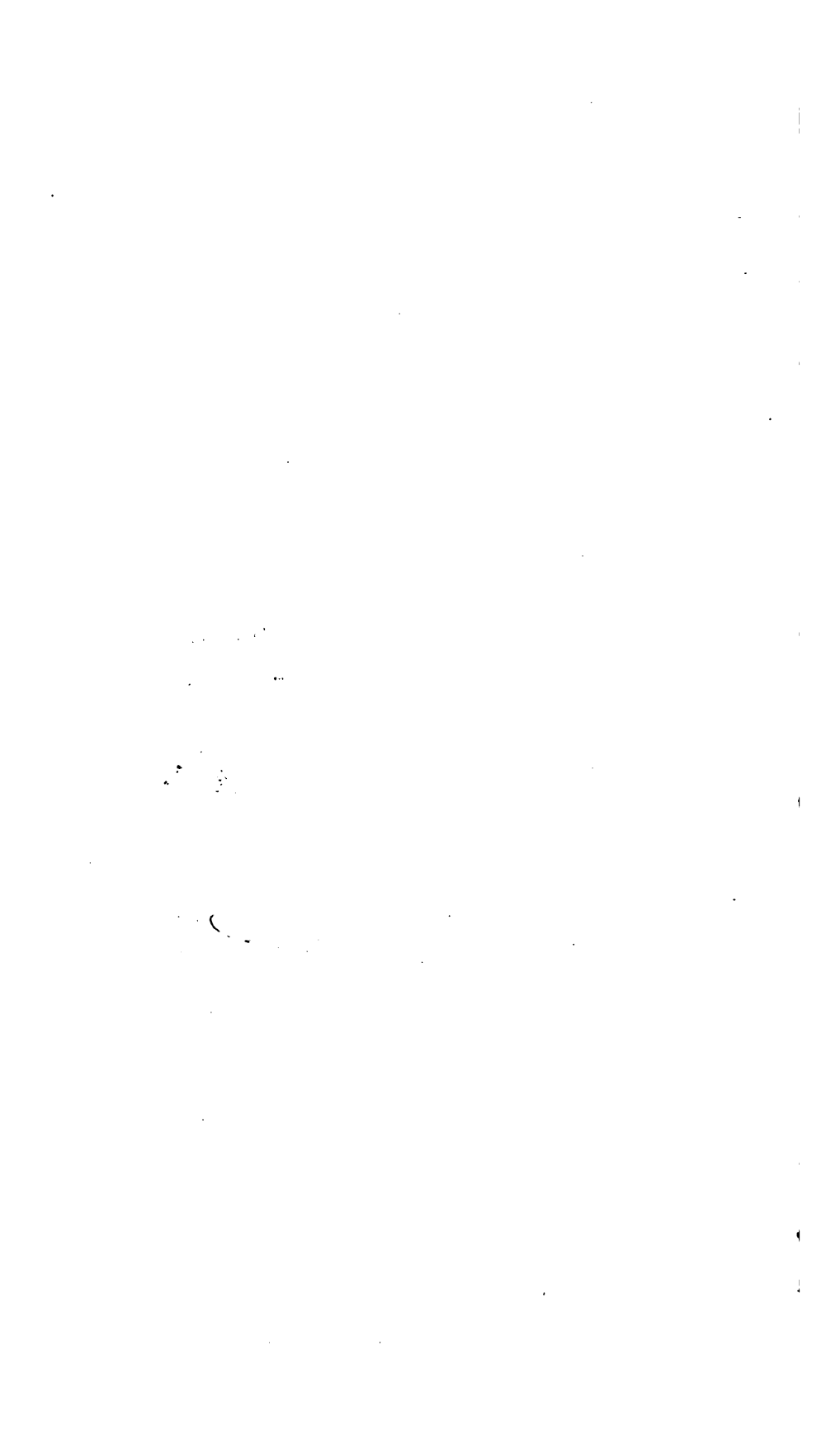
6













3 2044 018 170 738

DEC 8 1908  
DEC 29 1908

~~DUE JAN 22 '10~~

JAN 9 1909

~~DUE DEC 10 '11~~

MAY - 4 1964 HLL

MAR 1 1910

187272

RECEIVED MAR 1 1910

AUG 22 '67 H

DUE DEC 14 1927

1612. 1927

~~DUE JUN 22 '31~~

SEP 25 '67 H

CANCELLED  
107-201

